History of India and Art and Culture

Short Answers

Compiled by:

Prof. Ashok Vishandass

**Indian Institute of Public Administration
New Delhi**

History of India and Art and Culture

Short Answers

Compiled by:

Prof. Ashok Vishandass

Indian Institute of Public Administration
New Delhi

Message from DG (IIPA)

IIPA is an Institute of eminence specialized in the domain of imparting training to mid-career serving Civil Servants such as IAS, IPS, IRS and other Central Services. Through the Government's 'Mission Karmayogi' programme, a path-breaking initiative has been taken to shift the working and functioning of the Civil Servants from 'Rule to Role' to underscore citizen centricity in the Governance.

IIPA is now initiating Capacity Building for the aspirational youth venturing to become Civil Servants through UPSC's CSE. Civil Service Mentoring (CSM) Programme is a new initiative of IIPA in this endeavour, as a part of our Corporate Social Responsibility. A Civil Servant has the honour and dignity of being a servant of the Indian people, not any individual master.

Features

- Solved previous years questions (PYQs) of Civil Services Examination (Preliminary)
- Videos on solutions of previous years questions (PYQs) of Civil Services Examination (Preliminary)
- Video Lectures on fundamental concepts covering the entire syllabus of CSE(P)
- Focused material on Public Administration and Sociology for CSE(Main)
- Useful References
- Webinars on contemporary issues
- Anytime, anywhere learning

Surendra Nath Tripathi
Director General, IIPA

INTRODUCTION

History of India and Indian National Movement

'History of India and Indian National Movement' is one of 7 broad themes of CSE (Preliminary) syllabus. Broadly, the short notes on this theme include the following:

- Art and Culture aspects, Architecture, Sculpture, Paintings, Pottery Tradition, Numismatics, Performing Arts, Religion and Literature, National and Regional Festivals

- Ancient history includes Pre-Historic Times, Mahajanapadas, Mauryan Period, Post-Mauryan Period, Gupta Period, Indus Valley Civilization, Rig Vedic Period, Later Vedic Period, Jainism, Buddhism, Harshvardhana Period and Sangam Period (South-Indian Dynasties).

- Medieval History includes Major Dynasties of Early Medieval India (Pratiharas, Pallavas, Chalukyas, Rashtrakutas), Cholas and South-Indian Kingdoms, Early Muslim Invasions, The Delhi Sultanate, Afghans, Rajputs & Mughals, The Mughal Empire, Marathas and other Indian States, The decline of the Mughal Empire and Vijaynagar Empire.

- Modern History includes advent of Europeans and emergence of British as the sole power, consolidation of rule by the British over the Indian subcontinent through wars and administrative mechanisms, Revolt of 1857, Socio Religious Reforms, Peasant Movements, Revolutionary Nationalism, Administrative Changes after 1857, Development of Civil Services, Economic Policies of the British, Impact of British Administration, Development of Education, Development of Press, Governors-General and Viceroys of India, Early political associations, Formation of Indian National Congress, Moderate phase of Indian freedom struggle, Growth of extremists, Bengal partition and Swadeshi movement, Revolutionary activities, Indian home rule league, arrival of Gandhi to Indian political stage, Non-Cooperation, Civil Disobedience, Quit India movement, Constitutional development of India through August offer, Cripps mission, Cabinet mission, Partition and Freedom.

ART AND CULTURE

'History of India and Indian National Movement' is one of 7 broad themes of CSE (Preliminary) syllabus. Broadly, the short notes on this theme include the following:

- Art and Culture aspects, Architecture, Sculpture, Paintings, Pottery Tradition, Numismatics, Performing Arts, Religion and Literature, National and Regional Festivals. The chapters include varying topics which discuss the Indian Architecture, Indian sculpture and the Indian pottery in great detail.

- Emphasis on Harappan Art and Architecture and Mauryan Art and Architecture discusses various monumental sites which are now studied and deciphered.

- The chapter also includes teachings and knowledge related to Schools of Art in ancient India like, Gandhara School of Art, Amravati. Mathura and Sarnath.

- The later chapters under History of India shed light upon Early Temples and Buddhist Monuments and different Mudras of Buddha.

- The last chapter covers cave architecture of different geographical sites in India like, Ajanta and Ellora caves, Amarnath caves, Bhimbetka rock shelter and so on.

CONTENTS

Chapter 1: Arrival of Europeans in India

1. Advent of Europeans in India

The **history of modern India** may be traced back to the **advent of Europeans to India**. The trade routes between India and Europe were long and winding, passing through the Oxus Valley, Syria, and Egypt. Trade increased after **Vasco da Gama** discovered a new sea route via the **Cape of Good Hope in 1498**, and many trading companies came to India to establish trading centres. Gradually all European superpowers of the contemporary period the Dutch, English, French, Danish etc established their trade relations with the Indian Subcontinent. This article will explain to you about the **Advent of Europeans in India** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

1.1 Portuguese in India

- The **Portuguese** were the first **Europeans to arrive in India,** and they were also the last to go.
- The **spirit of the Renaissance**, with its demand for adventure, captivated Europe in the fifteenth century.
- During this time, Europe achieved **significant breakthroughs** in **shipbuilding and navigation.** As a result, there was a strong desire throughout Europe for daring maritime trips to the East's unexplored reaches.

1.2 Discovery of a Sea Route to India

- **Historians** have noted that discovering an ocean route to India had become an obsession for **Prince Henry of Portugal,** known as the **'Navigator,'** as well as a method to sidestep the Muslim dominance of the **eastern Mediterranean** and all the roads connecting India and Europe.
- The kings of **Portugal and Spain** split the non-Christian world between them in 1497, under the **Treaty of Tordesillas (1494)**, by an imaginary line in the Atlantic, about 1,300 miles west of the Cape Verde Islands.
- **Portugal** could claim and occupy anything to the east of the line, while Spain could claim everything to the west, according to the pact.

- As a result, the scene was set for **Portuguese intrusions** into the Indian Ocean seas.
- **Bartholomew Dias,** a Portuguese navigator, crossed the **Cape of Good Hope** in **Africa in 1487** and travelled along the eastern coast, believing that the long-sought maritime path to India had been discovered.
- However, an expedition of **Portuguese ships set** off for India barely 10 years later (in 1497) and reached India in little less than 11 months, in May 1498.

Portuguese Administration in India

- The **Bahmani Kingdom** in the Deccan was dissolving into smaller kingdoms.
- None of the powers possessed a fleet worth mentioning, and they had no plans to improve their maritime capabilities.
- The Chinese emperor's imperial proclamation limited the nautical reach of Chinese ships in the Far East.
- The **Arab merchants** and shipowners who had previously controlled the **Indian Ocean commerce** had nothing on the Portuguese in terms of organisation and cohesiveness.
- The Portuguese also had guns mounted on their ships.
- The **viceroy,** who ruled for three years, was in charge of the administration, together with his secretary and, subsequently, a council.
- Next insignificance was the **Vedor da Fazenda,** who was in charge of income, cargoes, and fleet dispatch.

Significance of the Portuguese

- Most historians agree that the **arrival of the Portuguese** not only signalled the beginning of the European age, but also the growth of maritime power.
- The **Cholas,** for example, had been a **maritime force,** but this was the first time a foreign power had arrived in India by water.
- The Portuguese ships were armed with **cannons,** and this was the first step toward securing a monopoly over commerce by threatening or using force.
- The Portuguese used **body armour, matchlock soldiers**, and weapons landed from ships in the Malabar in the **16th century,** demonstrating military innovation.
- On the other hand, a **significant military contributio**n made by the Portuguese onshore was the system of **drilling infantry groups**,

modelled after the **Spanish model,** which was implemented in the 1630s as a response to Dutch pressure.

• The Portuguese were masters of advanced **maritime tactics.**

• Their multi-decked ships were strongly built, as they were meant to fight out Atlantic gales rather than go ahead of the regular monsoons, allowing them to carry more weapons.

• Goa became a centre of complex **filigree work, fretted foliage work, and metalwork** incorporating diamonds as the silversmith and goldsmith arts thrived.

• However, while the interiors of **churches built under the Portugues**e include a lot of woodwork and art, as well as painted ceilings, the architectural plans are often plain.

1.3 Vasco Da Gama

• The **landing of three** ships under Vasco Da Gama to Calicut in May 1498, headed by a Gujarati pilot called Abdul Majid, had a significant impact on Indian history.

• **Vasco da Gama** spent three months in India.

• When he **returned to Portugal,** he brought a valuable cargo with him and profitably sold the goods on the European market.

• In **1501 Vasco da Gama** returned to India.

• When Vasco Da Gama mixed economic avarice with violent hatred and inflicted revenge on Arab commerce everywhere he could, the Zamorin refused to exclude **Arab merchants** in favour of the Portuguese.

• At Cannanore, **Vasco da Gama established a trading factory.**

• Calicut, Cannanore, and Cochin gradually became key Portuguese commerce centres.

1.4 Francisco De Almeida

• In 1505, King Ferdinand I of Portugal appointed a three-year governor in India and provided him with adequate troops to preserve Portuguese interests.

• The newly appointed governor, **Francisco De Almeida,** was tasked with consolidating the Portuguese position in India and destroying Muslim trade by conquering **Aden, Ormuz, and Malacca.**

• The Portuguese squadron was beaten by the combined Egyptian and Gujarat navies in a naval action off the coast of Diu in 1507, and Almeida's son was slain.

- The next year, **Almeida avenged** his defeat by annihilating both navies. Almeida's dream was for the Portuguese to rule the Indian Ocean.
- The **Blue Water Policy** (cartage system) was his policy.

1.5 Alfonso de Albuquerque

- **Albuquerque,** who took over as Portuguese governor of India when Almeida died, was the true creator of **Portuguese authority in the East**, a mission he finished before his death.
- By creating strongholds commanding all of the sea's exits, he ensured Portugal's strategic control over the **Indian Ocean.**
- Under **Albuquerque's leadership,** the Portuguese tightened their grip by instituting a permission system for other ships and exerting control over the region's key shipbuilding centres.
- The **eradication of sati** was a noteworthy element of his reign.

1.6 Nino da Cunha

- In November 1529, **Nino da Cunha** was appointed governor of Portuguese interests in India, and almost a year later, the Portuguese administration in India moved its headquarters from Cochin to Goa.
- During his struggle with **Mughal emperor Humayun**, **Bahadur Shah of Gujarat** enlisted the support of the Portuguese by transferring the island of Bassein, along with its dependents and income, to them in 1534.
- He offered them a base in Diu as well.
- **Da Cunha** also aimed to enhance Portuguese influence in Bengal by placing a large number of Portuguese nationals in the **city of Hooghly.**

1.7 Decline of the Portuguese

- The governors who succeeded **Afonso de Albuquerque** were weak and inept, and the **Portuguese Empire** in India finally fell apart.
- In religious affairs, the **Portuguese were intolerant** and fanatical. They used coercion to convert the indigenous people to **Christianity.**
- In this regard, their attitude was vehemently opposed by the people of India, where religious tolerance was the norm.
- The **Portuguese administration** was more concerned with amassing a fortune for itself, which further alienated the Indian people.
- They were also involved in **heinous crimes and defiance of the law**. They didn't even hesitate to engage in piracy and plunder. All of these actions culminated in an anti-Portuguese sentiment.

- During the 15th century and the first part of the 16th century, the **Portuguese and Spanish** had left the English and the Dutch well behind.

- However, throughout the latter part of the 16th century, **emerging economic** and **naval powers England and Holland,** and subsequently France launched a determined **battle against the Spanish and Portuguese** monopoly of international commerce.

- The latter were defeated in this battle. Their authority in India was also diminished as a result of this.

- The **Mughal Empire's** and the **Marathas'** developing influence also made it difficult for the **Portuguese to maintain their commercial monopoly** in India for long. For example, in c. 1631 CE, they struggled with the **Mughal authorities** in Bengal and were forced out of their town at Hughli.

- Brazil was found by the **Portuguese in Latin America**, and they began to pay considerably more attention to it than to their Indian domains.

- When Portugal was annexed by **Spain in 1580 CE**, Spanish interests took precedence over Portuguese ones, which were later ignored.

1.8 The Dutch

- Under the name Vereenigde Oost Indische Compagnie (VOC), the Dutch East India Company was founded about 1602 CE.

- The Dutch established their first facility at Masulipatnam, Andhra Pradesh. They also created commercial terminals in Gujarat (Surat, Broach, Cambay, and Ahmedabad), Kerala (Cochin), Bengal (Chinsurah), Bihar (Patna), and Uttar Pradesh (Agra).

- Their major base in India was Pulicat (Tamil Nadu), which was subsequently superseded by Nagapattinam.

- They defeated the Portuguese in the 17th century and became the most powerful force in European commerce in the East.

- They expelled the Portuguese out of the Malay straits and the Indonesian islands and thwarted English attempts to settle there in 1623.

Anglo-Dutch Rivalry

- The English were also gaining importance in the Eastern trade at this time, posing a severe threat to the Dutch economic interests.

- Commercial competition quickly devolved into bloodshed.

- After years of fighting, both parties reached an agreement in 1667, in which the British promised to relinquish all claims to Indonesia

and the Dutch agreed to leave India to focus on their more successful commerce in Indonesia.

- They had a monopoly on the black pepper and spice trade. Silk, cotton, indigo, rice, and opium were the most significant Indian goods sold by the Dutch.

- Also, the Anglo-Dutch competition lasted around seven years, during which time the Dutch lost one by one their colonies to the British until the Dutch were eventually beaten by the English in the Battle of Bedara in c. 1759.

Decline of Dutch in India

- The English retaliation ended in the Dutch being defeated in the Battle of Hooghly (November 1759), thereby ending Dutch ambitions in India.

- The Dutch were not interested in establishing an empire in India; their main focus was trade.

- In any event, their major economic interest was in the Indonesian Spice Islands, from which they made a large profit.

1.9 The English

- The English Association or **Company to Trade** with the East was founded about 1599 CE by a group of merchants known as **"The Merchant Adventurers."**

- **Queen Elizabeth** granted the corporation a royal charter and the exclusive right to trade in the East on December 31, 1600 CE, and it became known as the East India Company.

The Rise of English

- **Captain William Hawkins** landed at the court of Mughal Emperor Jahangir in 1609 CE to request permission to open an English trading post in Surat.

- The Emperor, however, declined it owing to Portuguese pressure.

- Later, in 1612 CE, **Jahangir** gave the East India Company permission to build a factory at Surat.

- **Sir Thomas Roe** arrived at the **Mughal court** as an envoy for James I, King of England, in c. 1615 CE and was successful in obtaining an Imperial Farman to trade and develop factories in various regions of India.

- The English developed factories in Agra, Ahmedabad, Baroda, and Broach by c. 1619 CE.

- Masulipatnam was the site of the English's first factory in the south.

- **Francis Day** bought Madras from the **Raja of Chandragiri** in 1639 CE and erected a modest fort around their factory called Fort St. George.

- On the Coromandel coast, Madras quickly displaced **Masulipatnam** as the English headquarters.

- In c. 1668 CE, the **English East India Company** purchased Bombay from Charles II, the then-king of England, and Bombay became the company's west coast headquarters.

- **Job Charnock** founded an English workshop in a region named Sutanuti in 1690 CE.

- It ultimately became the city of Calcutta, which was home to Fort William and later became the capital of British India.

- British towns in **Madras, Bombay, and Calcutt**a grew into thriving metropolises.

- As the **British East India Company** expanded in prominence, it was on the verge of becoming a sovereign state in India.

- An English mission headed by **John Surman** to the Mughal emperor Farrukhsiyar's court in 1715 gained three notable farmans, granting the Company numerous important rights in Bengal, Gujarat, and Hyderabad.

1.10 The French

- Colbert, a minister under **Louis XIV,** formed the **French East India Company** in 1664 CE.

- Francis Caron established the first French factory in **Surat about 1668 CE.** Maracara built a factory at **Masulipatnam in 1669 CE.**

- **Francois Martin** created Pondicherry (Fort Louis) in c. 1673 CE, which later became the seat of the French holdings in India, and he served as its first governor.

- The **French took Chandranagore** near Calcutta from the governor, Shaista Khan, in 1690 CE. At Balasore, Mahe, Qasim Bazar, and Karaikal, the French erected factories.

- The advent of French governor Joseph François Dupleix in India in around 1742 CE marked the start of Anglo-French warfare, which culminated in the legendary Carnatic wars.

Pondicherry - The Nerve Centre of French

- Francois Martin, the director of the Masulipatnam factory, was granted a location for a colony in 1673 by Sher Khan Lodi, the administrator of Valikandapuram (under the Bijapur Sultan).

- Pondicherry was established in the year 1674. Caron was succeeded as French governor by **Francois Martin** the next year.
- Other sections of India, notably the coastal regions, were also home to the French company's plants.
- The **French East India Company**'s commercial centres included Mahe, Karaikal, Balasore, and Qasim Bazar.
- Francois Martin established Pondicherry as a significant location after gaining command in 1674. It was, after all, the French's bastion in India.

First Carnatic War (1740–48)

- The **Anglo-French War** in Europe was triggered by the Austrian War of Succession, and the First Carnatic War was a continuation of that conflict.
- The **Treaty of Aix-La Chapelle,** which brought the Austrian War of Succession to a close, concluded the **First Carnatic War in 1748.**
- Madras was returned to the English under the provisions of this treaty, while the French received their colonies in North America in exchange.

Second Carnatic War (1749–54)

- **Dupleix, t**he French governor who had led the **French armies** to victory in the **First Carnatic War,** aspired to expand his authority and political influence in southern India by engaging in l**ocal dynastic rivalries** to beat the English.
- The E**nglish and the French** agreed not to intervene in native rulers' quarrels.
- Furthermore, each side was left in control of the territory that they had occupied at the time of the pact.
- It became clear that Indian authority was no longer required for European success; rather, Indian authority was growing increasingly reliant on European backing.

Third Carnatic War (1758–63)

- When Austria attempted to reclaim Silesia in 1756, the **Seven Years' War (1756–63)** broke out in Europe.
- Once again, the United Kingdom and France were on opposing sides.
- The **Treaty of Peace Paris (1763)** restored the French industries in India, but after the war, French political dominance vanished.
- The Dutch having already been beaten in the **Battle of Bidara** in 1759, the English became the dominant **European force** on the Indian subcontinent.

English Success and the French Failure - Causes

- The English company was a private enterprise, which instilled in the people a sense of pride and self-assurance.

- The **French company,** on the other hand, was a government-owned enterprise.

- The **French government-controlled** and regulated it, and it was boxed in by government policies and decision-making delays.

- The English navy was superior to the French fleet, and it assisted in cutting off the important maritime route between France and its Indian colonies.

- **Calcutta, Bombay, and Madras** were all under **English control,** whilst **Pondicherry was under French control.**

- The French prioritised territorial ambition over business interests, leaving the French enterprise cash-strapped.

1.11 The Danes

- In 1616, the **Danish East India Company** was created, and in 1620, they opened a factory in Tranquebar, near Tanjore, on India's eastern coast.

- **Serampore,** near Calcutta, was their main settlement. In 1845, the Danish industries were sold to the **British government,** despite the fact that they were unimportant at the time.

- The **Danes** are better recognised for their missionary work than for their commercial endeavours.

1.12 English Success against Other European Powers

- The **English East India Company,** which was founded by the merger of many rival firms at home, was governed by a board of directors whose members were chosen on an annual basis.

- The state held a substantial portion of **France's and Portugal's** commercial firms, and their character was feudalism in many aspects.

- The **Royal Navy of Britain** was not only the largest but also the most technologically sophisticated at the time.

- The industrial revolution arrived late in other **European countries,** allowing England to preserve its dominion.

- The **British soldiers** were well-trained and disciplined. The British commanders were thinkers who experimented with novel military techniques.

- In comparison to **Spain, Portugal,** and the **Dutch, Britain** was less religiously passionate and eager in spreading **Christianity.**

- The **Bank of England,** the world's first central bank, was formed to sell government debt to money markets on the promise of a fair return if Britain defeated competing countries such as France and Spain.

1.13 Conclusion

Europeans arrived in India to trade, but they eventually achieved political and administrative control of the nation. Vasco da Gama established a direct maritime passage to India in 1498, making the Portuguese the first Europeans to visit India. Queen Elizabeth granted the East India Company, founded by a group of English merchants, exclusive trading rights in the East in 1600 AD. As a result, the United Kingdom ruled India for more than two centuries.

2. Vasco Da Gama

Vasco da Gama, a **Portuguese explore**r and the first European to reach India by water, was the first European to do so. The landing of three ships under **Vasco Da Gama to Calicut in May 1498**, headed by a Gujarati pilot called **Abdul Majid,** had a significant impact on Indian history. The arrival of Vasco da Gama at Calicut in 1498 is often recognized as the start of a new era in world history, particularly in Asia-Europe ties.

2.1 Vasco Da Gama

- **Vasco da Gama** was born in **1460 in Sines**, one of the few seaports on the Alentejo coast in southwest Portugal, most likely in a home near Nossa Senhora das Salas church.
- Portuguese voyages led by **Prince Henry the Navigator** have been extending along the African coastline since the early 15th century, mostly in quest of west African riches (notably, gold and slaves).
- **Vasco da Gama** led a fleet of four ships and a crew of 170 men left Lisbon on July 8, 1497.
- The trek around Africa to India and back covered a distance larger than the length of the equator.
- **Vasco da Gama landed in Kozhikode (Calicut)**, Kerala, on the Western sea coast of India on May 20, 1498, two years after setting sail from Lisbon, Portugal.
- This was the first time a European had landed in India by boat.
- As a result, **Vasco da Gama** is credited with discovering the maritime route to India.

2.2 Arrival of Vasco da Gama and its Significance

- The landing of three ships under **Vasco Da Gama** to Calicut in May 1498, headed by a Gujarati pilot called **Abdul Majid,** had a significant impact on Indian history.
- However, the Hindu monarch of **Calicut, the Zamorin (Samoothiri),** was unconcerned about the Europeans' intentions.
- Calicut's location as an entrepot contributed to his kingdom's wealth, therefore he gave **a warm welcome to Gama.**
- The Arab traders on the **Malabar Coast,** who had a thriving business, were wary of the Portuguese gaining a foothold there.
- For centuries, the Indian Ocean trading system had many participants - I**ndians, Arabs, east coast Africans, Chinese, and Javanese**, among others.

- But these participants had followed some unspoken rules of conduct, and none had sought overwhelming dominance, despite the fact that they were all in it for profit.

- The **Portuguese** altered that by attempting to monopolize the lucrative eastern trade by removing rivals, particularly **Arabs.**

- **Vasco da Gama** spent three months in India. When he returned to Portugal, he brought a **valuable cargo** with him and profitably sold the goods on the European market.

- The value of direct access to the pepper trade was demonstrated by the fact that **Europeans** would have had to pay **10 times as much** for the same amount of pepper if they had to buy through Muslim intermediaries.

- Other **profit-hungry merchants** from European countries were enticed to travel to India and deal directly.

- In 1501 Vasco da Gama returned to India.

- When **Vasco Da Gama** mixed economic avarice with violent hatred and inflicted revenge on Arab commerce everywhere he could, the Zamorin refused to exclude Arab merchants in favour of the **Portuguese.**

- As a result, his break with the Zamorin was complete.

- At Cannanore, **Vasco da Gama established a trading factory**.

- **Calicut, Cannanore, and Cochin** gradually became key Portuguese commerce centers.

- The **Portuguese graduall**y gained authorization to garrison these centres under the guise of safeguarding the manufacturers and their **commercial activities.**

- At **Cochin and Cannanore,** two adjacent kingdoms at war with the Zamorin, whose loyalties had been established by previous Portuguese voyages, Da Gama filled up on spices. In early 1503 the 4th **armada set sail from India.**

- The **Zamorin's relationship** with **da Gama** was difficult from the start due to da Gama's failure to pay **ordinary customs taxes.**

- **Vasco da Gama** returned to Portugal in September 1503, having effectively failed in his attempt to subdue the **Zamorin.**

- **Da Gama** sent a small squadron of caravels, led by his uncle **Vicente Sodre,** to monitor the Indian coast, and safeguard the **Portuguese industries in Cochin** and Cannanore from the **Zamorin's expected retaliation.**

- In 1505, when **Portuguese King Manuel I** of Portugal chose to pick the first governor and viceroy of Portuguese India, da Gama was noticeably ignored, and **Francisco de Almeida** was appointed instead.

- Vasco da Gama's body was first interred at **St. Francis Church in Fort Kochi,** Kochi, but his bones were eventually repatriated to Portugal in 1539.

- **Vasco da Gama's** remains were reinterred at **Vidigueira** in gold and jewel-encrusted coffin.

- Vasco da Gama's tomb is located at the **Jeronimos Monastery in Belem, Lisbon.**

- The **Hieronymite Monastery at Belem,** which would later become the necropolis of the **Portuguese royal house of Aviz**, was built in the early 1500s near the starting place of Vasco da Gama's maiden voyage and was sponsored by a tax on the earnings of the yearly Portuguese India Armadas.

- **Vasco da Gama Church** is a church in Kochi, Kerala, and a private home on the island of Saint Helena. Vasco, a Cape Town suburb, is also named after him.

2.3 Conclusion

Vasco da Gama's arrival at Calicut in 1498 is often recognized as the start of a new period in world history, particularly in the link between Asia and Europe. Despite the fact that Asia and Europe have had trade links since antiquity, the establishment of direct sea contact between the two was not just the realization of a long-held dream.

3. Francisco De Almeida

Francisco de Almeida was a nobleman, soldier, and explorer from Portugal. He rose to prominence as a counsellor to **King John II of Portugal** and subsequently in the Moorish wars and the conquest of **Granada in 1492**. He became the first ruler and viceroy of the **Portuguese State of India in 1505**. This article will explain to you about the Vasco Da Gama which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

3.1 Francisco De Almeida

- In 1505, **King Ferdinand I** of Portugal appointed a three-year governor in India and provided him with adequate troops to preserve Portuguese interests.

- The newly appointed governor, **Francisco De Almeida,** was tasked with consolidating the Portuguese position in India and destroying Muslim trade by conquering **Aden, Ormuz, and Malacca.**

- **Francisco de Almeida** arrived at Cochin on October 31, 1505, with only 8 ships remaining.

- He learned that the **Portuguese** traders at Quilon had been slaughtered while he was there. He dispatched his son Lourenço with six ships, which indiscriminately sank Calicut boats in Quilon's harbour.

- **Almeida** settled down in Cochin. He improved the Portuguese defences at Cochin's Fort Manuel.

- With his victory in the **naval Battle of Diu** in 1509, Almeida is credited with establishing **Portuguese hegemony** in the Indian Ocean.

- **Almeida** was the first Portuguese to arrive in Bombay by the sea in 1509.

- He went after **Meliqueaz**, to whom he had sent a frightening letter, and the Mamluk Mirocem, leading a fleet of 23 ships near the port of Diu, in the naval Battle of Diu on 3 February 1509.

- He defeated a joint fleet of the **Mamluk Burji Sultanate** of Egypt, the **Ottoman Empire,** the Sultan of Gujarat, and the Zamorin of Calicut, with technical naval help from the Republic of Venice and the Republic of Ragusa (Dubrovnik), which worried for its eastern trade lines.

- He was also instructed to construct fortifications at **Anjadiva and Cochin.**

- **Kilwa and Cannanore Almeida,** on the other hand, faced danger from Egypt's Mamluk Sultan, in addition to the Zamorin's resistance.

- The **Egyptians** formed a navy in the **Red Sea** to oppose the Portuguese advance, spurred on by the merchants of Venice, whose profitable trade was now jeopardised owing to Portuguese meddling.

- The **Portuguese** squadron was beaten by the combined **Egyptian and Gujarat navies** in a naval action off the coast of Diu in 1507, and Almeida's son was slain.

- The next year, **Almeida** avenged his defeat by annihilating both navies. Almeida's dream was for the Portuguese to rule the Indian Ocean.

- The **Blue Water Policy** (cartage system) was his policy.

- Almeida died in a conflict with indigenous peoples at the Cape of Good Hope in 1510, before returning to Portugal. Lourenço de Almeida, his only son, had previously been killed in the **Battle of Chaul.**

3.2 Blue Water Policy

- Don Francisco de Almeida, the first Viceroy of the Portuguese territories in India, is credited with the "Blue Water" Policy.

- The primary aim behind this plan is to make Portugal a dominant country in the maritime area.

- In India, it is the fortification of the Indian Ocean in order for Portuguese businesses to establish themselves in the Indian Ocean.

- The goal of Viceroy of Possession in India, Francisco de Almeida's blue water policy was to preserve sea dominance in Indian waterways and limit their operations to solely economic dealings.

- The Portuguese should be the sole trading power in the Arabian Sea and the Indian Ocean, according to this doctrine.

- Instead of erecting fortifications on the Indian continent, it was suggested that the Portuguese become formidable at sea.

3.3 Conclusion

With his victory in the naval **Battle of Diu** in 1509, Almeida is credited with establishing Portuguese authority in the Indian Ocean. Almeida died in a confrontation with indigenous people near the **Cape of Good Hope** in 1510, before returning to Portugal. Lourenço de Almeida, his only son, had been slain in the **Battle of Chaul**.

4. Portuguese Settlements in India

The term **"Portuguese Settlements in India"** refers to Portugal's colonial possessions in India. Portuguese India featured several enclaves on India's western coast at the time of British India's independence in 1947, including **Goa proper, as well as the coastal enclaves of Daman and Diu, and the interior enclaves of Dadra and Nagar Haveli**. Goa is a term used to refer to the Portuguese Indian territory as a whole. This article will explain to you about the **Portuguese Settlements in India** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

4.1 Portuguese Advent in India

- The **Renaissance movement,** with its appeal to exploration, captivated **Europe** in the **fifteenth century.**
- Europe made considerable improvements in **shipbuilding and navigation** during this time.
- As a result, there was a tremendous yearning across Europe for adventurous naval expeditions into the unknown countries of the East.
- The **Portuguese State of India,** sometimes referred to as Portuguese India, was a Portuguese colonial state in India.
- The Portuguese were the first Europeans to arrive in India, and they were also the last to go.
- In 1498, **Vasco De Gama** became the **first Portuguese** to set foot in India. Portuguese rule in India, on the other hand, is said to have lasted from 1505 until 1961.
- Despite the fact that **Portuguese colonisation** outlasted its English rival, it had little impact outside its borders.
- Under the **Treaty of Tordesillas (1494),** the Rulers of Portugal and Spain divided the non-Christian world in 1497 by an imaginary line in the Atlantic, some 1,300 miles west of the Cape Verde Islands.
- According to the deal, **Portugal could claim** and occupy whatever east of the line, while **Spain could claim** and occupy everything west of it.
- As a result, the stage was prepared for **Portuguese** incursions into the waters of the Indian Ocean.
- On the 20th of May 1498, **Vasco da Gama** arrived at the port of **Calicut in South-West India.**
- This date, May 20, 1498, marked the beginning of a new chapter in Indian history.

4.2 Portuguese settlements in India

- Around **Goa, the Portuguese had occupied sixty miles of shoreline.**

- They controlled a short strip of land on the west coast from **Mumbai to Daman and Diu**, as well as the approaches to **Gujarat,** with four key ports and hundreds of cities and villages.

- They controlled a series of maritime strongholds and commercial ports in the south, including **Mangalore, Cannanore, Cochin, and Calicut.**

- And, while their power in **Malabar** was not strong, it was sufficient to exert influence or control over the local kings who controlled the spice-growing region.

- On the east coast, the **Portuguese constructed** military installations and towns at **San Thome (near Chennai) and Nagapattinam (in Tamil Nadu).**

- Hooghly in West Bengal had grown into a wealthy settlement by the end of the 16th century.

4.3 Calicut

- **Vasco da Gama was** dispatched by **King Dom Manuel I** of Portugal and arrived at **Calicut on May 17, 1498, at Kappad.**

- The Portuguese began to expand their domains and govern the waters between Ormus and the **Malabar Coast,** as well as **south to Ceylon,** after discovering a maritime passage from **Europe to Malabar in 1498.**

- Traditional hospitality was extended to the **navigator,** but an interview with the **Zamorin** yielded no tangible results.

- In 1500, the **King of Portugal** dispatched the next voyage, which was led by **Pedro lvares Cabral.**

- In February 1502 **Vasco da Gama** returned to Calicut with 15 ships and 800 soldiers.

- When his request to eject all Muslims from Calicut was rebuffed, **da Gama stormed** the city and captured numerous rice boats, chopping off the crew's hands, ears, and noses.

- In 1531, a **Portuguese fort** was built in **Chaliyam** as part of a peace accord between **Portuguese Viceroy Nuno da Cunha** and the **Samutiri of Calicut.**

- The Kozhikode army ultimately besieged, seized, and destroyed Fort Chaliyam in 1571.

4.4 Cochin

- Kochi was the site of **India's first European colony**. After being

repulsed from Calicut, the Portuguese Admiral **Pedro lvares Cabral** arrived at Cochin in the year 1500.

- **The Portuguese** were welcomed as guests by the king of Kochi, a competitor, and a covenant of friendship was made.

- The admiral persuaded the monarch to allow them to construct a **factory in Cochin** by promising his help in the invasion of Calicut.

- The monarch, encouraged by the support, declared war on the **Calicut Zamorins.**

- When the admiral saw the Zamorin's abilities, he withdrew in terror.

- The Portuguese constructed the **Santa Cruz Cathedral Basilica** in Kochi.

- Portugal ruled the **Port of Kochi** from 1503 until 1663, with the approval of the **Kochi Raja.** Kochi was the Portuguese's principal foothold in India until 1510.

- **Saint Francis Xavier** came in 1530 and established a **Christian ministry.**

- Since the Inquisition was founded in **Portuguese India i**n 1560, the subsequent Portuguese period was harsh for the Jews residing in the territory.

- **Vasco da Gama,** the Portuguese viceroy, was buried at Kochi's **St. Francis Church** until his body was removed and re-interred in Portugal in 1539.

- The Portuguese influence in Kerala began to wane shortly after Albuquerque's arrival.

4.5 Fort in Kannur

- **Angelo's Fort,** also known as **Kannur Fort,** is a huge triangular laterite fort that is one of Kannur's most historically significant landmarks.

- The fort was built in 1505 by the first **Portuguese Viceroy, Don Francesco de Almeida,** and is flanked by massive bastions that provide for an impressive spectacle.

- This **colossal triangular laterite** building is surrounded by towering bastions, creating an intimidating picture.

- It passed into the hands of the **Dutch and then the British,** who remodelled and re-equipped it as their principal military bastion in Malabar.

- The main attractions here are Mopilla Bay and **Dharmadam Island.**

- **Mopilla Bay** is a natural harbour, and the fort provides a beautiful

view of it, as well as a sea wall that separates the turbulent sea from the interior water.

4.6 Goa

- In 1510, the Portuguese invaded Goa and defeated the Sultanate of Bijapur.

- The Portuguese occupation lasted around 450 years and had a significant impact on Goan culture, food, and architecture.

- After a 36-hour flight, the **Indian Army invaded** and captured Goa in 1961.

- Goa, Daman, and Diu merged to become the union territory of Goa, Daman, and Diu. Goa was awarded statehood in 1987.

- In Goa, **Albuquerque** established a **Portuguese mint.** Local shopkeepers and **Timoji** have expressed their dissatisfaction with the money shortage.

- The **new coin** was issued to commemorate recent triumphs. Its worth was based on the value of existing coins. In **Portuguese Malacca,** a new mint was established.

- During the Portuguese rule of Old Goa, the chapel of **St. Catherine** was erected.

- **Albuquerque** and his successors mostly preserved the customs and constitutions of the island's thirty village communities, removing only the sati ritual, which saw widows burnt on their husbands' burial pyre.

- **In 1526,** a registry of these traditions was produced, and it is considered one of the most important historical documents on Goan customs.

- **The Cathedral,** a 16th-century structure built during **Portugal's Golden Age,** is the biggest **cathedral in Asia** as well as the largest church in **Portugal.**

- Portugal enhanced Goa in a variety of ways, the most evident of which is in its architecture.

- **Velha Goa,** the historic capital, is now a **UNESCO World Heritage site** with churches, chapels, and convents.

4.7 Mumbai

- Bombay city was an archipelago of seven islands when the **Portuguese Armadas** arrived.

- The **Portuguese in Goa** and Bombay-Bassein were instrumental in the establishment and flourishing of their **Latin Christian religious** orders in Bombay.

- When the islands were leased to many **Portuguese officers** throughout their dictatorship, they gave them various names, which eventually became known as **Bom Baim.**

- **St. Michael's Church** in Mahim, **St John the Baptist Church** in Andheri, **St Andrew's Church and the Basilica** of Mount Bandra (Bombay) in Bandra, and Gloria Church in Byculla were all erected by Portuguese Franciscans and Jesuits.

- The Portuguese also erected defences such as the Bombay Castle, **Castella de Aguada (**Castelo da Aguada or Bandra Fort), and Madh Fort surrounding the city.

- The viceroy in Goa disobeyed the **Portuguese crown** and delayed a complete handover of the seven islands.

- So even after the treaty, some villages in the seven islands of Bombay remained under the control of **Velha Goa**, and it was only after the **Battle of Bassein** in **1739** that the islands were fully acquired by the **English East India Company.**

4.8 Daman and Diu

- **Nino da Cunha** took **Diu and Bassein** from Gujarat's **Bahadur Shah in 1530 CE.**

- They also founded colonies on the west coast at **Salsette, Daman, and Bombay,** and on the east coast at San **Thome near Madras and Hugli in Bengal.**

- However, by the end of the **16th century,** Portuguese dominance in India had waned, and they had lost all of their newly gained holdings in India save Daman, Diu, and Goa.

- When **Humayun r**etreated from **Gujarat in 1536**, Bahadur Shah's ties with the Portuguese deteriorated.

- **Bahadur Shah** planned to build a partition wall after the residents of the town began battling the Portuguese.

- In response, the **Portuguese** began discussions, during which time the monarch of Gujarat was invited aboard a Portuguese ship and assassinated in 1537.

- **Da Cunha** also aimed to enhance **Portuguese influence** in Bengal by placing a large number of Portuguese nationals in the **city of Hooghly.**

4.9 Hooghly

- After getting permission from the **Mughal ruler Akbar,** the Portuguese constructed the town of **Hooghly-Chinsurah** on the banks of the Hooghly river in 1579.

- Bandel flourished as a port and commercial colony, and the Portuguese even built a chapel there.

- During the siege of **Hooghly** in 1632, however, the Mughals set fire to the magnificent **Bandel Church**.

- According to legend, **Shah Jahan** had a priest from the church and a few thousand Christians carried to Agra and put to death by fierce elephants.

- The **Hooghly river valley** is peppered with townships like Chinsurah that have a rich colonial past when taken as a whole.

- Trading settlements were established by the Portuguese, **Dutch, French, Danes, and British.** And there are still monuments from that period in the area.

4.10 Coromandel Zone

- **Saidapettai, Crompettai, and Ulundurpettai** are only a few of the locations in Tamil Nadu with the suffix 'pettai.' The list of places with the suffix 'pettai' runs into the hundreds.

- **Pettai** is a derivation of **Porto**, Portugal's second-largest city after Lisbon, and Porto means port in Portuguese, which is why the suffix pettai is used in various districts in Chennai.

- **Tuticorin** was founded by **Portuguese and Dutch settlers** before the British arrived, which explains why the city in southern Tamil Nadu is heavily influenced by the **Portuguese,** even down to the architecture and **surnames of its residents.**

- According to local census estimates, nearly 2 lakh fishermen in the Tuticorin and Tirunelveli districts had **Portuguese surnames.**

- In and around the Coromandel area, there were Portuguese settlements.

- The earliest church erected by the Portuguese in the area was the **Luz Church in Mylapore,** Madras (Chennai) in 1516, and the So **Tome or San Thome temple** was renovated by them in 1522.

4.11 Impact of Portuguese in Indian Culture

- The **Portuguese presence** in Goa and other parts of India has resulted in the adoption of **Western architectural characteristics.**

- The upshot of this clash of cultures produced a very unique style for both **religious and secular structures** (churches, convents, and Hindu temples).

- The architecture, particularly that of churches, is reminiscent of southern Europe. There are traces of **Portuguese fado in the music.**

- The Portuguese contributed **potatoes, tomatoes, pineapples, and cashews** to the diet, and **Goans produce feni,** their form of moonshine, from the apple of the cashew tree.

- **Tobacco cultivation** was introduced to India by them.

- They disseminated **Catholicism** over India's western and eastern coasts.

- In 1556, they created the **first printing press in India**, in Goa.

- The earliest scientific publication, '**The Indian Medicinal Plants,'** was published in Goa in 1563.

- They were the first to use the **Cartaze System** to outline "How to build maritime trade and mastery over the sea" (i.e. under this system anyone who passes through the Portugal territories must buy permits otherwise they are supposed to be captured.)

- They were the first Europeans to disseminate **Christianity throughout** India and Asia.

4.12 Significance

- Most historians agree that the **arrival of the Portuguese** not only signalled the beginning of the European age, but also the growth of maritime power.

- The **Cholas,** for example, had been a **maritime force,** but this was the first time a foreign power had arrived in India by water.

- The Portuguese ships were armed with **cannons,** and this was the first step toward securing a monopoly over commerce by threatening or using force.

- The Portuguese used **body armour, matchlock soldiers**, and weapons landed from ships in the Malabar in the **16th century,** demonstrating military innovation.

- On the other hand, a **significant military contributio**n made by the Portuguese onshore was the system of **drilling infantry groups**, modelled after the **Spanish model,** which was implemented in the 1630s as a response to Dutch pressure.

- The Portuguese were masters of advanced **maritime tactics.**

- Their multi-decked ships were strongly built, as they were meant to fight out Atlantic gales rather than go ahead of the regular monsoons, allowing them to carry more weapons.

- Goa became a centre of complex **filigree work, fretted foliage work, and metalwork** incorporating diamonds as the silversmith and goldsmith arts thrived.

- However, while the interiors of **churches built under the Portuguese** include a lot of woodwork and art, as well as painted ceilings, the architectural plans are often plain.

4.13 Conclusion

The Portuguese State of India, sometimes known as Portuguese India, was a Portuguese colonial state in the Indian Subcontinent. The Portuguese were the first Europeans to arrive in India and the last to go. **Vasco De Gama** was the first Portuguese to set foot in India in 1498. However, Portuguese control in India is considered to have lasted from 1505 until 1961. Although Portuguese colonialism outlasted its English counterpart, it had little effect outside of its territories.

5. The Dutch (1602-1759)

The **Dutch East India Company** controlled towns and commercial operations in India, which were known as **Dutch Colonies**. **Dutch India** was more of a **geographical location than political power**. The Dutch are the people of Holland (now the Netherlands). The Dutch were the second Europeans to set foot in India, after the Portuguese. The Dutch government granted the **United East India Company** of the Netherlands licence to trade in the East Indies, including India, in 1602. This article will explain to you about **The Dutch** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

5.1 Rise of the Dutch

- The Dutch were driven to travel to the **East by commercial interests**. In 1596, **Cornelis de Houtman** became the first Dutchman to arrive in Sumatra and Bantam.

- The Netherlands' **States-General** merged various trade businesses into the East **India Company of the Netherlands** in 1602.

- This group was also given the authority to wage war, negotiate treaties, seize land, and build castles.

- In 1605, the **Dutch established** their first factory in Masulipatnam, Andhra Pradesh. They built trading centres in various regions of India as a result.

- In 1616 AD, **Dutch Suratte** was founded, and in 1627 AD, Dutch Bengal was founded.

- In 1656 AD, the **Dutch took Ceylon** from the Portuguese. In 1671 AD, they also seized the Portuguese forts on the **Malabar Coast.**

- The **Dutch quickly** developed into a formidable army, conquering **Nagapadam near Madras** (Chennai) from the Portuguese and gaining a footing in South India.

- In terms of money, they made a lot of money by monopolising the market for **black pepper and spices.**

- **Cotton, indigo, silk, rice, and opium were the main Indian goods handled by the Dutch.**

5.2 The Dutch East India Company

- The **Dutch East India Company** (Vereenigde Oost-Indische Compagnie or VOC in Dutch) is regarded as the world's first global enterprise. In addition, it was the first firm to issue shares.

- It was the first firm to be granted the authority to participate in colonial operations such as **fighting wars, executing prisoners, minting money, and establishing colonies.**

- For two centuries, this corporation worked miracles in India and Indonesia, but the pretentious acronym **VOC became Vergaan Onder Corruptie**, which means **"marred by corruption**."

- The **Dutch East India Company,** formerly known as the **"United East India Company,"** was founded in 1602 and established its first permanent trade base in Indonesia.

- They opened their first factory in **India at Masulipatnam in 1605,** followed by factories in **Pulicat in 1610, Surat in 1616, Bimilipatam in 1641**, and **Chinsura in 1653.**

- They created a **factory** in **Pipli,** Bengal, but it was eventually abandoned.

- The Dutch's major goal was to eliminate the Portuguese and British mercantile powers from India and Southeast Asia, and they were successful in displacing the Portuguese as the most powerful power in **European trade.**

- In 1610, they erected a **factory in Pulicat,** which became their major hub of activity. **Fort Geldria** was the name given to it subsequently.

- While the Portuguese were harmed by **Albuquerque's** terrible successors and their harshness and intolerance, the Dutch were defeated by the growing English and French forces and their corruption.

- The Dutch government also interfered heavily, resulting in the Dutch being driven out of India.

- The Dutch were able to drive the **Portuguese** out of Ceylon between 1638 and 1658.

- They conquered Malacca in 1641.

- They were successful in capturing the **Cape of Good Hope in 1652.**

- The **Dutch East India Company** reached its pinnacle in 1669, when it was the world's largest private company, with 150 commercial ships, 40 warships, 50 thousand employees, and a ten-thousand-strong army.

- The **Battle of Colachel,** fought between the **Dutch East India Company** and the State of Travancore army in 1741, was the most significant event in India.

- This was a significant European power's defeat in India, and it signalled the end of the Dutch hegemony.

- The **Dutch East India Company** was finally liquidated in 1800 as a result of corruption and insolvency.

- Although the Dutch influence in India had faded, they remained powerful in Indonesia.

5.3 Dutch Settlements in India

- In 1605, after arriving in India, the Dutch established their first factory in **Masulipatnam (Andhra Pradesh).**
- They then established commercial centres in other regions of India, posing a danger to the Portuguese.
- They took **Nagapadam from the Portuguese** near Madras (Chennai) and made it their major stronghold in South India.
- On the **Coromandel coast,** as well as in Gujarat, Uttar Pradesh, Bengal, and Bihar, the Dutch erected factories.
- They established a factory in **Pulicat, north of Madras, in 1609. Surat (1616), Bimlipatam (1641), Karaikal (1645), Chinsurah (1653), Baranagar, Kasimbazar (near Murshidabad), Balasore, Patna, Nagapatam (1658), and Cochin were their other major Indian factories (1663).**
- They carried different products and commerce from India to the islands of the Far East as part of the redistributive or carrying trade.
- Indigo from the **Yamuna valley** and Central India, **textiles and silk from Bengal, Gujarat,** and the **Coromandel, saltpetre from Bihar, and opium and rice from the Ganga valley** were among the items they transported.

5.4 Anglo-Dutch Rivalry

- The **English** were also gaining importance in the Eastern trade at this time, posing a severe threat to the **Dutch economic interests.** The commercial competition quickly devolved into bloodshed.
- The hatred between the **Dutch and the English** in the East reached a pinnacle in 1623 when the Dutch killed 10 Englishmen and nine **Japanese in Amboyna** (a site in modern-day **Indonesia that the Dutch** had taken from the Portuguese in 1605).
- The competition between the two **European corporations** was heightened as a result of this episode.
- After years of fighting, both parties reached an agreement in 1667, in which the British promised to relinquish all claims to Indonesia and the Dutch agreed to leave India to focus on their more successful commerce in **Indonesia.**
- They had a monopoly on the black pepper and spice trade. **Silk, cotton, indigo, rice, and opium** were the most significant Indian goods sold by the Dutch.

- The **Anglo-Dutch Treaty** of **1814 AD** facilitated the restoration of Dutch **Coromandel and Dutch Bengal** to Dutch rule, but they were returned to British rule as a result of the clause and provisions of the **Anglo-Dutch Treaty** of **1824 AD.**

- Which required the Dutch to ensure all property and establishment transfers until March 1, **1825 AD**.

- As a result, by the middle of **1825 AD,** the Dutch had lost all of their commercial sites in India.

- The obvious happened as a result of the compromise. In **1667 AD,** all parties reached an agreement in which the British committed to withdrawing fully from **Indonesia** in exchange for the Dutch withdrawing from India to trade in Indonesia, based on a give-and-take formula.

5.5 Decline of the Dutch in India

- The **Malay Archipelago** drew the Dutch into its trade.

- Furthermore, during the Third **Anglo-Dutch War (1672–74),** links between Surat and the new English town of Bombay were disrupted, resulting in the Dutch forces capturing three homebound **English ships in the Bay of Bengal.**

- The English counterattack ended in the Dutch being defeated in the **Battle of Hooghly** (November 1759), thereby ending Dutch ambitions in India.

- The Dutch were not interested in establishing an empire in India; their main focus was trade.

- In any event, their major economic interest was in the Indonesian **Spice Islands,** from which they made a large profit.

5.6 Battle of Colachel 1741

- In August 1741, the **Kingdom of Travancore** and the Dutch East India Company fought the **Battle of Colachel (Kolachal).**

- The fight ended in a legendary **Travancore victory,** thus ending Dutch colonial efforts in the Indian subcontinent.

- Although the fight did not end the **Travancore-Dutch** conflict immediately, it did set in motion a series of events that finally resulted at the end of Dutch commerce in Kerala.

- The native leaders recognised that the **Dutch army** might be beaten, which lowered the morale of the **Dutchmen.**

- One notable result was that the **Dutch** convicts donated their services,

and the Travancore army was modernised along with European principles.

- During **Marthanda Varma's** fight against neighbouring **Kerala kingdoms,** the freshly trained Travancore army proved to be devastatingly successful.

5.7 Conclusion

The Dutch East India Company controlled towns and commercial operations in India, which were known as **Dutch Colonies.** Dutch India was more of a geographical location than political power. In comparison to the Portuguese and the English, the Dutch had the shortest presence in India of all the European colonial powers that entered.

6. Anglo Dutch War (1672-74)

The **Anglo-Dutch Wars,** commonly known as the **Dutch Wars or the Dutch Engelse Oorlogen**, were four naval battles between **England and the Dutch Republic** in the **17th and 18th centuries.** The first three wars, sparked by economic competition, established England's naval dominance, while the final, sparked by Dutch meddling in the American Revolution, signalled the republic's demise as a world power. This article will explain to you about **the Anglo-Dutch war(1672-74)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

6.1 Background of Anglo-Dutch war

- The rivalry between the two trade countries resulted in four conflicts, known as the **Anglo-Dutch wars** in English and the **Nederlandse-Engelse** in the Netherlands. **Naval Wars between** the Dutch and the English.

- Three of them took place in the **seventeenth century**, while the other took place in the **eighteenth.**

- These wars were fought over trade disputes and naval superiority. The Dutch dominion in the East Indies was prone to unrest.

- Every time a battle broke out, both sides stepped up their propaganda efforts. As usual, each side believed it had **God on its side.**

- In 1664, for example, an Englishman wrote in '**The English and Dutch affairs** revealed to life' that God's vengeful hand was responsible for the death of over a thousand people in Amsterdam in a week due to disease.

The first Anglo-Dutch war (1652 - 1654)

- The **First Anglo-Dutch War** (1652–54) began at a tense era after England passed the **Navigation Act of 1651,** which barred the Dutch from participating in English sea trade.

- Following the defeat of a Dutch fleet headed by **Adm.**

- **Maarten Tromp** in May 1652, England declared war on the Netherlands on July 8, 1652. (June 28, old style).

- The Dutch under Tromp gained a decisive victory off the coast of **Dungeness** in December, but England's bigger and better-armed men-of-war won most of the significant encounters the next year.

Result of first Anglo-Dutch war

- **The Treaty of Westminster ended the first Anglo-Dutch War on April 15, 1654.**

- The terms of the peace were unfavourable to the Dutch, and the Act of Navigation was still in effect.
- Furthermore, the Treaty featured a secret condition (known as the **Act of Seclusion**) that stated that **William III, t**he young prince of Orange and son of Stadholder William II, would never be permitted to become stadholder himself.

The Second Anglo-Dutch war (1665 - 1667)

- After hostilities had begun the previous year and the English had already taken **New Amsterdam,** the two nations' commercial rivalry escalated to war in 1665 (the **Second Anglo-Dutch War of 1665–67**).
- The first significant naval battle, the **Battle of Lowestoft,** took place on June 13, 1665, and resulted in an English triumph.
- France entered the war on the side of the Dutch in January 1666.
- The Dutch navy proceeded up the **Thames to Gravesend,** then up the **Medway to Chatham.**
- There, it sank four ships and pulled the pride of the English fleet, **HMS Royal Charle**s, to the Netherlands.

Result of Second Anglo-Dutch war

- The provisions of the **Treaty of Breda,** which ended the Second Anglo-Dutch War, were thought to be advantageous to the Netherlands.
- The restrictions governing navigation in England were eased. The Republic, on the other hand, had to accept that New Amsterdam would stay in English hands for the time being.
- The town was christened **New York after James II,** Duke of New York and the English King's brother. **Surinam remained a Dutch colony.**
- In reality, a definitive judgement on 'ownership' of the colonies was delayed.

The Third Anglo-Dutch war (1672 - 1674)

- The **Third Anglo-Dutch** War, sometimes known as the **Third Dutch War**, was a naval confrontation between England and the Dutch Republic, which was allied with France.
- It lasted from 7 April 1672 to 19 February 1674 and was a subset of the larger **Franco-Dutch War,** which lasted from 1672 to 1678.
- The Dutch continue to refer to 1672 as the Year of Disaster. England had formed a coalition that included **France, Munster, and Cologne.**
- These countries declared war on the Republic on April 6, that year.

- Both on land and at sea, the **Netherlands were assaulted**. Michiel de Ruyter was able to avert an invasion from the sea by inflicting a series of serious casualties on the **Anglo-French fleet.**

- On land, events did not go as well for the **Dutch.** A 120,000-strong French army marched on Cologne and crossed the Rhine to attack Britain.

- The **bishop of Munster** and his forces crossed the border in the eastern province of Overijssel at the same time.

- According to history books, 1672 was the year "**the people lost their senses,** the government was at its wits' end, and the nation was irretrievably lost."

Result of Third Anglo-Dutch war

- The war was declared over with the signing of the **Second Treaty of Westminster.**

- England was granted the right of the first salute and was compensated with a million English pounds.

- However, William III was successful in dismantling the **Anglo-French alliance,** which had posed such a threat to the Netherlands.

- **New Amsterdam,** which the Dutch had reclaimed in 1673 and renamed Nieuw-Oranje (New Orange), was permanently given over to the English, while the Dutch maintained Surinam.

The Fourth Anglo-Dutch war (1780-1674)

- Since the **Glorious Revolution** and the ascension of **William III and Mary II Stuart** to the **English throne,** commercial supremacy has moved to England, with London becoming an increasingly significant trading centre.

- The **Dutch backed** the uprising against English control in the American colonies.

- The Dutch sent firearms and ammunition to the **Americans** via the **Caribbean island of St Eustatius.**

- **America served** as a model for Dutch Patriots seeking to limit the power of stadtholder **William V** and establish a more **democratic form of government.**

- **England** and the **Dutch Republic** had been allies for a century until they went to war again (the **Fourth Anglo-Dutch War** of 1780–84) over covert Dutch commerce and discussions with the American colonies, which were then in insurrection against England.

- The **English declared war** on the Dutch on December 20, 1780, and soon conquered major Dutch colonies in the West and East Indies while laying a formidable blockade of the Dutch coast the next year.

- In the sole notable combat of the war, a small Dutch force assaulted a British convoy near **Dogger Bank i**n August 1781, resulting in an indecisive battle.

- However, **England** was never able to create a combat-ready navy.

- The **Dutch were** at the pinnacle of their strength and reputation when the war concluded in May 1784.

Result of Fourth Anglo-Dutch war

- The **Treaty of Paris** ended the Fourth Anglo-Dutch War in 1784. An armistice had already been signed a year previously.

- England was granted **unrestricted sailing** in the East Indies, and the Dutch were forced to relinquish **Nagapattinam** on India's east coast.

- The fourth **Anglo-Dutch War,** as it turned out, was the beginning of the end for the Republic of the United Netherlands.

6.2 Conclusion

From the mid-17th to late 18th centuries, the Anglo-Dutch Wars were a series of hostilities mostly fought between the Dutch Republic and England (later Great Britain). The first three wars were fought for commerce and overseas colonies in the second half of the 17th century, while the fourth was fought a century later. Almost the majority of the fights were naval encounters. The first encounter was won by the English, while the second and third bouts were won by the Dutch. However, by the time of the fourth war, the British Royal Navy had risen to become the world's most formidable marine force.

7. The English (1599-1947)

From 1599 to 1947, the British ruled over the Indian subcontinent under the name **British Raj.** In India, the rule is also known as **Crown rule or direct rule.** In contemporary use, the territory under British administration was **known as India,** and it encompassed regions directly managed by the **United Kingdom, known as British India,** as well as areas ruled by indigenous rulers but subject to British supremacy, known as the princely states. Although not formally, the territory was known as the Indian Empire. This article will explain to you about **The English(1599-1947)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

7.1 Rise of English

- The **English triumph** over the **Spanish Armada** in 1588, as well as Francis Drake's trip around the world in 1580, instilled a fresh feeling of adventure in the British, inspiring seamen to go to the East.
- As word spread about the great profits made by the **Portuguese in Eastern commerce,** English businessmen sought a piece of the action.
- As a result, in 1599, the **'Merchant Adventurers,'** a group of English merchants, created a company.
- As the Dutch began to focus more on the **East Indies,** the English moved to India in quest of textiles and other trading items.

English East India Company

- In 1599, a group of merchants known as **Merchant Adventurers** created an English business to trade with the east.
- In 1600, the queen granted it authorization and exclusive rights to trade with the east.
- Captain Hawkins was given the royal farman by Mughal emperor Jahangir to establish industries on the western shore.
- **Sir Thomas Roe** afterwards gained the farman to develop factories across the Mughal empire.
- It began as the **"Governor and Company** of Merchants of London dealing into the East Indies." Its shares were owned by British nobility and wealthy businessmen.
- Despite its origins as a commercial concern, it laid the ground for the establishment of the **British Raj in India.**
- **Cotton, indigo dye, silk, salt, saltpetre, opium,** and **tea** were its principal commodities. Saltpetre was a component of gunpowder.

- The earliest business factory in south India was established in 1610 at **Machilipatnam** (modern-day Andhra Pradesh) along the Coromandel Coast.
- The **Regulating Act of 1773** imposed significant administrative changes on the business and established **Warren Hastings** as the **first Governor-General** of Bengal, with authority over the other two presidencies.
- Several further acts were issued in the years leading up to 1853 in order to control and administer the company's holdings in India.
- The **Revolt of 1857** was largely caused by the company's indifferent practices and corruption in India.
- This also marked the end of the company's reign over India, with control passing directly to the British government via the **Government of India Act 1858.**
- All of the company's assets, as well as its military and administrative functions, were given to the government.

Timeline of East India Company

1600	The East India Company was founded
1609	William Hawkins arrives at Jahangir's court.
1611	Captain Middleton gains permission from the Mughal governor of Surat to trade there.
1613	The East India Company established a permanent factory in Surat.
1615	Sir Thomas Roe, King James I's ambassador, arrives to Jahangir's court
1618	The embassy had obtained two farmans (one from the emperor and one from Prince Khurram) affirming unfettered commerce and freedom from inland tolls.
1616	The company opened its first plant in the south, in Masulipatnam.
1632	The Company receives the golden farman from the Sultan of Golconda, assuring the safety and success of their commerce.
1633	The Company opened its first plant in east India, in Hariharpur, Balasore (Odisha).
1639	The Company obtains a lease on Madras from a native ruler
1651	The Company is granted authorization to trade at Hooghly(Bengal).
1662	Bombay is handed to the British King, Charles II, as a dowry for marrying a Portuguese lady (Catherine of Braganza).
1667	Aurangzeb offers the English a farman for commerce in Bengal.

1691   The Company receives an imperial order to continue trading in Bengal in exchange for a yearly payment of Rs 3,000.

1717   The Mughal emperor Farrukhsiyar publishes a farman known as the Magna Carta of the Company, which grants the Company a slew of trade advantages.

From Traders to Rulers

- The **East India Company** received a charter from England's queen, Queen Elizabeth I, in 1600, allowing it exclusive rights to trade with the East. From then on, no other trade organisation in England could compete with the East India Company.

- The royal charter, however, did not preclude other European nations from joining the **Eastern markets.**

- **The Portuguese** had previously established a foothold on India's western coast and had a stronghold while the **Dutch** were also investigating trading **opportunities in the Indian Ocean**. The French tradesmen soon came on the scene.

- The issue was that all of the businesses wanted to buy the same goods. As a result, the only option for trade businesses to thrive was to eliminate other rivals.

- As a result of the need to **protect markets**, trade businesses engaged in heated conflicts.

- Arms were used in trade, and trading stations were fortified to defend them.

- In 1651, the first **English factory** was established on the banks of the **Hugli River.**

- By 1696, it had begun constructing a fort around the village near the factory, where merchants and dealers worked.

- The corporation convinced **Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb** to issue a farman giving the company duty-free commerce.

- Only the Company had been authorised duty-free trading by Aurangzeb's farman. The Nawab of Bengal, Murshid Quli Khan, protested against this behaviour.

- Following Aurangzeb's death, the Bengal nawabs reaffirmed their sovereignty and autonomy, as did other regional authorities at the period.

- The **Nawabs** refused to grant the Company concessions, demanding hefty payments for the Company's ability to trade, denied the Company the right to issue money, and prevented it from expanding its defences.

- **The Company,** for its part, stated that the trade could only thrive if the tariffs were abolished.
- It was also convinced that in order to promote commerce, it needed to extend its colonies, purchase villages, and renovate its forts.
- The tensions escalated into clashes, culminating in the legendary **Battle of Plassey.**

Battle of Plassey

- The **Battle of Plassey** took place in Bengal's Palashi area on June 23, 1757.
- The arrival of Calcutta of a huge army from Madras, headed by **Robert Clive,** enhanced the **English position in Bengal.**
- Robert Clive finally commanded the Company's troops against Siraj Ud Daulah at Plassey in 1757.
- Clive had enlisted the help of one of **Siraj Ud Daulah's commanders,** Mir Jafar, by promising to crown him **Nawab when Siraj Ud Daulah** was defeated.
- The **Battle of Plassey** became notable because it was the **English East India** Company's first big victory in India.
- The major goal of the **East India Company** has now shifted from trade to territorial expansion.
- **The Company** was named Diwan of the Bengal region by the Mughal emperor in 1765. The Diwani provided the Company with access to Bengal's substantial income streams.

Battle of Buxar (1764)

- The **Battle of Buxar** took place on October 22, 1764, between an united coalition of Indian kings from Bengal, Awadh, and the **Mughal Empire** and a British force headed by Hector Munro.
- The British would dominate India for the next 183 years as a result of this important conflict.
- In a tightly fought **battle at Buxar** on October 22, 1764, the united troops of **Mir Kasim, the Nawab of Awadh, and Shah Alam II** were destroyed by English forces led by Major Hector Munro.
- The English counter-offensive against Mir Kasim was brief but effective.
- The significance of this war rested in the fact that the English beat not only the **Nawab of Bengal,** but also the **Mughal Emperor of India.**
- The victory established the English as a major force in northern India, with aspirations to rule the entire nation.

7.2 Administration

Warren Hastings was a key figure in this time period.

- By his time, the **Company** had consolidated authority not only in Bengal, but also in Bombay and Madras, which were referred to as Presidencies.

- A Governor was in charge of each. The Governor-General was the highest-ranking official in the administration.

- The first **Governor-General, Warren Hastings,** instituted a number of administrative changes, particularly in the area of justice.

- **The Regulating Act of 1773** established a new Supreme Court, as well as a court of appeal - the Sadar Nizamat Adalat – in Calcutta.

- The Collector, who was responsible for collecting income and taxes as well as maintaining peace and order in his district with the support of judges, police officers, and other officials, was the most important individual in an Indian district.

7.3 Causes of British Success in India

- It took about a century for the British to expand and consolidate their influence in India.

- Over the course of a century and a half, the **English** utilised a variety of diplomatic and military strategies, as well as other processes, to eventually establish themselves as India's rulers.

- The **English utilised** both war and administrative methods to impose their dominance over several kingdoms and, eventually, to cement their own dominion over all of India.

7.4 Superior Arms, Military Strategy

- The **English armaments**, which included muskets and cannons, were faster and had a longer range than the Indian weapons.

- In the absence of creativity, Indian rulers' military officers and armies became simply mimics of English officers and armies.

7.5 Military Discipline and Regular Salary

- The **English Company** guaranteed the commanders and troops' loyalty by establishing a regular system of salary payment and enforcing a severe code of discipline.

7.6 Civil Discipline and Fair Selection System

- The Company leaders and men were awarded command based on their dependability and talent rather than on **inherited, caste, or tribal relationships.**

- They were held to a stringent code of conduct and were well-informed about the goals of their campaigns.

7.7 Brilliant Leadership

- **Clive, Warren Hastings, Elphinstone, Munro, Marquess of Dalhousie,** and others exemplified uncommon leadership skills.
- The English also had a lengthy list of secondary leaders, such as Sir Eyre Coote, Lord Lake, and Arthur Wellesley, who fought for the cause and glory of their nation rather than for the leader.

7.8 Strong Financial Backup

- The Company's earnings were sufficient to provide substantial dividends to its stockholders as well as fund the English wars in India.
- Furthermore, **England's commerce** with the rest of the globe was bringing in huge riches.

Nationalist Pride

- The **'weak, divided-among-themselves Indians,'** devoid of a sense of cohesive political nationalism, met an economically prospering British people believing in material development and proud of their national pride.
- The **English Company's success** was also due to the absence of materialistic perspective among Indians.

7.9 Rise of Indian National Congress

- By 1880, India had developed a new middle class that was dispersed across the country.
- Furthermore, the combined stimulus of encouragement and anger fostered a rising sense of camaraderie among its members.
- **A.O. Hume,** a retired English government official, gave the idea its ultimate shape by rallying notable thinkers of the time.
- The **Indian National Congress** arose from the desire of politically aware Indians to establish a national entity to reflect their political and economic aspirations.
- Its goals were to foster and strengthen a sense of national unity among all people, regardless of religion, caste, or province.
- Indian nationhood must be carefully promoted and nurtured.
- As a result, the INC would function as a buffer organisation, or in other words, as a safety valve.

Partition of Bengal (1950)

- In the early 1900s, Indian nationalism was growing in power, and Bengal was the epicentre of Indian nationalism.
- The **Viceroy, Lord Curzon (1899-1905),** intended to **'dethrone Calcutta'** from its role as the hub from which the Congress Party dominated Bengal and India as a whole.
- Since December 1903, the idea of dividing Bengal into two halves has been floating around.
- From 1903 through 1905, the Congress party used moderate tactics such as petitions, memos, speeches, public gatherings, and press campaigns. The goal was to mobilise Indian and **English public** opinion against the split.
- On July 19, 1905, **Viceroy Curzon** 1905 publicly declared the British Government's decision to split Bengal. On October 16, 1905, the division went into force.
- The split was intended to encourage a different sort of separation - one based on religion.
- The goal was to pit Muslim communalists against the **Congress. Curzon** claimed that Dacca would become the new capital.
- The Indians were extremely dissatisfied as a result of this. Many saw this as the British government's **'Divide and Rule'** programme.
- This sparked the **Swadeshi movement**, which aimed to achieve self-sufficiency.

7.10 British Policy - Towards INC

- The British had been wary of the **National Congress** since its founding, but they weren't outright hostile.
- Viceroy Dufferin mocked INC in 1888, calling it a **"microscopic minority"** that primarily represented the wealthy.
- When the **Swadeshi and Boycott Movements** began, the British's intimidating attitudes regarding INC began to shift. The British were frightened by the rise of a violent nationalist movement.
- A new policy known as the **carrot-and-stick policy** was implemented. It was a three-pronged strategy. It was referred to as a repression - conciliation - suppression programme.
- Extremists were suppressed, but only moderately at first. The goal is to scare the **Moderates**.
- The British also attempted to appease Moderates by offering concessions and promises in exchange for their separation from the Extremists.
- The British, on the other hand, have always tried to curb extremists.

7.11 Nationalist Movements in India

- The Britishers' inflexibility and, in certain cases, their violent responses to non-violent demonstrations triggered India's independence movement in phases.

- It was acknowledged that the British controlled India's resources and the lives of its people, and that India could not be for Indians until this control was removed.

National Movements	*Leaders*	*Significance*
Gadar Movement (1914)	Bhagwan Singh, Har Dayal	• The Ghadar Movement was a worldwide political movement led by expatriate Indians that aimed to destabilise British authority in India. • The founding members were largely Punjabi Indians living and working on the West Coast of the United States and Canada.. • The Ghadar militants went on a tour of mills and fields, where the majority of the Punjabi immigrant labourers worked. These political activists made the Yugantar Ashram their home, headquarters, and shelter.
Home rule Movement (1916-18)	Annie Besant and Bal Gangadhar Tilak	• Annie Besant, a Free Thought, Radicalism, Fabianism, and Theosophy proponent, arrived in India in 1893 to work for the Theosophical Society. • In 1914, she made the decision to broaden the scope of her work. She organised a Home Rule campaign similar to the Irish Home Rule League. • Tilak championed the Home Rule movement, which connected the demand for the creation of linguistic states and instruction in the vernacular language to the topic of Swaraj. • The British government issued the Montagu Declaration as a show of reconciliation. Home Rule or self-government movements were no longer seen as treasonous.
Rowlatt Satyagraha (1919)	Mahatma Gandhi	• The Imperial Legislative Council in Delhi passed the Anarchical and Revolutionary Crimes Act of 1919, also known as the Rowlatt Act. • On March 18, 1919, indefinitely extending the emergency measures of preventive indefinite detention, incarceration without trial, and judicial review enacted in the Defence of India Act 1915 during World War I.

(contd.)

		• The Sedition Committee, led by Sir Sidney Rowlatt, recommended that this legislation be approved. • Gandhiji began the Satyagraha movement to protest the inhumane Rowlatt Act. • The demonstrations were particularly fierce in Punjab, where Gandhiji was imprisoned.
Jallianwala bagh Massacre (1919)		• The Rowlatt Act, which was passed in 1919, sparked widespread political turmoil across India. • The British Brigadier-General R. E. H. Dyer encircled the Bagh with his forces in reaction to the public assembly. • General Dyer ordered his men to open fire on the nationalist rally, which resulted in the deaths of hundreds of people. The atrocities in Jallianwala Bagh shocked the whole country. • Many moderate Indians abandoned their earlier devotion to the British and became nationalists suspicious of British authority as a result of this occurrence.
Non Cooperation movement (1920)	Mahatma Gandhi	• Gandhiji advocated for a "non-cooperation" campaign against British control. Indians who wanted colonialism to end were told they couldn't go to school, college, or the courts. • They were told they wouldn't have to pay any taxes. In summary, they were instructed to "renounce all voluntary relationships with the British Government." • C.R. Das moved the primary motion on non-cooperation when the Congress convened in Nagpur for its annual session. • Many revolutionary terrorist groups, particularly in Bengal, have pledged their support to the campaign. • By this time, the Congress's purpose had shifted from achieving self-government by constitutional means to achieving Swaraj through nonviolent means.
Khilafat Movement (1919-24)	Shoukat Ali and Mohammad Ali	• The Khilafat movement was a political protest movement initiated by Muslims in British India to reinstall the Ottoman Caliphate's caliph, who was seen as the Muslim leader. • Gandhiji joined forces with the Khilafat Movement to extend the scope of the Indian liberation movement.

		• When Turkey established a more favourable diplomatic position and headed towards nationalism in late 1922, the movement came to an end. By 1924, Turkey had overthrown the caliphate.
Chauri Chaura incident (1922)	Mahatma Gandhi	• The protestors retaliated by attacking and torching a police station, murdering all of its inhabitants. Three civilians and 22 police officers were killed in the event. • As a direct result of the Chauri Chaura event, Mahatma Gandhi, who was a staunch opponent of violence, put an end to the national non-cooperation campaign on February 12, 1922. • Despite Gandhi's decision, British colonial authorities condemned 19 detained protestors to death and 14 to life imprisonment.

Simon commission (1927)

- An all-white Simon Commission was constituted on November 8, 1927, to determine whether India was ready for further constitutional reforms.

- The **Indian National Congress** boycotted the **Simon Commission** because no Indians were represented on it. Protests were held in a number of locations.

- **Lala Lajpat Rai**, the most famous leader of Punjab and a hero of the extreme days, was killed in Lahore.

- In November 1928, he died as a result of his injuries.

- Bhagat Singh and his companions wanted to avenge **Lala Lajpat Rai's** killing. In December 1928, they assassinated Saunders, a white police officer.

- During the boycott of the **Simon Commission, Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Bose** emerged as the movement's leaders.

7.12 Nehru Report - Attempt to Draft Constitution

- **Motilal Nehru led the All Parties Conference committee** that drafted the Constitution, with his son Jawaharlal Nehru serving as secretary. This committee had a total of nine members.

- **The Nehru Report,** which was essentially a paper to plead for dominion status and a federal government for the constitution of India, was submitted by the committee in 1928.

- The **Nehru Report** also rejected the notion of distinct communal electorates, which had been the foundation of earlier constitutional amendments.

- Muslims would be given priority at the Centre and in provinces where they were a numerical minority, but not in provinces where they were the majority.

7.13 Civil disobedience Movement (1930)

- **Lord Irwin** had disregarded Gandhi's ultimatum, which stated the minimal demands in the form of 11 points, and there was now only one way out: civil disobedience. Gandhi's principal instrument of civil disobedience was salt.
- Gandhi launched the **Civil Disobedience Movement** on April 6, 1930, by scooping up a handful of salt - a struggle that would go on to become unrivalled in the history of the Indian national movement for the country-wide public engagement it sparked.
- The Khudai Khidmatgars, also known as the Red Shirts, led by **Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan,** were heavily involved in the **Civil Disobedience Movement.**

7.14 Quit India Movement (1942)

- During World War II, Mahatma Gandhi started the **Quit India Movement** at the Bombay session of the All India Congress Committee, seeking an end to British rule in India.
- The ordinary people of the land showed unrivalled gallantry and militancy during this conflict.
- However, the repression they were subjected to was the most severe ever utilised against a national movement.
- **Gandhiji** was adamant about total emancipation and no more British piecemeal approach during the momentous August conference at **Gowalia Tank** in Bombay.

7.15 Mountbatten Plan (1947)

- Lord Mountbatten and officials from the **Indian National Congress**, the Muslim League, and the Sikh community reached an agreement on the 3 June Plan, often known as the **Mountbatten Plan.** This was the final strategy for achieving independence.
- The British government agreed to the partition of British India on principle.
- Successor governments would be granted control over the rest of the world.
- Both countries have autonomy and sovereignty.
- The subsequent administrations were able to write their own constitution.

- The Princely States were offered the option of joining Pakistan or India based on two key factors: geographic proximity and popular desire.
- The **India Independence Act of 1947** was enacted as a result of the Mountbatten plan.

7.16 Indian Independence act (1947)

- The United Kingdom's Parliament approved the Indian Independence Act of 1947, which separated British India into two new sovereign dominions: the Dominion of India (later known as the Republic of India) and the Dominion of Pakistan (later to become the Islamic Republic of Pakistan).
- The Royal Assent to this Act was given on July 18, 1947. On August 15, 1947, India and Pakistan gained independence.
- As per their cabinet decisions, India continues to commemorate August 15th as Independence Day, whereas Pakistan celebrates August 14th as Independence Day.

7.17 Impacts of British in India

- The British introduced new job opportunities that benefited the lower castes in particular. They had a higher likelihood of upward social mobility with these chances.
- The emergence of India's contemporary middle class: During British control, an important middle class emerged, which would later become pioneers of Indian industry in the post-independence era.
- **Infrastructure Development:** The British government constructed several vital infrastructures, including hospitals, schools, and, most importantly, railways. Of course, everything was done to enable the exploitation of the indigenous Indians, not to improve their life.
- Regardless, these infrastructures provided the groundwork for India's rise to global economic supremacy.
- The advent of **new technology** and concepts, such as steamships, telegraphs, and railroads, drastically transformed the Indian subcontinent's economic environment.
- In terms of culture, the British put an end to societal ills like **Sati (the Bengal Sati Regulation Act** was passed on December 4, 1829) and undermined the caste system to some extent.
- India was considered as the "jewel in the crown of the British Empire" for its defence against foreign adversaries.
- As a result, the British offered defence against Persia and Afghanistan. Other western countries, like France, were discouraged from becoming too engaged in India.

- Though initially beneficial, it eventually proved to be a disadvantage since it rendered India overly reliant on the British.

7.18 Consequences of British rule

- Destruction of Indian Industry: After Britain acquired control, the governments were compelled to buy commodities from the British Isles rather than produce their own.

- The **local fabric, metal, and carpentry** businesses were thrown into turmoil as a result.

- It effectively rendered India a virtual slave to Britain's **economic manoeuvrings,** implying that breaking away would be disastrous for India's economy.

- Famines resulted from **British mismanagement:** the British placed a greater priority on the production of cash crops than on the development of foods that would feed India's massive population.

- To feed the empire's population, they imported food from various areas of the empire.

- Between 1850 and 1899, this approach, along with uneven food distribution, resulted in 24 famines, killing millions of people.

- The British realised that they could never control a big country like India without dividing up powerful kingdoms into tiny, easily conquerable portions.

- The British Empire also made it a priority to pay religious leaders to speak out against one another, damaging ties between faiths over time.

- This strategy is directly responsible for the tense relationship between India and Pakistan.

- **Britain plunders the Indian economy:** It is believed that Britain stole trillions of dollars due in part to the East India Company's corrupt commercial practices.

- These actions ruined Indian industry and ensured that money pouring through the Indian economy ended up in London's hands.

7.19 Conclusion

In contemporary use, the territory under British administration was referred to as India, and it encompassed both regions directly managed by the United Kingdom, known as British India, and areas ruled by indigenous rulers but subject to British supremacy, known as princely states. The Indian Empire was a term used to describe the region. With the establishment of British administration in India, significant changes occurred in the socioeconomic and political areas of Indian society.

8. Battle of Plassey (1757)

The **Battle of Plassey (1757)** was a **watershed moment** in modern Indian history, resulting in the consolidation of British rule in India. The **East India Company**, led by **Robert Clive**, fought this battle against the **Nawab of Bengal (Siraj-Ud-Daulah)** and his **French Troop**. This battle is often referred to as the **"decisive event,"** as it was the source of the British's ultimate rule in India. The battle took place during the late reign of the **Mughal Empire (called later Mughal Period)**. The Mughal emperor **Alamgir-II** ruled the empire at the time of the Battle of Plassey. In this article, we will learn in detail the causes and significance of the **Battle of Plassey** which will be helpful for UPSC exam preparation.

8.1 Background

- **Siraj-Ud-Daula** succeeded his grandfather **Alivardi Khan** as Nawab of Bengal.

- He had become Nawab of Bengal the previous year, and he had ordered the English to halt their fortification expansion.

- The British victory in the Carnatic wars has made Siraj-Ud-Daula fearful of the British rising power in India.

- The Company's officials abused their trade privileges in a way that harmed the nawab's finances.

8.2 Causes

- The Company's officials **abused their trade privileges** in a way that harmed the nawab's finances.

- Without the permission of the nawab, the **English fortified Calcutta**.

- The Company tried to mislead him further and compounded their error by **granting asylum to a political fugitive, Krishna Das**, son of Raj Ballabh, who had fled with enormous treasures against the nawab's will.

- The Company, for its part, suspected Siraj of conspiring with the French in Bengal to drastically reduce its trade privileges.

- As a result, when Siraj attacked and seized the English fort at Calcutta, it exposed their hostility.

- The widely publicized **'Black Hole Tragedy'** should be mentioned here.

- **Siraj-ud-Daulah** is thought to have **imprisoned 146 English people**, who were housed in a very small room, where 123 of them **died of suffocation**.

8.3 Battle of Plassey

- **The Battle of Plassey took place on June 23, 1757, in the Palashi region of Bengal.**

- The arrival of a large force led by Robert Clive from Madras in Calcutta strengthened the English position in Bengal.

- Clive formed a **secret alliance** with the nawab's traitors, **Mir Jafar, Rai Durlabh, Jagat Seth (a powerful banker in Bengal), and Omichand**.

- Mir Jafar was to be made nawab as part of the agreement, and the Company would be rewarded for its services.

- The Company's covert alliance with the conspirators bolstered the English position even more

- As a result, the English victory in the Battle of Plassey was determined before the battle even began.

- The 50,000-strong force of Siraj was defeated by a handful of Clive's forces as a result of the nawab's officials' conspiracy.

- **Mir Jafar's son, Miran**, ordered the capture and murder of Siraj-ud-Daulah.

- The Battle of Plassey gave the English access to Bengal's vast resources.

- Following Plassey, the English virtually monopolized Bengal's trade and commerce.

8.4 Participants

- Siraj-ud-Daula

- He was the Nawab of Bengal.

- He was involved in the **Black-Hole Tragedy** (imprisoned 146 English persons who were lodged in a very tiny room due to which 123 of them died of suffocation).

- Was affected negatively by the East India Company's rampant abuse of trade privileges.

- He attacked and seized the English fort at Calcutta, thus exposing its hostility against the British.

Robert Clive

- He gave asylum to Political fugitive Krishna Das which disappointed Siraj-Ud-Daulah.

- Misused the trade privileges.

- He fortified Calcutta without the nawab's permission.

Mir Jafar

- He was Commander-in-Chief of Nawab's army.
- He bribed the East India Company (EIC).
- EIC was going to make him Nawab for conspiring against Siraj-Ud-Daulah.
- He cheated Siraj-Ud-Daulah during the battle.

Rai Durlabh

- He was one of the commanders of Nawab's army.
- He joined Siraj-Ud-army Daulah's but did not take part in the battle, thus betraying Siraj.

Jagat Seth

- He was an influential banker.
- He was involved in the conspiracy that resulted in the imprisonment and eventual killing of Nawab Siraj-Ud-Daulah.

Omi Chand

- He was a merchant from Bengal.
- He was one of the main organizers of the conspiracy against the Nawab and a signatory to the treaty negotiated by Robert Clive before the Battle of Plassey in 1757.

8.5 Significance

Mir Jafar was crowned Nawab of Bengal as a result of this victory.

- **He gave the English large sums of money as well as the zamindari of 24 Parganas.**
- The Battle of Plassey was politically significant because it laid the groundwork for the British empire in India; it is rightly regarded as the beginning of British rule in India.
- The battle established the English military superiority in Bengal.
- The French, their main rivals, were deposed.
- They were granted territories to maintain a properly equipped military force, and their prestige skyrocketed.
- However, there was no discernible change in the form of government, despite the fact that supreme control of affairs had passed to Clive, on whose support the new nawab, Mir Jafar, was entirely dependent in order to maintain his newly acquired position.

8.6 Effects of Battle of Plassey

Political Effects

- The French forces were defeated at the Battle of Plassey.
- Mir Jafar was proclaimed Nawab of Bengal.
- Mir Jafar was dissatisfied with his position and directed the Dutch to attack the British in order to solidify his foundation.
- **On November 25, 1759, the Dutch and British forces fought the Battle of Chinsura.**
- **Mir Qasim** was installed as Nawab of Bengal by the British.
- The British established themselves as the dominant European power in Bengal.
- Robert Clive was made **"Lord Clive",** Baron of Plassey, and was elected to the British House of Commons.

Economic Effects

- India's economy was severely harmed.
- Following the victory, the British began imposing strict rules and regulations on the people of Bengal in the name of tax collection.

8.7 Mir Kasim and the Treaty of 1760

- Clive's interference irritated Mir Jafar more and more.
- At Chinsura, he formed a conspiracy with the Dutch.
- The Dutch, however, were defeated and humiliated by English forces at Bedara in November 1759.
- The English were irritated by Mir Jafar's treachery and failure to make payments owed to the Company.
- Meanwhile, Miran, Jafar's son, died, and a fight for the nawabship of Bengal erupted between Mir Kasim, Mir Jafar's son-in-law, and Miran's son.
- Following the signing of a treaty between Mir Kasim and the Company in 1760, Vansittart, the new Governor of Calcutta, agreed to support Mir Kasim's claim.

The following were important aspects of the treaty:

- Mir Kasim agreed to hand over the districts of Burdwan, Midnapur, and Chittagong to the Company.
- The Company would receive half of Sylhet's chunam trade.
- Mir Kasim agreed to pay the Company's outstanding debts.

- Mir Kasim promised to contribute five lakh rupees to the Company's war efforts in southern India.

- It was agreed that Mir Kasim's enemies would be the Company's enemies, and his friends would be the Company's friends.

- It was agreed that tenants of the nawab's territory would not be permitted to settle on the Company's lands, and vice versa.

- Mir Jafar resigned under pressure from the Company in favor of Mir Kasim.

- Mir Jafar was given a pension of Rs 1,500 per year.

Steps taken by Mir Kasim

- Mir Kasim was the most capable of Alivardi Khan's successors.

- Mir Kasim **moved the capital from Murshidabad to Munger** in Bihar after assuming power.

- The decision was made to keep a safe distance from the Company in Calcutta.

- His other significant actions included reorganizing the bureaucracy with men of his choosing and redesigning the army to improve its skill and efficiency.

8.8 Conclusion

The fighting culminated in Robert Clive's astonishing victory at Plassey, where 3,000 British and sepoy troops defeated Siraj-ud-18,000-man Daulah's Franco-Bengali army in forty minutes. The victory at Plassey in 1757 established Britain as the dominant force in India, which gradually came under British control and became the empire's most prized possession. Few battles in history have had such far-reaching consequences.

9. Battle of Buxar (1764)

The **Battle of Buxar** took place on **October 22, 1764**, between the **British army led by Hector Munro** and a combined alliance of Indian rulers from Bengal, Awadh, and the Mughal Empire. This historic battle laid the groundwork for the British to rule India for the next **183 years**. The British East India Company set its sights on Bengal after winning the **Battle of Plassey in 1757**. The battle ended in 1765, with the Mughal Emperor surrendering and Bengal coming under British control. In this article, we will learn in detail regarding the causes and significance of **Battle of Buxar** which will be helpful for UPSC exam preparation.

9.1 Background

- **Mir Kasim**, the Company reasoned, would be an ideal puppet for them. Mir Kasim, on the other hand, **defied the Company's expectations**.
- **Ram Narayan**, Bihar's deputy governor, refused to respond to the nawab's repeated requests to submit Bihar's revenue accounts.
- Mir Kasim couldn't stand up to such open defiance of his authority. However, Ram Narayan was supported by Patna's English officials.
- **Misuse of the Company's dastak or trade permit** (a permit that exempted the specified goods from duty payment) by Company officials also contributed to tensions between the nawab and the English.
- The **nawab lost tax revenue** as a result of the dastak's misuse.
- It also forced local merchants to compete unfairly with Company merchants.
- The English company had obtained the right to trade in Bengal without paying transit dues or tolls through an imperial farman.
- However, the Company's servants claimed the same privileges for their private trade.
- Dastak was also sold to Indian merchants for a commission by the Company's servants.
- Furthermore, they used coercive methods to obtain goods at lower prices, which was contrary to the spirit of duty-free trade.
- Duty-free shopping simply meant getting a good deal in an otherwise competitive market.
- Mir Kasim decided to abolish the duties entirely, but the British objected and insisted on preferential treatment over other traders.
- The Nawab-Company **feud over transit duty sparked war** between the English and Mir Kasim in **1763**.

- The English won at Katwah, Murshidabad, Giria, Sooty, and Munger in quick succession.
- Mir Kasim **fled to Awadh (or Oudh),** where he **formed a confederacy** with the **Nawab of Awadh, Shuja-ud-Daulah, and the Mughal Emperor, Shah Alam II**, to reclaim Bengal from the English.

9.2 Events of Battle of Buxar

- It was one of the subcontinent's first major defeats, as a combined army of 40,000 men from the Mughals, Awadh, and Mir Qasim was brutally defeated by a British army of 10,000 men.
- The **lack of coordination** among the major three disparate allies was one of the primary reasons for this defeat.
- When Mirza Najaf Khan led the Mughal Army's first flank to ambush the British at dawn, Major Hector was able to form the British lines in twenty minutes and halt the Mughals' advance.
- As a result, Munro divided the British Army into columns and pursued the Mughal Grand Vizier Shuja-ud-Daula, the Nawab of Awadh, who responded by **blowing up his boat bridge** after crossing the river.
- This had the unintended consequence of **Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II** and his regiment **abandoning the war**.
- According to historian John Willaim Fortescue, the British suffered 847 casualties, while Indian allies lost 2000 soldiers.
- Munro then decided to help the **Marathas**, who were described as a **"warlike race"** known for their **unwavering hatred of the Mughal Empire** and its Nawabs.

9.3 Participants

Mir Kasim

- He objected to the English's use of **"dastak"** and **"farmans".**
- He plotted against them by forming an alliance with the Nawab of Awadh and Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II.

Shuja-ud-Daulah

- He was the Nawab of Awadh.
- He formed a confederacy with Mir Qasim and Shah Alam-II.

Shah Alam II

- He was the Mughal Emperor.
- He wished to drive the English out of Bengal.

Hector Munro

- He was a British Army major.
- He led the English side in the Buxar War.

Robert Clive

- He signed treaties with Shuja-Ud-Daulah and Shah Alam-II after winning the buxar war.

9.4 Consequences

- The **combined armies of Mir Kasim, the Nawab of Awadh, and Shah Alam II were defeated** by English forces led by Major Hector Munro on October 22, 1764, at Buxar.
- The English campaign against Mir Kasim was brief but powerful.
- The significance of this battle lay in the fact that the English defeated not only the Nawab of Bengal, but also the Mughal Emperor of India.
- The victory established the English as a major power in northern India and a contender for supremacy over the entire country.
- Following the battle, Mir Jafar, who was appointed Nawab in 1763 after relations between Mir Kasim and the Company soured, agreed to hand over the **districts of Midnapore, Burdwan, and Chittagong** to the English for army maintenance.
- The English were also allowed duty-free trade in Bengal, with the exception of a **2% salt duty**.
- After Mir Jafar's death, his minor son**, Najimud-dula**, was appointed nawab, but the real power of administration rested with the **naib-subahdar**, who could be appointed or dismissed by the English.

9.5 Treaty of Allahabad 1765

In **August 1765, Robert Clive** signed **two important treaties in Allahabad**, one with the **Nawab of Awadh** and the other with the **Mughal Emperor, Shah Alam II**.

Nawab Shuja-ud-Daula agreed to

- **surrender Allahabad and Kara** to Emperor Shah Alam II;
- **pay Rs 50 lakh** to the Company as **war indemnity**; and
- **give full possession of his estate** to Balwant Singh, Zamindar of Banaras.

Shah Alam II agreed to

- **reside in Allahabad**, which was ceded to him by the Nawab of Awadh, under the protection of the East India Company;

- **issue a farman** granting the diwani of Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa to the East India Company in exchange for an annual payment of **Rs 26 lakh**; and
- a provision of **Rs 53 lakh** to the Company in exchange for the said provinces' nizamat functions (military defence, police, and administration of justice).

9.6 Dual Government in Bengal (1765-72)

- Following the Battle of Buxar, the East India Company established itself as the true ruler of Bengal.
- In Bengal, Robert Clive established the **dual system of government**, i.e., the rule of two—the Company and the Nawab—under which both the **diwani, i.e., revenue collection, and nizamat, i.e., police and judicial functions**, came under the control of the Company.
- As the diwan, the Company exercised diwani rights and nizamat rights through its right to nominate the deputy subahdar.
- The Company inherited the diwani and nizamat functions from the Emperor and the subahdar of Bengal, respectively.
- The system provided significant benefits to the company.
- It gave the puppet Indian ruler the appearance of authority while retaining sovereign power in the hands of the Company.
- The nawab was in charge of maintaining peace and order, but he had to rely on the Company for both funds and forces because the latter controlled the army and revenues.
- The Company appointed two deputy diwans, **Mohammad Reza Khan for Bengal and Raja Sitab Roy for Bihar,** to carry out diwani functions.
- Mohammad Reza Khan also served as the deputy nazim or subahdar.
- The dual system caused an administrative breakdown, which was disastrous for the people of Bengal.
- Neither the Company nor the Nawab were concerned with administration or public welfare.
- **In 1772, Warren Hastings abolished the dual system.**

Conclusion

- Clive did not want to annex Awadh because it would have required the Company to protect a large land border from Afghan and Maratha invasions.
- The treaty turned the Nawab into a staunch ally of the Company and turned Awadh into a buffer state.

- Similarly, Clive's arrangement with Shah Alam II was motivated by pragmatic concerns. It turned the Emperor into a valuable 'rubber stamp' for the Company. Furthermore, the emperor's farman legalised the Company's political gains in Bengal.

- Mir Kasim, Bengal's dethroned Nawab, spent the rest of his life in abject poverty and died in June 1777.

Chapter 2: Expansion of British Power in India-1

1. Third Battle of Panipat (1761)

The **Third Battle of Panipat** was fought on **January 14, 1761**, at **Panipat**, between a northern expeditionary force of the **Maratha Empire** and a **coalition of the King of Afghanistan, Ahmad Shah Durrani**, and **two Indian Muslim allies—the Rohilla Afghans of the Doab, and Shuja-ud-Daula, the Nawab of Oudh**. Militarily, the battle pitted the Marathas' French-supplied artillery and cavalry against the Afghans' and Rohillas' heavy cavalry and mounted artillery (zamburak and jizail) led by Ahmad Shah Durrani and Najib-ud-Daulah, both ethnic Pashtuns (the former is also known as **Ahmad Shah Abdali**). This article will explain to you about **3rd Battle of Panipat** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

1.1 Background

- The Mughal Empire's decline following the 27-year Mughal-Maratha war (1680–1707) resulted in rapid territorial gains for the Maratha Empire.
- Gujarat and Malwa came under Maratha control under **Peshwa Baji Rao**.
- Finally, on the outskirts of Delhi in 1737, Baji Rao defeated the Mughals, bringing much of the former Mughal territory south of Delhi under Maratha control.
- This brought the Marathas into direct conflict with Ahmad Shah Abdali's Durrani empire.
- Ahmad Shah Durrani established the **Durrani Empire** in Afghanistan in **1747**. He **annexed Lahore in 1747**.
- In the years since, he has seized control of **Punjab and Sindh** as well. **Timur Shah**, **Durrani's son, was the governor of Lahore**.
- **Bajirao**, the Maratha Peshwa, was able to capture Lahore and drive out Timur Shah.
- In **1759,** he raised a **Pashtun army** and made several gains against the smaller Maratha garrisons in Punjab.

- The Mughals only had a nominal control over Delhi. Many people were concerned about the Marathas' rapid rise and petitioned Durrani to put a stop to their expansion.

- He then formed a broad coalition against the Marathas with his Indian allies, the **Rohilla Afghans of the Gangetic Doab**.

1.2 Role of Shuja-ud-Daulah

- The Marathas and Afghans both attempted to bring the **Nawab of Awadh, Shuja-ud-Daulah**, into their camp.

- By late July, Shuja-ud-Daulah had **decided to join the Afghan-Rohilla coalition**, preferring to join the 'army of Islam.'

- This was a strategic setback for the Marathas, as Shuja provided much-needed funds for the Afghans' lengthy stay in North India.

- It is doubtful that the Afghan-Rohilla coalition would be able to continue their conflict with the Marathas in the absence of Shuja's support.

1.3 Reasons for Afghan Victory

- The combined army of Durrani and his allies outnumbered the Maratha army.

- **Shuja-ud-Daulah's assistance was also crucial**, as he provided the necessary funds for the Afghans' lengthy stay in northern India.

- **The Maratha capital was in Pune, and the battlefield was a long-distance away.**

- The Maratha camp finally arrived in Delhi and took the city in August 1760.

- A series of skirmishes along the Yamuna's banks followed, as did a battle at Kunjpura, which the Marathas won against an Afghan garrison of about 15,000 men.

- However, in October, **Abdali bravely crossed the Yamuna at Baghpat**, cutting off the Maratha camp from their base in Delhi.

- This eventually escalated into a two-month siege led by Abdali against the Marathas in the town of Panipat.

- During the siege, both sides attempted to cut off the other's supplies, but the Afghans were far more successful.

- By the end of November 1760, they had cut off almost all food supplies into the besieged Maratha camp.

- The food in the Maratha camp ran out by late December or early January, and **thousands of cattle died**.

- In early January, reports of **soldiers dying of starvation** began to circulate.

1.4 The course of the 3rd Battle of Panipat

- With no supplies and dying soldiers, the Maratha chiefs pleaded with their commander, **Sadashiv Rao Bhau**, to let them die in battle rather than starve to death.

- The Marathas left their camp to march towards the Afghan camp in a desperate attempt to break the siege.

- Over 125,000 troops were involved in the battle, which lasted several days.

- Prolonged skirmishes erupted, with both sides suffering losses and gaining ground.

- After destroying several Maratha flanks, the forces led by Ahmad Shah Durrani emerged victorious.

- The extent of the losses on both sides is estimated to be as follows:

  — In the fighting, between 60,000 and 70,000 people were killed.

  — The number of injured and detainees taken varies greatly.

  — The day after the battle, approximately 40,000 Maratha prisoners were slaughtered in cold blood.

1.5 Consequences

- Immediately following the battle, the **Afghan army massacred thousands of Maratha soldiers** and civilians in Panipat's streets.

- The defeated **women and children were sold as slaves** in Afghan camps.

- Around 40,000 **Maratha prisoners were slaughtered** in cold blood just a day after the battle.

- Among those killed in battle were Sadashivrao Bhau and the Peshwa's son Vishwasrao.

- Balaji Bajirao, the Peshwa, never recovered from the shock of the debacle.

- Both sides suffered a high number of casualties.

- The Maratha rise was stifled, but ten years later, under **Peshwa Madhavrao**, they retook Delhi.

- **Durrani did not stay in India for very long. In Delhi, he reinstated Mughal Shah Alam II as Emperor.**

1.6 Result

- The battle halted further Maratha advances in the north and destabilised their territories for approximately ten years.

- This ten-year period is marked by the reign of **Peshwa Madhavrao**, who is **credited with reviving Maratha dominance** after the defeat at Panipat.

- In **1771**, ten years after Panipat, Peshwa Madhavrao led a large Maratha army into North India in an attempt:

- to re-establish Maratha dominance in the region.

- punish obstinate powers that had either sided with the Afghans, such as the Rohillas, or had shaken off Maratha dominance following Panipat.

- This campaign's success can be viewed as the final chapter in the long storey of Panipat.

1.7 Conclusion

The Third Battle of Panipat fought in 1761 between the Marathas and Ahmad Shah Abdali, effectively ended the Marathas' ambition to rule over India. The battle is regarded as one of the largest fought in the **18th century**, with possibly the highest number of fatalities reported in a single day in a classic formation battle between two armies.

2. British vs Mysore

The **British vs Mysore** conflict is about a series of wars fought between the Kingdom of Mysore and the **British East India Company** (represented mostly by the Madras Presidency), Maratha Empire, Kingdom of Travancore, and Nizam of Hyderabad in the latter three decades of the 18th century. The British invaded from the west, south, and east, while the Nizam's men assaulted from the north. Hyder Ali and his successor Tipu Sultan waged a war on four fronts. This article will explain to you about **British vs Mysore** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

2.1 Mysore Dynasty

- The Mysore Dynasty is also known as **Wodeyar Dynasty.**
- Many tiny kingdoms sprang from the ruins of the ancient empire of Vijayanagara after the **battle of Talikota (1565)** dealt a fatal blow to it.
- In 1612, the Wodeyars established a Hindu state in the Mysore area. From 1734 until 1766, **Chikka Krishnaraja Wodeyar II** governed.
- Under the leadership of **Haidar Ali and Tipu Sultan** in the second half of the 18th century, Mysore grew into a powerful state.
- Mysore's proximity to the French and Haidar Ali and Tipu's dominance over the lucrative Malabar Coast trade, the English thought their political and **commercial interests in South India** were jeopardised.
- The strength of Mysore was also considered as a danger to the English authority over Madras.
- The Anglo-Mysore Conflicts were a series of four wars fought in Southern India in the second part of the 18th century between the British and the Kingdom of Mysore.

2.2 First Anglo-Mysore War (1767-69)

Background of the war

- In 1612, the Wodeyars established a Hindu state in the Mysore area. From 1734 until 1766, **Chikka Krishnaraja Wodeyar II** governed.
- With his tremendous administrative abilities and military tactics, Haider Ali, a soldier in the army of the Wodeyars, became the de-facto king of Mysore.

Causes

- The English political and commercial interests, as well as their influence over Madras, were jeopardised by Mysore's proximity to the French and Haidar Ali's dominance over the lucrative **Malabar coast trade.**

- After defeating the nawab of Bengal in the **Battle of Buxar,** the British persuaded the **Nizam of Hyderabad** to sign a contract giving them the Northern Circars in exchange for safeguarding the Nizam against Haidar Ali, who was already embroiled in a feud with the Marathas.

The course of the war

- The British launched a war against Mysore, allied with the Marathas and the Nizam of Hyderabad.
- With clever diplomacy, Hyder Ali was able to win over the Marathas and the Nizam.
- He bribed the Marathas to neutralize them.
- The war dragged on for another year and a half with no end in sight.
- Haidar shifted his approach and came to the Madras gates.

Result of the war

Following full chaos and fear in Madras, the English were compelled to sign a humiliating settlement with Haidar on April 4, 1769, known as the **Treaty of Madras,** which ended the war.

The seized regions were returned to their rightful owners, and it was decided that they would aid one another in the event of a foreign assault.

Haider Ali (1721-1782)

- Haider Ali, a horseman in the Mysore army under the ministers of king Chikka Krishnaraja Wodeyar, began his career as a horseman in the Mysore army.
- He was illiterate, yet he was intelligent, diplomatically and militarily capable.
- With the support of the French army, he became the de facto king of Mysore in 1761 and incorporated western techniques of training into his army.
- In 1761-63, he took over the Nizami army and the Marathas and seized Dod Ballapur, Sera, Bednur, and Hoskote, as well as bringing the troublesome Poligars of South India to surrender (Tamil Nadu).
- They also took money from the growers in the form of taxes.
- Haidar Ali had to pay them significant sums of money to purchase peace, but after Madhavrao's death in 1772.
- Haidar Ali invaded the Marathas many times between 1774 and 1776, recovering all of the lands he had previously lost as well as seizing new territory.

2.3 Second Anglo-Mysore War (1780–84)

Causes

- When the Maratha army attacked Mysore in 1771, the British failed to follow the treaty of Madras.
- Haider Ali accused them of betraying their trust.
- Furthermore, Haider Ali found the French to be more inventive in meeting the army's needs for firearms, saltpetre, and lead.
- As a result, he began bringing French military supplies to Mysore via Mahe, a French territory on the Malabar Coast.
- The British were concerned about the growing relationship between the two.
- As a result, the British attempted to seize Mahe, which was protected by Haider Ali.
- In 1771, the Marathas attacked Mysore. The British, on the other hand, refused to honor the Treaty of Madras and refused to help Hyder Ali.
- As a consequence, the Marathas seized Hyder Ali's territory. For a price of Rs.36 lakh and another annual tribute, he had to buy peace with the Marathas.
- This enraged Hyder Ali, who began to despise the British.
- Hyder Ali waged war on the English in 1780 after the English assaulted Mahe, a French colony under his authority.

The course of the war

- Hyder Ali formed an alliance with the **Nizam and the Marathas** and beat the British forces in Arcot.
- Hyder Ali died in 1782, and his son **Tipu Sultan Sir Eyre Coote,** who had already fought Hyder Ali numerous times, continued the war.
- The **Treaty of Mangalore** concluded the war inconclusively.

Result of the war

Both sides negotiated peace after an inconclusive war, concluding the **Treaty of Mangalore** (March, 1784) in which both parties returned the areas they had acquired from each other.

2.4 Tipu Sultan (1750 -1799)

- **Tipu Sultan** was Haidar Ali's son and a legendary warrior known as the Tiger of Mysore. He was born in November 1750.
- He was a well-educated individual who spoke A**rabic, Persian, Kanarese, and Urdu fluently.**

- Tipu, like his father **Haider Ali,** placed great emphasis on the development and upkeep of a capable military force.
- With Persian words of command, he organized his army on the **European model.**
- Despite the fact that he enlisted the assistance of French commanders to teach his troops, he never permitted them (the French) to become a pressure group.
- Tipu understood the significance of a naval force.
- He established a Board of Admiralty in 1796 and envisioned a force of 22 battleships and 20 big frigates.
- At **Mangalore, Wajedabad, and Molidabad,** he developed three dockyards. His ideas, however, did not come to fruition.
- He was also a supporter of **science and technology,** and he is acknowledged as India's "pioneer of rocket technology."
- He created a military guidebook that explains how rockets work.
- He was also a forerunner in bringing sericulture to the state of Mysore.
- Tipu was a staunch supporter of democracy and a skilled negotiator who helped the French soldiers in **Seringapatam establish** a Jacobin Club in 1797.

2.5 Third Anglo-Mysore War (1790 - 1792)

Causes

- The Treaty of Mangalore proved insufficient to address Tipu Sultan's issues with the British.
- Both were attempting to achieve political dominance in the Deccan.
- The **Third Anglo-Mysore War** began when Tipu Sultan attacked Travancore, an English ally and the East India Company's main supplier of pepper.
- Tipu viewed Travancore's acquisition of Jalkottal and Cannanore from the Dutch in the Cochin state, which was a feudatory of his, to be an infringement of his sovereign powers.
- With the **Nizam of Hyderabad** and the Marathas, the British began to improve their ties.
- Tipu Sultan, who took control of Mysore after Hyder Ali's death, benefited from French assistance in improving his military capabilities.
- In accordance with the Treaty of Mangalore, he also refused to release English captives seized during the second **Anglo-Mysore war.**

The course of the war

- In 1789, Tipu launched a war on Travancore. Travancore was a British-friendly state.
- **Lord Cornwallis,** the Governor-General of Bengal, declared war on Tipu in 1790.
- Tipu's men were forced to retire after being beaten in the first phase of the conflict.
- Later, the English marched on Tipu's capital of Seringapatam, forcing Tipu to make a peace deal.

Result of the war

- The **Treaty of Seringapatam,** signed in 1792, put an end to the conflict.
- Tipu had to hand over half of his empire to the English under the terms of the treaty, which included the provinces of **Malabar, Dindigul, Coorg, and Baramahal.**
- He also had to pay the British Rs.3 crore in war indemnity.
- Tipu also had to provide the British with two of his sons as sureties until he fulfilled his debt.

2.6 Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1799)

Causes

- Both the British and **Tipu Sultan** utilized the years 1792-1799 to make up for their losses.
- When the **Wodeyar dynasty's** Hindu king died in 1796, Tipu declared himself Sultan and resolved to avenge his humiliating defeat in the previous battle.
- Lord Wellesley, a staunch imperialist, succeeded Sir John Shore as Governor-General in 1798.
- Wellesley was concerned about Tipu's burgeoning ties with the French.
- Tipu was accused of sending treasonous messengers to **Arabia, Afghanistan, the Isle of France (Mauritius),** and **Versailles** to conspire against the British. Wellesley was not satisfied with Tipu's answer, and the fourth Anglo-Mysore war started.
- The Treaty of Seringapatam failed to bring Tipu and the English together in peace.
- Tipu also declined to join **Lord Wellesley's Subsidiary Alliance.**
- The British considered Tipu's alliance with the French as a danger.

The course of the war

- From all four directions, Mysore was assaulted.

- From the north, the **Marathas and Nizams invaded.**

- Tipu's army was outmanned 4:1.

- In 1799, the British won a decisive victory in the Battle of Seringapatam.

- Tipu perished in the process of protecting the city.

Result of the war

- The British and the **Nizam of Hyderabad** were in charge of **Tipu's domains.**

- The Wodeyar dynasty, which had ruled Mysore before **Hyder Ali** became the de-facto monarch, was restored to the main territory surrounding **Seringapatam and Mysore.**

- The British formed a **Subsidiary Alliance** with Mysore, and a British resident was appointed to the **Mysore Court.**

- Until 1947, when it elected to join the Indian Union, the Kingdom of Mysore was a princely state not directly under British rule.

Subsidiary Alliance

- **Lord Wellesley** established the **Subsidiary Alliance system** in India in 1798, under which the ruler of an allying Indian state was forced to pay a subsidy for the upkeep of the British troops in exchange for British protection against their opponents.

- It stipulated the establishment of a **British Resident** at the ruler's court, as well as the ruler's prohibition on engaging any **European** in his service without British sanction.

- Instead of paying an annual stipend, the monarch would sometimes relinquish a portion of his realm.

- The **Nizam of Hyderabad** was the first Indian king to sign the **Subsidiary Alliance.**

- Those native princes or monarchs who joined the Subsidiary Alliance were not allowed to wage war on any other state or negotiate without the British's permission.

- The princes who were relatively strong and powerful were allowed to keep their forces, but they were commanded by **British generals.**

- The **Subsidiary Alliance** was a policy of non-interference in the internal affairs of allies, however the British rarely followed through on this commitment.

- The British, on the other hand, could now afford to keep a huge army at the expense of the Indian kingdoms.

- They had a large army stationed in the heart of the protected ally's country, and they controlled his defence and **foreign affairs.**

2.7 Conclusion

The British invaded from the west, south, and east, while the Nizam's men assaulted from the north. **Hyder Ali** and his successor **Tipu Sultan** waged a war on four fronts. The family of Hyder Ali and Tipu (who was murdered in the fourth war, in 1799) were overthrown, and Mysore was dismantled for the advantage of the East India Company, which gained control of most of the Indian subcontinent.

3. First Anglo Mysore War (1766-69)

The **Sultanate of Mysore and the East India Company** fought the **First Anglo-Mysore War (1766–1769)** in India. The English were confident in their military power after their facile victory in Bengal. They signed a pact with the Nizam of Hyderabad in 1766, promising to grant them the Northern Circars (area) in exchange for protecting the Nizam from Haidar Ali. This article will explain to you about the **First Anglo-Mysore War (1766-69)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

3.1 Background

- By the **Third Carnatic War (1757–1763),** the British had not only established reasonably strong footholds in **Bombay, Madras, and Calcutta,** but they had also marginalised but not destroyed the dominance of other colonial powers.

- Treaties with the **Nawab of Carnatic, Muhammed Ali Khan Wallajah**, whose domain surrounding Madras, had a significant impact on their eastern possessions at Madras.

- The **Nizam of Hyderabad,** formerly a viceroyalty of the Mughal Empire but declared independent in the 1720s and held by Asaf JahII in the 1760s and the Sultanate of Mysore

- Which occupied the high plains between the **Eastern and Western Ghats,** the mountain ranges separating India's coastal plains from the interior, were the other major powers in the east.

- The **English were confident** in their military power after their easy triumph in Bengal.

- They signed a deal with the **Nizam of Hyderabad (1766),** convincing him to give them the **Northern Circars (area),** in exchange for which they promised to protect the Nizam from Haidar Ali.

- Haidar already had territorial disagreements with the **Nawab of Arcot,** as well as disagreements with the **Marathas.**

- The **Nizam, the Marathas, and the English** joined forces to oppose Haidar Ali. Haidar acted with great delicacy and diplomacy.

- Haidar Ali bribed the Marathas to neutralise them and, by offering to split seized territory with the Nizam, he gained the Nizam's support.

- He then joined the Nizam in his assault on the **Nawab of Arcot.**

3.2 Course of the War

- **The conflic**t began in January 1767, when the **Marathas attacked northern** Mysore, probably expecting nizam operations.

- They advanced as far south as the **Tungabhadra River** when Haider agreed to cease the attack.
- The **Marathas then turned around**. The Nizam then launched an assault on Mysore with the assistance of an English force. However, the attack was not entirely successful.
- In September 1767, the Nizam defected from the English side and joined forces with **Haider Ali.**
- Smith, the English commander, was unable to fight their combined troops and was forced to retire to Trichinopoly, where **Colonel Wood** joined him.
- The **Nizam and Haider Ali** had no success in the war at Trichinopoly, and Haider Ali was defeated elsewhere in December 1767.
- The **English plotted** an invasion on Hyderabad, which destroyed the Nizam's morale in March 1768.
- So Nizam granted the **English Diwani** of Mysore.
- This pact turned the **English and Haider Ali** into everlasting adversaries.
- Haider Ali was likewise left without an ally as a result of the deal.
- He, on the other hand, did not lose his bravery.
- He seized Mangalore after **defeating an English force** dispatched from Bombay.
- He stormed Madras in March 1769 and compelled the English to sign a **treaty on April 4, 1769.**

3.3 Result of First Anglo - Mysore War

- The battle dragged on for another year and a half with no end in sight.
- **Haidar** shifted his strategy and arrived in front of Madras' gates.
- On April 4, 1769, there was full disorder and fear in Madras, compelling the English to sign the **Treaty of Madras,** a **humiliating treaty with Haidar.**
- The treaty included the exchange of captives as well as the reciprocal restoration of conquests.
- In the event that **Haidar Ali** was attacked by another power, the English agreed to assist him.

3.4 Treaty of Madras

- The **Treaty of Madras** was a peace treaty signed on April 4, 1769, between **Mysore and the British East India Company** (Lord Harry Verelst), which ended the First Anglo-Mysore War.

- In 1767, fighting erupted, and Hyder Ali's army came dangerously close to **seizing Madras.**

- A stipulation in the **Treaty required** the British to help Hyder Ali if he was assaulted by his neighbours.

- When Mysore went to war with the Marathas in 1771, Hyder thought the deal had been breached since he didn't get any assistance.

- The **breach of trust** caused by the violated clause may have contributed to the beginning of the **Second Anglo-Mysore War** a decade later.

3.5 Haider Ali (1721-1782)

- Haidar Ali was born in a poor household in 1721.

- Haider Ali, a horseman in the Mysore army under the ministers of king **Chikka Krishnaraja Wodeyar,** began his career as a horseman in the Mysore army.

- He was illiterate, yet he was **intelligent, diplomatically and militarily capable.**

- With the support of the French army, he became the **de facto king** of Mysore in 1761 and incorporated western techniques of training into his army.

- In **1761-63,** he took over the **Nizami army** and the Marathas and seized Dod Ballapur, Sera, Bednur, and Hoskote, as well as bringing the troublesome Poligars of South India to surrender.

- They also took money from the growers in the form of taxes.

- **Haidar Ali** enlisted the support of the **French to establish** an armaments factory in **Dindigul (now Tamil Nadu),** as well as to bring Western training methods to his army.

- He also began to employ his vast **diplomatic skills** to outmanoeuvre his adversaries.

- **Haidar Ali** had to pay them significant sums of money to purchase peace, but after **Madhavrao's death in 1772.**

- **Haidar Ali** invaded the **Marathas** many times between **1774 and 1776,** recovering all of the lands he had previously lost as well as seizing new territory.

- On December 6, 1782, Hyder, who had a malignant tumour on his back, died in his tent.

3.6 Conclusion

The first **Anglo-Mysore War** came to an end with this. However, there was no peace between them in terms of keeping good connections. It was merely

a one-time ceasefire between two adversaries. **Haider Ali,** on the other hand, was able to demonstrate his abilities as a diplomat and a military leader. The conflict began when three southern political forces banded together against Mysore. Nonetheless, Haider Ali managed to bring it to a decent conclusion. The English were obliged to conclude a settlement on equal terms after the Marathas retreated from the war and the Nizam won nothing.

4. Second Anglo-Mysore War (1780-84)

The **Second Anglo-Mysore War** lasted from 1780 to 1784 and was fought between the Kingdom of Mysore and the **British East India Company.** Mysore was a crucial French ally in India at the time, and the fight in the **American Revolutionary War** between Britain and the French and Dutch ignited Anglo-Mysorean conflicts in India. This article will explain to you about the **Second Anglo-Mysore War (1780-84)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

4.1 Background

- When **Haidar Ali** was attacked by the Marathas in 1771 and the **English failed to help him**, he accused them of breach of faith and non-observance of the **Treaty of Madras.**

- In addition, he discovered that the **French were** far more helpful than the English in supplying his **troops with firearms, saltpetre, and lead.**

- As a result, some French military materiel was delivered to Mysore via Mahe, a French territory on the Malabar Coast. Meanwhile, the **American Revolutionary War** had erupted, with the French siding with the rebels against the English.

- In these conditions, **Haidar Ali's affinity** with the French alarmed the English even more.

- As a result, they attempted to seize **Mahe**, whom Haidar considered to be under his protection.

- **The English** effort to take Mahe was seen by **Haidar** as a direct threat to his power.

- In addition to **the French,** Haidar formed a confederacy against the British that comprised the Marathas and the **Nizam of Hyderabad.**

4.2 Course of the War

- With the Marathas and the Nizam, Haidar formed an anti-English alliance.

- In 1781, he launched an invasion in the Carnatic, taking Arcot and defeating Colonel Baillie's English troops.

- Meanwhile, the English (under Sir Eyre Coote) removed both the Marathas and the Nizam from Haidar's side, but the unfazed Haidar met the English head-on, only to be defeated in November 1781 at Porto Novo.

- He reorganised his soldiers, though, and destroyed the English, capturing their leader, Braithwaite.

- On December 7, 1782, Haidar Ali died of cancer.

- His son Tipu Sultan continued the fight for a year without achieving any success.

- During this time, company officials received orders from the company's London headquarters to halt the fighting and began discussions with Tipu.

- Colonel Fullarton was ordered to surrender all of his recent victories when a preliminary cease-fire was issued.

- Fullarton, on the other hand, stayed in Palghautcherry due to reports that Tipu had broken the rules of the cease-fire at Mangalore.

- The garrison of Mangalore surrendered to Tipu Sultan on January 30.

4.3 Result of Second Anglo - Mysore War

- **Treaty of Mangalore** is a pact that was signed in Mangalore, India On December 7, 1782, Haidar Ali died of cancer.

- His son, **Tipu Sultan,** continued the fight for a year without achieving any success.

- Both sides sought peace after an inconclusive conflict, concluding the **Treaty of Mangalore** (March 1784) in which each party returned the territory it had seized from the other.

- It was the second of four **Anglo-Mysore Wars,** with the British gaining control of most of southern **India as a result.**

- The British did not take part in the 1785 dispute between Mysore and its neighbours, the **Maratha Empire** and the **Nizam of Hyderabad,** because of the stipulations of the **Treaty of Mangalore.**

4.4 Treaty of Mangalore

- On March 11, 1784, Tipu Sultan and the British East India Company signed the **Treaty of Mangalore.** The Second Anglo-Mysore War came to a conclusion when it was signed in Mangalore.

- Many in Britain saw the **Treaty of Mangalore** as the beginning of the end for the British East India Company.

- As a result, the **British East India Company's** stock values plummeted, and the company began to crumble.

- The **British government was** quite concerned about this because commerce accounted for a sixth of the country's total income.

- It was determined to address the issues by enacting what is now known as Pitt's India Act.

- This legislation addressed the issue of corruption and gave the **Governor-General** the authority to act in the King's and country's interests to prevent a repeat of the **Treaty of Mangalore.**

4.5 Conclusion

The old Sir Eyre Coote had lost his vitality, and the Mysore army was not only superbly trained and equipped but also masterfully directed by Hyder and his son Tipu, throughout this lengthy battle. Hyder died unexpectedly in 1782, the war remained undecided, and on June 28, 1784, Tipu and Hyder signed a peace treaty based on reciprocal restitution of all gains. The "Treaty of Mangalore" is the name given to this agreement.

5. Third Anglo-Mysore War (1790-92)

The **Third Anglo-Mysore Wa**r (1790–1792) was a South Indian battle fought between the **Kingdom of Mysore and the British East India Company,** as well as the Kingdom of **Travancore, the Maratha Empire, and the Nizam of Hyderabad.** The third battle between the English and Mysore took place when Cornwallis arrived in India as the Company's governor-general. Tipu was a vehement opponent of the English. This article will explain to you about the **Third Anglo-Mysore War (1780-84)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

5.1 Background

- Tipu had several grievances against the **Travancore rulers**, who were a dependent ally of the English.

- In the state of **Cochin, Travancore** had bought **Jalkottal and Cannanore** from the Dutch. Because Cochin was **Tipu's feudatory**, he saw Travancore's action as an infringement of **his sovereign powers.**

- As a result, Tipu waged war against Travancore in April 1790 to reclaim his rights.

- Before launching war on Tipu, **Cornwallis took every care**.

- He had talks with both the **Marathas and the Nizam of Hyderabad**. In June 1790, the Marathas signed a contract with the English, and in July 1790, with the **Nizam**. Both decided to aid the **English** in their fight against Tipu.

- The captured region was also agreed to be shared among the three allies.

- Though the **English** bore the brunt of the hardship of the battle, they were guaranteed that Tipu would be left alone to fight against them. The English, in turn, waged war against Tipu in 1790.

5.2 Course of the War

- The British took Travancore's side and fought against Mysore.

- Tipu's expanding dominance enraged the **Nizam and the Marathas,** who joined the British.

- **Tipu Sultan defeated General Meadows' British troops in 1790.**

- The English launched their first attack, which was a failure. Tipu fought the fight on his own for two years.

- As a result, **Cornwallis** assumed command of the army in December 1790. In March 1791, he marched on Bangalore and took it.

- Tipu, on the other hand, fought valiantly, and the English were forced to retire during the **rainy season.**
- Tipu triumphed in Coimbatore in November 1791. His strength, however, had run out. **Cornwallis** conquered all of the hill forts that stood in his way of reaching Srirangapatnam's outer wall.
- Tipu became desperate and began negotiating with the English. Cornwallis consented, and in March 1792, the **Treaty of Srirangapatnam** was signed.

5.3 Result of Third Anglo - Mysore War

- The **Treaty of Seringapatam,** signed in 1792, ending the conflict.
- The **combination of the British, Nizam, and Marathas** took over nearly half of Mysorean territory under this pact.
- The British obtained **Baramahal, Dindigul, and Malabar,** while the Marathas got the districts surrounding the **Tungabhadra** and its tributaries and the Nizam got the areas from **Krishna** to beyond the **Pennar.**
- Tipu was also charged with three crore rupees in war damage.
- The English took Tipu's two sons as hostages in exchange for half of the war indemnity being paid immediately and the other half being paid in installments.
- Tipu's powerful position in the south was undermined by the **Third Anglo-Mysore War,** which firmly entrenched British authority there.

5.4 Treaty of Seringapatam

- **Treaty of Srirangapatna** (also known as Srirangapatinam or Srirangapatna) was signed on March 18, 1792.
- Its signatories were the British East India Company's Charles Cornwallis, the **Nizam of Hyderabad and the Maratha Empire, and Tipu Sultan,** the ruler of Mysore.
- Mysore relinquished almost one-half of its territory to the other signatories under the conditions of the treaty.
- The **Maratha** was given territory up to the **Tungabhadra River**, while the **Nizam** was given land from the **Krishna to the Penner River,** as well as the forts of **Cuddapah and Gandikota** on the Penner's south bank.
- The **East India Company** was given a major chunk of Mysore's Malabar Coast territory between the Kingdom of Travancore and the Kali River, as well as the districts of Baramahal and Dindigul.

- Mysore granted Coorg to its ruler, but Coorg practically became a **corporate dependency.**

Lord Cornwallis

- Lord Cornwallis served as Governor-General twice. From 1786 until 1793, He returned to India for the second time in 1805 but died before he could perform any more miracles.

- Lord Cornwallis was the first English nobleman to come to India to serve as Governor-General, as well as the first of India's Parliamentary Governor Generals. He was also India's first Governor-General to die.

- In 1793, Lord Cornwallis established a new tax structure under the Permanent Settlement of Bengal to stabilize land revenue and create a loyal satisfied class of Zamindars.

- This replaced periodic auctions of Zamindari rights in favor of permanent Zamindari rights to collect land revenue from tenants and pay a predetermined sum to the Government treasury each year.

- During his rule, Indians' access to covenant services was restricted. He was given the ability to commute sentences.

- In the third Anglo-Mysore war, he defeated Tipu and signed the Treaty of Srirangapatnam.

5.5 Conclusion

The war resulted in a significant narrowing of Mysore's frontiers to the benefit of the **Marathas, the Nizam of Hyderabad, Travancore, and the Madras Presidency**. Malabar, Salem, Bellary, and Anantapur districts were handed to the Madras Presidency. In 1799, the British and Mysore waged a fourth and last battle in which Seringapatam was captured and Tipu died defending it. Rather than splitting the nation, the victors exiled Tipu's family and returned the rule of **Mysore to the Wadiyars.**

6. Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1799)

The **Fourth Anglo-Mysor**e War was fought in South India in 1798–99 between the Kingdom of **Mysore and the British East India Company** and the Deccan. This was the fourth and final of the four Anglo-Mysore Wars. Mysore's capital was conquered by the British. **Tipu Sultan**, the ruler, was killed in the conflict. Britain gained **indirect control of Mysore**, returning the Wadiyar family to the throne. This article will explain to you about the **Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1799)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

6.1 Background

- The English, as well as **Tipu Sultan,** exploited the years 1792-1799 to make up for their losses.
- Tipu fulfilled all of the Treaty of Seringapatam's stipulations and had his sons liberated.
- When the **Hindu king of the Wodeyar dynasty** died in 1796, Tipu refused to appoint Wodeyar's little son to the throne and declared himself Sultan.
- He also resolved to avenge his humiliating defeat as well as the stipulations of the **Treaty of Seringapatam.**
- **Lord Wellesley** took over as governor-general in 1798, succeeding Sir John Shore.
- Wellesley, an **imperialist at heart,** was anxious about Tipu's increasing affinity with the **French** and sought to annihilate Tipu's independent existence or compel him to submit through the **Subsidiary Alliance** system.
- So, the charge sheet against Tipu said that he was scheming against the English with the **Nizam and the Marathas** and that he had despatched agents with treasonable intent to Arabia, Afghanistan, Kabul, and Zaman Shah, as well as to the Isle of France (Mauritius) and Versailles.
- Wellesley was **unsatisfied with Tipu's explanation.**

6.2 Course of War

- **Lord Wellesley,** a staunch imperialist, took over as Governor-General in 1798, succeeding Sir John Shore.
- **Rockets** were employed on various occasions during the battle. Colonel **Arthur Wellesley,** afterward known as the First **Duke of Wellington**, was involved in one of them.

- At the Battle of Sultanpet Tope, Tipu's Diwan, Purnaiah, beat Wellesley.

- Wellesley was concerned about Tipu's burgeoning ties with the French.

- With the goal of annihilating Tipu's autonomous existence, he pushed him into surrender via the **Subsidiary Alliance** structure.

- The conflict began on April 17, 1799, and ended with the fall of Seringapatam on May 4, 1799.

- Tipu was defeated by both **British General** Stuart and General Harris. Lord Wellesley's brother, **Arthur Wellesley**, also fought in the war.

- The British were once again supported by the **Marathas and the Nizam,** as the Marathas had been promised half of Tipu's land, and the Nizam had previously joined the Subsidiary Alliance.

- **Tipu Sultan** died during the war, and the British took all of his wealth.

- As the maharaja, the British picked a son from the former Hindu royal dynasty of Mysore and imposed the subsidiary alliance system on him.

- The English had taken 32 years to **subdue Mysore**. The possibility of a French renaissance in the Deccan was effectively eradicated.

- On 2 May 1799, during the decisive British onslaught on Seringapatam, a British shot struck a magazine of rockets within Tipu Sultan's fort, causing it to explode and send a towering cloud of black smoke with cascades of brilliant white light soaring up from the battlements.

6.3 Result of Fourth Anglo - Mysore War

- Tipu was defeated twice by the English Generals Stuart and Harris. Lord **Wellesley's** brother, **Arthur Wellesley**, also fought in the war.

- The **Marathas and the Nizam** once again aided the English.

- The **Nizam** had already joined the **Subsidiary Alliance,** and the Marathas had been given half of Tipu's land.

- **Tipu died heroically** battling; his family members were incarcerated at **Vellore,** and the English took his possessions.

- The English appointed a child from the former Hindu royal **dynasty of Mysore** as maharaja and imposed the subsidiary alliance system on him.

- **Fateh Ali,** Tipu Sultan's young heir, was exiled. In a secondary alliance with British India involving areas of present-day **Kerala–Karnataka,** the Kingdom of Mysore became a princely state and surrendered **Coimbatore, Dakshina Kannada, and Uttara Kannada** to the British.

- The newly constituted princely kingdom of Mysore was totally under British rule and also under **subsidiary alliance** (the Subsidiary Treaty signed on 6 April 1801). The British may also meddle in empire administration.

- The **British gained total authority** and dominance over South India as a consequence of the **fourth Mysore war.**
- The **British Government** bestowed the title of Marquees to Lord Wellesley following the war.

6.4 Mysore After Tipu

- **Wellesley** offered the Marathas the regions of **Soonda and Harponelly** in the Mysore Kingdom, which they declined.
- The districts of **Gooty and Gurramkonda** were granted to the Nizam.
- **Kanara, Wayanad, Coimbatore, Dwaraporam, and Seringapatam** were all taken over by the English.
- The new kingdom of Mysore was given to the previous **Hindu dynasty** (Wodeyars) by **Krishnaraja II**I, a minor prince who accepted the subsidiary alliance.
- On the basis of misgovernance, **William Bentinck** assumed control of Mysore in 1831.
- **Lord Ripon** returned the country to its rightful monarch in 1881.

6.5 Lord Wellesley

- From 1798 until 1805, Lord Wellesley served as Governor-General of Fort Williams.
- During his reign, the fourth and last Anglo-Mysore war was fought, and Tipu was slain. In addition, the Second Anglo-Maratha War occurred, in which Bhonsle, Scindia, and Holkar were vanquished.
- Wellesley pursued the "subsidiary alliance" doctrine, which was recognized by the kings of Mysore, Jodhpur, Jaipur, Bundi, Macheri, Bharatpur, Oudh, Tanjore, Berar, Peshwa, and the Nizam of Hyderabad.
- The Censorship of the Press Act of 1799 was also passed during his term, and Fort William College was founded in 1800 to teach civil workers.

6.6 Subsidiary Alliance

- **Lord Wellesley** established the **Subsidiary Alliance system** in India in 1798, under which the ruler of an allying Indian state was forced to pay a subsidy for the upkeep of the British troops in exchange for British protection against their opponents.
- **It stipulated** the establishment of a **British Resident** at the ruler's court, as well as the ruler's prohibition on engaging any **European** in his service without British sanction.

- The **Nizam of Hyderabad** was the first Indian king to sign the **Subsidiary Alliance.**

- Those native princes or monarchs who joined the Subsidiary Alliance were not allowed to wage war on any other state or negotiate without the British's permission.

- The princes who were relatively strong and powerful were allowed to keep their forces, but they were commanded by **British generals.**

- The **Subsidiary Alliance** was a policy of non-interference in the internal affairs of allies, however, the British rarely followed through on this commitment.

- The British, on the other hand, could now afford to keep a huge army at the expense of the Indian kingdoms.

- They had a large army stationed in the heart of the protected ally's country, and they controlled his defense and **foreign affairs.**

6.7 Conclusion

Among all the heroes who battled against the British in the Indian subcontinent, the king of Mysore, **Tipu Sultan,** is remembered as the most notable hero in Indian history. He had relatively few peers. He was a renowned warrior who fought numerous wars, was well-educated, and knew a lot about administration. Mysore thrived throughout his reign, and he was continuously striving to make Mysore a stronger and more powerful state.

7. British vs Marathas

The **Anglo-Maratha Wars** were three territorial wars fought in India between the Maratha Empire and the **British East India Company**. Between the late **18th century** and the beginning of the **19th century,** the British and the Marathas fought three Anglo-Maratha wars (or Maratha Wars). This article will explain to you about the **British vs Marathas** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

7.1 Rise of Marathas

- As the **Mughal Empire fell**, one of the empire's most tenacious foes, the Marathas, had an opportunity to climb to dominance.

- They ruled over a huge chunk of the land and received tributes from territories not immediately under their authority.

- By the middle of the **18th century,** they were in Lahore contemplating becoming rulers of the North Indian empire and acting as kingmakers at the court of the Mughals.

- Though the **Third Battle of Panipat (1761),** in which they were beaten by Ahmad Shah Abdali, changed the situation, they reorganized, restored their strength, and established a position of dominance in India within a decade.

- **Bajirao I (1720–40)**, regarded as the greatest of **all Peshwas**, established a confederacy of notable **Maratha chiefs t**o govern the rapidly rising **Maratha authority** and, to some degree, pacify the Kshatriya element of the Marathas (Peshwas were brahmins) led by **Senapati Dabodi.**

- According to the Maratha confederacy's organization, each **notable family** under a chief was allotted a zone of influence that he was meant to conquer and control in the name of the then **Maratha king, Shahu.**

- The confederacy operated well under **Bajirao I** through **Madhavrao I**, but the **Third Battle of Panipat (1761**) changed everything.

- The **defeat at Panipat,** followed by the death of the young Peshwa, **Madhavrao I,** in 1772, reduced the Peshwas' hold over the confederacy.

- Though the leaders of the confederacy banded together on occasion, such as against the **British (1775–82)**, they frequently quarreled among themselves.

7.2 Peshwa Bajirao I (1720–40)

- The **7th Peshwa,** Shrimant **Peshwa Baji Rao I,** popularly known

as **Bajirao Ballal,** enlarged the Maratha Empire to cover much of modern-day India.

*   **Balaji Vishwanath** and his wife **Radhabhai Barve** gave birth to Baji Rao on August 18, 1700.

*   Instead of Deccan, **Baji Rao I** directed the Maratha's attention to the north.

*   He is credited as being the first Indian to detect the Mughals' fragility and fading empire. He was well aware of the **Mughal rulers' weaknesses in Delhi.**

*   The well-known phrase **"Attock to Cuttack"** alludes to the Maratha Kingdom as visualized by **Baji Rao-I,** who wished to plant the **Saffron Flag atop** the walls of Attock.

*   **Baji Rao-I** fought 41 wars and never lost a single one of them.

*   This capable **Maratha Prime Minister** was able to form a confederacy of Marathas who had dispersed following Shivaji's death.

*   The confederacy includes the **Scindias which** were led by Ranoji Shinde of Gwalior, the **Holkars by Malharrao** of Indore, the **Gaekwads by Pilaji of Baroda**, and the **Pawars by Udaiji of Dhar.**

*   After Maharaja Chhattrasal's death, he was able to get one-third of Bundelkhand.

*   He had a half-Muslim girlfriend from Bundelkhand named Mastani, who was never welcomed into **Maratha culture.**

*   **Baji Rao, I** relocated the Marathas' administrative headquarters from Satara to Pune.

*   Baji Rao-I died of an illness in 1740 and was succeeded by his son **Balaji Baji Rao.**

7.3 British vs Marathas

*   Between the last quarter of the **18th century** and the first quarter of the **19th century,** the **Marathas and the English clashed** three times for political supremacy, with the English ultimately triumphing.

*   The cause of these clashes was the English's excessive desire, as well as the split house of the **Marathas**, which encouraged the English to expect success in their attempt.

*   The English in Bombay intended to build a government along the lines of **Clive's** organization in Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa.

*   When the **Marathas were split** over succession, it was a long-awaited chance for the English.

7.4 Reasons for the Battles

- The three battles fought in India between the **British East India Company** and the **Maratha confederacy** or the **Maratha Empire,** are known as the Great Maratha Wars or the **Anglo-Maratha Wars.**

- The wars began in 1777 and ended in 1818 with the British triumph and the annihilation of the **Maratha Empire in India.**

- When the Marathas were defeated at the **battle of Panipat**, the third Peshwa, Balaji Baji Rao, died on June 23, 1761.

- His son Madhav Rao succeeded him after his death.

- He was a capable and competent commander who maintained unity among his **nobles and chiefs** and was quickly successful in restoring the Marathas' lost authority and dignity.

- The **British became** increasingly wary of the Marathas as their power grew, and they sought to undermine their re-establishment.

- When **Madhav Rao died in 1772,** the British were free to attack the **Marathas.**

7.5 First Anglo-Maratha War (1775–82)

- The **main cause o**f the first Maratha war was the British's growing **meddling in the Marathas' internal and foreign affairs**, as well as the power struggle between **Madhav Rao and Raghunath Rao.**

- After **Peshwa Madhav Rao** died, his younger brother, **Narain Rao**, took over as Peshwa, but it was his uncle, **Raghunath Rao,** who wished to be Peshwa.

- So he enlisted the assistance of the English to assassinate him and make him Peshwa in exchange for Salsette and Bessien, as well as earnings from Surat and Bharuch regions.

- The British promised **Raghunath Rao** assistance and furnished him with 2,500 men.

- The English and **Raghunath Rao's** united army invaded and defeated the Peshwa.

- **The Pact of Surat** was signed on March 6, 1775, but it was not authorised by the **British Calcutta Council,** and the treaty was cancelled at **Pune by Colonel Upton**, who abandoned **Raghunath's sovereignty** and guaranteed him merely a pension.

- The Bombay government denied this, and Raghunath was granted asylum.

- In violation of the pact with the **Calcutta Council, Nana Phadnis** granted the French a port on the west coast in 1777.

• As a consequence, the British and Maratha troops clashed on the outskirts of **Pune at Wadgaon.**

7.6 Result of First Anglo-Maratha War

• **Salsette and Bessien** were held by the **East India Company.**

• It also got a promise from the Marathas that they would regain their Deccan lands from **Hyder Ali of Mysore.**

• The Marathas also vowed that they would not cede the French any further provinces.

• **Raghunathrao** was to get an Rs.3 lakh pension each year.

• After the **Treaty of Purandar**, the British relinquished all lands captured by them to the Marathas.

• The English recognised **Madhavrao II** (Narayanrao's son) as the **Peshwa.**

7.7 Second Anglo-Maratha War (1803–05)

• The **Second Anglo-Maratha Wa**r was fought in Central India in 1803 and 1805 between the **British East India Company and the Maratha Empire.**

• The defeat of **Peshwa Baji Rao II** by the Holkars, one of the key Maratha clans, was the main cause of the **second Maratha war.**

• As a result Peshwa **Baji Rao II** requested British protection by signing the **Treaty of Bassein** in December 1802.

• Other Maratha kings, such as the **Scindia rulers of Gwalior** and the **Bhonsle rulers of Nagpur and Berar**, would not accept this and sought to battle the British.

• As a result, the second **Anglo-Maratha war** in Central India erupted in 1803.

7.8 Result of Second Anglo-Maratha War

• The British **defeated all** of the **Maratha army** in these conflicts.

• In **1803** the Scindias signed the **Treaty of Surji-Anjangaon**, which granted the British the lands of Rohtak, **Ganga-Yamuna Doab, Gurgaon, Delhi Agra area,** Broach, various districts in Gujarat, sections of Bundelkhand, and the Ahmednagar fort.

• In 1803 the **Bhonsles signed** the **Treaty of Deogaon,** by which the English obtained Cuttack, Balasore, and the region west of the Wardha River.

• The Holkars signed the **Treaty of Rajghat** in 1805, giving away Tonk, Bundi, and Rampura to the British.

- As a result of the conflict, the British gained control over **significant swaths** of central India.

7.9 Third Anglo-Maratha War (1817–19)

- The two primary causes of the third and last struggle between the **British** and the **Marathas** were the Marathas' rising desire to reclaim their **lost territory** and the British's overbearing control over Maratha nobles and chiefs.

- Another reason for the conflict was the **British fight with the Pindaris**, whom the British believed was being protected by the **Marathas.**

- The fight took place in **Maharashtra** and surrounding territories during 1817 and 1818.

- When the Peshwa invaded the **British Residency** in November 1817, the Maratha leaders were defeated in areas including **Ashti, Nagpur, and Mahidpur.**

- The **Treaty of Gwalior** was signed on November 5, 1817, and **Sindia** was reduced to the status of a **bystander in the conflict.**

- The **Treaty of Mandsaur** was signed on January 6, 1818, between **Malhar Rao Holkar and the British,** which resulted in the dethronement of the Peshwa and the pensioning of the Peshwa.

- More of his holdings were taken by the British, and the British consolidated their dominance in India.

7.10 Result of Third Anglo-Maratha War

- **Sindia** and the British signed the **Treaty of Gwalior** in 1817, despite the fact that he had not been part of the war.

- **Sindia** surrendered Rajasthan to the British under the terms of this treaty.

- After accepting **British control,** the **Rajas of Rajputana** maintained the Princely States until 1947.

- In 1818, the British and the Holkar rulers signed the **Treaty of Mandsaur**. Under British tutelage, an infant was placed on the throne.

- In 1818, the **Peshwa surrendered.**

- He was deposed and retired to a modest estate in Bithur (near Kanpur). The majority of his area was absorbed into the **Bombay Presidency.**

- **Nana Saheb,** his adopted son, was a leader of the Kanpur **Revolt of 1857.**

- The lands seized from the **Pindaris** became **British India's Central Provinces.**

- The **Maratha Empire** was destroyed as a result of this conflict. The British captured all of the Maratha kingdoms.
- **At Satara,** an unknown descendant of **Chhatrapati Shivaji** was installed as the ceremonial ruler of the **Maratha Confederacy.**

7.11 Reasons for Marathas Lost

- This was one of the last great wars that the British fought and won.
- With this, the British gained direct or indirect control of most of India, with the exception of Punjab and Sindh.

7.12 Incompetent Leadership

- The **Maratha state** had a dictatorial aspect to it. The personality and character of the state's leader had a significant impact on the state's affairs.
- **Bajirao II,** Daulatrao Scindia, and Jaswantrao Holkar, however, were later Maratha leaders who were worthless and egotistical.
- They couldn't stand a chance against English officials like **Elphinstone, John Malcolm,** and **Arthur Wellesley** (who eventually led the English to victory against Napoleon).

7.13 Defective Nature of Maratha State

- The Maratha state's people's cohesiveness was **not organic, b**ut manufactured and accidental, and so insecure.
- From the **time of Shivaji,** there was no attempt to organise a well-thought-out community betterment, dissemination of knowledge, or unification of the people.
- The religio-national movement fueled the emergence of the Maratha state.
- When the **Maratha state** was pitted against a European force organised on the finest Western model, this flaw became apparent.

7.14 Loose Political Structure

- The **Maratha empire** was a **loose confederation** led by the Chhatrapati and subsequently by the Peshwa.
- Powerful chiefs like the **Gaikwad, Holkar, Scindia, and Bhonsle** carved established semi-independent kingdoms for themselves while paying lip respect to the Peshwa's authority.
- Furthermore, there was implacable antagonism among the confederacy's various components.
- Th**e Maratha chief** frequently supported one side or the other.

- The **lack of cooperation** among Maratha leaders was damaging to the Maratha kingdom.

7.15 Inferior Military System

- Despite their **strength and gallantry,** the Marathas lagged behind the English in terms of troop organisation, **war weaponry, disciplined action,** and efficient leadership.
- The **centrifugal tendencies** of divided leadership were responsible for many of the Maratha setbacks.
- **Treason** among the ranks had a role in weakening the **Maratha army.**
- The **Marathas'** use of contemporary military methods proved insufficient.
- The **Marathas** overlooked the critical necessity of artillery. The Poona administration established an artillery department, but it was ineffective.

7.16 Unstable Economic Policy

- The **Maratha leadership** was unable to develop a **solid economic policy** to meet the shifting demands of the period.
- There were no industries or opportunities for overseas trade.
- As a result, the **Maratha econom**y was not favourable to a **stable political setup.**

7.17 English Diplomacy and Espionage

- The English were superior at winning friends and isolating the adversary through diplomacy.
- The English's work was made easier by the **Maratha leaders' dissension.**
- Due to their **diplomatic dominance**, the English were able to launch an immediate onslaught against the objective.
- In contrast to the **Marathas' ignorance** and l**ack of information** about their adversary, the English maintained a **well-oiled espionage network** to obtain information about their adversaries' potentialities, strengths, weaknesses, and military tactics.

7.18 Progressive English Outlook

- The **powers of the Renaissance** resurrected the English, **freeing them** from the clutches of the Church.
- They devoted their efforts to **scientific discoveries, long ocean journeys,** and colonial conquest.

- **Indians,** on the other hand, were still mired in **medievalism,** which was characterised by archaic dogmas and beliefs.
- The **Maratha leaders** were unconcerned about the day-to-day running of the state.
- The insistence on maintaining existing **social stratification** based on the influence of the priestly elite made **imperial merger impossible.**

7.19 Conclusion

The first, second, and third Anglo-Maratha wars were all key events in Indian history. At the time, the British had already taken control of the Mughal Empire. The British, however, were still unable to gain control of lands in the south, which were ruled by Maratha chieftains. The British acquired large holdings and territory in India as a result of treaties with princely states, and India was undoubtedly a jewel in the crown of the British Empire. Following these conflicts, the Maratha Empire came to an end. India was totally under British rule. In reality, following the wars, India became British property, with the British mapping and defining India entirely on their terms and conditions, in the Orientalist manner.

8. First Anglo-Maratha War (1775-82)

The **first** of three **Anglo-Maratha Wars** fought in India between the **British East India Company** and the **Maratha Empire** was the First Anglo-Maratha War (1775–1782). The conflict began with the Surat Treaty and concluded with the Salbai Treaty. The conflict between Surat and Pune Kingdom resulted in British defeat and the restoration of both parties' pre-war positions**. Warren Hastings,** the East India Company's first President and Governor-General in India, opted not to assault immediately. This article will explain to you about the **First Anglo-Maratha War (1775-82)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

8.1 Background

- Madhavrao's brother Narayanrao replaced him as the **sixth peshwa** after his death in 1772.

- Raghunathrao, Narayanrao's uncle, had his nephew slain and declared himself the n**ext peshwa,** despite the fact that he was not a legal successor.

- **Gangabai,** Narayanrao's widow, gave birth to a boy after her husband died. The newborn baby was called **'Sawai'** (One and a Quarter) Madhavrao, and he was the peshwa's legal successor.

- Twelve Maratha chiefs **(Barabhai),** commanded by **Nana Phadnavis**, attempted to identify the newborn as the next peshwa and rule as regents for him.

- Unwilling to give up his position of power, **Raghunathrao** sought assistance from the English in Bombay and signed the **Treaty of Surat** in 1775.

- **Raghunathrao gave** the English the territories of Salsette and Bassein, as well as a share of the earnings from Surat and Bharuch districts, as part of the deal.

- The English were to supply **Raghunathrao with 2,500 men in exchange.**

- On the opposite side of India, the **British Calcutta Council** denounced the **treaty of Surat (1775**) and dispatched Colonel Upton to Pune to cancel it and replace it with a new treaty **(Treaty of Purandar, 1776**) in which the regency renounced Raghunath and promised him a pension.

- The Bombay government refused, and **Raghunath was granted asylum.**

- **Nana Phadnavis** broke his covenant with the Calcutta Council in 1777 by allowing the **French a port** on the west coast. The English replied by dispatching a force to Pune.

8.2 Course of the War

- On the outskirts of Pune, the **English and Maratha soldiers clashed.**
- Though the Maratha army had more warriors than the English, the English possessed more superior ammunition and artillery.
- The **Maratha army,** on the other hand, was led by a talented general named **Mahadji Scindia** (also known as **Mahadji Shinde**).
- Mahadji enticed the English force into the ghats (mountain passes) at **Talegaon,** trapping them on all sides and attacking the **English supply camp at Khopoli.**
- The Marathas also practised a scorched earth strategy, destroying crops and polluting wells.
- As the English began to **retire to Talegaon,** the Marathas assaulted, forcing them to flee **to Wadgaon.**
- The English force was besieged on all sides by Marathas and was cut off from food and water.
- By mid-January 1779, the English had surrendered and signed the **Treaty of Wadgaon,** which required the Bombay administration to return all lands obtained by the English since 1775.

8.3 Result of First Anglo-Maratha War

- The **Treaty of Salbai (1782)** marked the end of the First Phase of the Conflict.
- **Warren Hastings, Governor General of Bengal,** rejected the **Treaty of Wadgaon** and dispatched a huge army of soldiers led by Colonel Goddard to seize **Ahmedabad** in February 1779 and Bassein in December 1780.
- In August 1780, another Bengal detachment commanded by **Captain Popham** conquered Gwalior.
- The English, led by **General Camac,** ultimately destroyed Sindhia at Sipri in February 1781.
- Sindhia suggested a new contract between the **Peshwa and the English**, and the **Treaty of Salbai** was signed in May 1782.
- **Hastings** confirmed the treaty in June 1782, and **Phadnavis** ratified it in February 1783. The treaty established a twenty-year period of peace between the two parties.

8.4 Treaty of Salbai

- Following the British loss, **Warren Hastings** offered a new contract between the Peshwa and the British, recognising the young **Madhavrao as Peshwa** and granting **Raghunathrao a pension.**

- The **Treaty of Salbai** was signed on May 17, 1782, and was confirmed by Hastings in June 1782 and Phadnis in February 1783.

- The primary stipulations of the **Treaty of Salbai** were as follows -

- **Salsette** shall remain in English hands.

- The Marathas should reclaim all of the land won since the **Treaty of Purandar (1776),** including Bassein.

- In Gujarat, **Fateh Singh Gaekwad** should keep the land he held before the conflict and continue to serve the Peshwa as before.

- **Raghunathrao** should not get any additional assistance from the English, and the Peshwa should provide him with a maintenance stipend.

- **Haidar Ali** should restore all land stolen from the English and the Nawab of Arcot.

- The English should have the same trading privileges as previously.

- The Peshwa should not back any other **European country.**

- **The Peshwa** and the English should commit to keeping their various friends at peace with one another.

- **Mahadji Scindia** shall be the mutual guarantee for the treaty's good observance.

8.5 Warren Hastings

- **Warren Hastings (1732–1818),** the first Governor of the Presidency of Fort William (Bengal) in 1772 and the first Governor-General of Bengal in 1774 until his resignation in 1785, was the first Governor-General of Bengal.

- In 1750, he began his work as a writer (clerk) for the East India Company in Calcutta.

- Following **Mir Jafar** was enthroned as the Nawab after the Battle of Plassey, he became the British resident at Murshidabad, Bengal's capital, in 1758.

- The **First Anglo-Maratha** war and the **Second Anglo-Mysore** war were fought **during his reign.**

- During his presidency, the **Regulating Act of 1773** was approved.

- In 1785, he backed Sir William Jones in forming the Asiatic Society of Bengal.

- Robert Clive had founded the **Dual System**, which Hastings repealed.

- The firm possessed Diwani rights (rights to collect money) under the Dual System, but the Nizam of Indian chiefs had administrative power.

8.6 Conclusion

The First Anglo-Maratha War (1775–1782) was the first of three Anglo-Maratha Wars in India, fought between the British East India Company and the Maratha Empire. The conflict began with the Surat Treaty and concluded with the Salbai Treaty. The Marathas destroyed the British force here, and the British surrendered by mid-January 1779. They fought on against the Marathas till the **Treaty of Salbai** was signed in May 1782.

9. Second Anglo-Maratha War
(1803-05)

The **Second Anglo-Maratha War** (1803–1805) was a struggle in India between the **British East India Company** and the **Maratha Empire. Raghunathrao, Peshwa Baji Rao II's father,** had long been a source of antagonism within the Maratha confederacy due to his overarching ambition and the latter's own inability since gaining the throne. Peshwa Baji Rao II did not command the respect that his predecessors did. This article will explain to you about the **Second Anglo-Maratha War (1775-82)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

9.1 Background

- The **Second Anglo-Maratha War** began under identical conditions as the first.

- After **Peshwa Madhavrao Narayan** committed suicide in 1795, **Bajirao II, Raghunathrao's worthless son**, took over as Peshwa.

- **Nana Phadnavis,** a fierce opponent of Bajirao II, was appointed as chief minister. The dissensions among the Marathas created an opportunity for the **English to engage in Maratha affairs.**

- The death of **Nana Phadnavis** in 1800 provided the British with an additional edge.

- At the **Battle of Poona** in October 1802, the united troops of **Peshwa Baji Rao II** and Scindia were defeated by **Yashwantrao Holkar, ruler of Indore.**

- **Baji Rao** escaped to British protection and signed the **Treaty of Bassein** with the **British East India Company** in December of the same year, yielding land for the upkeep of a subsidiary force and committing to a treaty with no other state.

- The contract would be remembered as the **"death knell of the Maratha Empire."**

9.2 Course of the War

- On April 1, 1801, the Peshwa mercilessly assassinated **Yashwantrao Holkar's brother, Vithuji.**

- The **unrest persisted**, and on October 25, 1802, **Yashwant decisively** beat the troops of the **Peshwa and Scindia** at Hadapsar near Poona, putting Vinayakrao, son of Amritrao, in the Peshwa's throne.

- A scared **Bajirao II** retreated to Bassein, where he signed a contract with the English on December 31, 1802.

- **Bassein Treaty (1802)** - The **Peshwa** consented to the following terms in the **treaty**

- To receive from the **Company a local infantry** (consisting of at least 6,000 troops) with the standard percentage of field artillery and **European artillery personnel** attached, to be permanently stationed in his territory.

- To cede territories worth Rs 26 lakh to the Company; to surrender Surat; to give up all claims for chauth on the **Nizam's dominions.**

- To accept the Company's arbitration in all disputes between him and the **Nizam or the Gaekwad;** not to employ Europeans from any nation at war with the English; and to subject his relations with other states to the control of the English.

- **Scindia and Bhonsle** sought to save Maratha independence when the Peshwa accepted the **subsidiary alliance.**

- However, the English army, led by **Arthur Wellesley,** destroyed the **united forces of Scindia and Bhonsle**, forcing them to sign separate subsidiary treaties with the English.

- **Yashwantrao Holkar** attempted to organise a coalition of Indian monarchs to oppose the English in 1804. However, his endeavour was a **failure.**

- The **Marathas were vanquished, s**ubjugated to vassalage by the British, and separated from one another.

9.3 Treaty of Bassein - Significance

- Despite the fact that the pact was signed by a **Peshwa** with little political power, the English **gained enormously.**

- The installation of regular **English troops in Maratha** territory was strategically advantageous.

- In Mysore, Hyderabad, and Lucknow, the Company already had troops.

- The **inclusion of Poona** to the list meant that the Company's forces were now more equally distributed and could be quickly dispatched to any location in the event of an emergency.

- Though the **Treaty of Bassei**n did not throw India up to the Company on a silver platter, it was a significant step forward; the Company was now well positioned to **expand its spheres of influence.**

- The claim that the pact "**handed the English the key to India**" may be overdone under the circumstances, but it is comprehensible.

9.4 Result of Second Anglo-Maratha War

- The British vanquished all of the Maratha army in these conflicts.

- In 1803 the Scindias signed the **Treaty of Surji-Anjangaon,** which granted the British the lands of Rohtak, **Ganga-Yamuna Doab,** Gurgaon, Delhi Agra area, Broach, various districts in Gujarat, sections of Bundelkhand, and the Ahmednagar fort.

- In 1803 the Bhonsles signed the **Treaty of Deogaon**, by which the English obtained Cuttack, Balasore, and the region west of the Wardha River.

- The Holkars signed the **Treaty of Rajghat** in 1805, giving away Tonk, Bundi, and Rampura to the British.

- As a result of the conflict, the British gained control over **significant swaths of central India.**

9.5 Conclusion

The "Divided Marathas" paid the price for the "United" British as a result of these many treaties. The outcome of this conflict was a result of the second Anglo-Maratha war, the Marathas lost their independence. India was now imprisoned. In 1817, the Marathas launched one final futile attempt to liberate Mother India from colonial rule.

10. Third Anglo-Maratha War
(1817-19)

The **Third Anglo-Maratha War (1817–1819)** was a critical struggle in India between the **British East India Company** and the Maratha Empire. During the battle, the Company gained control of the majority of India. It started with a **British East India Company** assault of Maratha land, and although being outnumbered, the Maratha army was annihilated. This article will explain to you about the **Third Anglo-Maratha War (1817-19)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

10.1 Background

- **Lord Hastings'** imperialistic objective was to impose British supremacy. The East India Business's monopoly on commerce in China (save tea) expired with the **Charter Act of 1813,** and the company sought other markets.

- The Pindaris, who came from a variety of castes and classes, served as mercenaries in the Maratha forces. The Pindaris were unable to find regular work when the **Marathas became weak.**

- As a result, they began looting nearby lands, including the Companies. The English accused the Marathas of harboring the Pindaris.

- **Amir Khan and Karim Khan,** two Pindari chiefs, surrendered, while Chitu Khan escaped into the forests.

- Other Maratha chiefs were hurt by the **treaty of Bassein,** which was regarded as "a treaty with a cipher (the Peshwa)." They viewed the pact as a complete loss of independence.

- **Lord Hastings'** efforts against the Pindaris were considered a violation of the Marathas' authority, and they served to reunite the Maratha confederacy.

- During the Third Anglo-Maratha War in 1817, a remorseful Bajirao II made one final attempt by gathering the Maratha leaders against the English.

10.2 Course of War

- At Poona, the **Peshwa** assaulted the **British Residency.** Nagpur's Appa Sahib assaulted the Nagpur residence, and the Holkar prepared for war.

- However, at that time, the Marathas had lost practically all of the ingredients necessary for a power to thrive.

- All of the Maratha states' political and administrative situations were

chaotic and ineffective. Following the death of **Jaswantrao Holkar, Tulsi Bai, the Holkars'** favourite mistress, assumed command of **Poona.**

- Despite being a **brilliant and intellectual** lady, she was unable to effectively rule the realm due to the influence of some worthless men such as **Balram Seth and Amir Khan.**

- The Bhonsle in **Nagpur and the Scindia** in Gwalior were both in decline.

- So, by retaliating forcefully, the English were able to prevent the Peshwa from exerting his control over the **Maratha confederacy** once more.

10.3 Result of the Third Anglo - Maratha War

- At Khirki, Bhonsle was defeated at Sitabuldi, while Holkar was defeated at Mahidpur.

- A number of significant treaties were signed.

- **The Treaty of Poona,** with Peshwa, was signed in June 1817.

- **Treaty of Gwalior** with Scindia, November 1817.

- **Treaty of Mandsaur** with Holkar, January 1818.

- **The Peshwa** ultimately submitted in June 1818, and the Maratha confederacy was abolished.

- The peshwaship system was phased out. At Bithur, near Kanpur, Peshwa Bajirao became a **British retainer.**

- **Pratap Singh,** a direct descendant of Shivaji, was appointed ruler of Satara, a tiny principality created from the Peshwa's domains.

10.4 The Treaty of Poona

- The **East India Company** and **Baji Rao II,** the Peshwa (ruler) of Pune, signed the Treaty of Poona on June 1, 1817.

- The British gained sovereignty of the land north of the Narmada River and south of the **Tungabhadra River** as a consequence of the pact.

- **Baji Rao** had to relinquish his claim to Gaikwad as well.

- Finally, "he was not to connect with any other force in India in any way."

10.5 Treaty of Gwalior

- **Shinde** and the British signed the **Treaty of Gwalior** in 1817, despite the fact that he had not participated in the war.

- Shinde agreed to hand over Rajasthan to the British under this pact.

- After accepting British authority, the Rajas of Rajputana remained Princely States until 1947.

10.6 Treaty of Mandsaur

- On January 6, 1818, at Mandsaur, a peace treaty was signed.

- Holkars agreed to all of the British stipulations outlined in the Treaty of Mandsaur.

- The Holkars lost much of their land to the British at the end of the Third Anglo-Maratha War, and were included into the British Raj as a princely state of the Central India Agency.

10.7 The pindaris

- **Shinde and Holkar** had lost many of their territories to the British after the second **Anglo-Maratha war.**

- They incentivize the Pindaris to raid British lands. Because of the favour they obtained from the vanquished **Maratha chiefs,** the Pindaris, who were largely cavalry, were known as the Shindeshahi and the Holkarshahi.

- **Setu, Karim Khan, Dost Mohammad, Tulsi, Imam Baksh, Sahib Khan, Kadir Baksh, Nathu, and Bapu** were the Pindari chiefs.

- **Shindeshahi had Setu, Karim Khan**, and **Dost Mohammad,** while Holkarshahi had the remainder.

- In 1814, the **Pindaris** were reported to have a total strength of 33,000 men. The **Pindaris** invaded communities in Central India on a regular basis.

- The attack against the **Pindaris** went off without a hitch. The Pindaris were assaulted, and their dwellings were encircled and burned down.

- The Pindaris were assaulted from the south by General Hislop of the Madras Residency, who pushed them across the **Narmada river,** where Governor **General Francis Rawdon-Hastings** was waiting with his force.

- In the course of a single war, the Pindari troops were utterly dismantled and scattered.

- They didn't fight the regular soldiers, and even in tiny groups, they couldn't get through the ring of forces that had been established around them.

10.8 Lord Hastings

- **Lord Hastings** served as Governor-General of India for 10 years, from 1813 to 1823.

- His administration is remembered for its interventionist and war-mongering policies.

- He pursued a bold forward strategy and fought several wars.

- His harsh and imperialist policies laid the ground for the British Empire's general growth.

- He bolstered **British influence in India.**

- During his reign, two major conflicts took place: the Gurkha War and the Third **Anglo-Maratha War.**

- He streamlined judicial procedures and repealed the **Censorship Act.**

- Lord Hastings' term expired in 1823, and he was succeeded as acting Governor-General by John Adams, a senior member of the Governor General's council.

- **Lord Amherst** arrived in India as the new Governor General in the same year, 1823. From August 1823 until February 1828, he was in office.

10.9 Conclusion

During the battle, the Company gained control of the majority of India. The invasion began with British East India Company forces invading Maratha land, and although being outmanned, the Maratha army was devastated. Governor-General Hastings led the forces, which were backed up by an army led by General Thomas Hislop. The Pindaris, a gang of Muslim mercenaries and Marathas from central India, were targeted first. The final and conclusive struggle between the **British East India Company** and the Maratha Empire in India was the **Third Anglo-Maratha War.**

Chapter 3: Expansion of British Power in India-2

1. British Conquest of Punjab

Maharaja Ranjit Singh developed and cemented the Sikh kingdom of Punjab in the early nineteenth century, about the same time as **British-controlled** lands were pushed closer to Punjab's frontiers by conquest or annexation. **Ranjit Singh** pursued a cautious alliance with the British, giving some land south of the **Sutlej River.** The Conflicts between the **Sikh and the British** led to a series of wars. It resulted in the **British invasion and annexation of Punja**b in northwestern India. This article will explain to you about the **British conquest of Punjab** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

1.1 Consolidation of Punjab

- During the reign of **Bahadur Shah,** a group of Sikhs led by **Banda Bahadur** rose against the Mughals after the assassination of **Guru Gobind Singh**, the last Sikh guru.

- Farrukhsiyar defeated **Banda Bahadur in 1715**, and he was executed in 1716.

- As a result, the **Sikh polity** became leaderless once more and was eventually divided into two groups: **Bandai (Liberal) and Tat Khalsa (Orthodox).**

- Under the influence of **Bhai Mani Singh**, this schism among the disciples was healed in 1721.

- Later, in 1784, **Kapur Singh Faizullapuria** organized the Sikhs under the **Dal Khalsa,** with the goal of politically, culturally, and economically integrating Sikhs.

- Budha Dal, the army of the veterans, and Taruna Dal, the army of the young, were established from the Khalsa's whole body.

- The **Mughals'** weakening and **Ahmad Shah Abdali's** assaults caused considerable turmoil and instability in Punjab.

- These political circumstances aided the organized **Dal Khalsa** in consolidating further.

- The Sikhs banded together in misls, which were military brotherhoods with a democratic structure. Misl is an Arabic word that means "equal" or "similar."

- **Misl** can also mean **"state".** Many misls began to control the Punjab area under Sikh chieftains from Saharanpur in the east to Attock in the west, from the mountainous regions of the north to **Multan in the south,** from 1763 to 1773.

1.2 Ranjit Singh

- **Maharaja Ranjit Singh,** also known as Sher-e-Punjab or "Lion of Punjab," was the first Maharaja of the Sikh Empire, which ruled the northwest Indian subcontinent in the early half of the nineteenth century.

- In **Pakistani Punjab**, he was born in 1780 to the chief of the Sukerchakia misl of the Sikh confederacies.

- In 1801 he unified 12 Sikh misls and conquered several small kingdoms to become the **"Maharaja of Punjab."**

- Many Afghan attacks were successfully repelled, and areas including Lahore, Peshawar, and Multan were conquered.

- **Lahore became** his capital when he captured it in 1799.

- His Sikh Empire stretched north of the Sutlej River and south of the Himalayas in the northwest. **Lahore, Multan, Srinagar (Kashmir), Attock, Peshawar, Rawalpindi, Jammu, Sialkot, Amritsar, and Kangra** were all part of his empire.

- With the British, he maintained cordial relations.

- **Ranjit Singh's rule** was marked by reforms, modernization, infrastructure investment, and overall prosperity. **Sikhs, Hindus, Muslims, and Europeans** served in his **Khalsa army** and government.

- His legacy encompasses a time of **Sikh cultural and artistic rebirth,** including the reconstruction of the **Harmandir Sahib in Amritsar** as well as other significant gurudwaras, including **Takht Sri Patna Sahib** in Bihar and **Hazur Sahib Nanded** in Maharashtra.

- In his army, he had troops of many ethnicities and beliefs.

- His army was very efficient in terms of **fighting, logistics, and infrastructure.**

- There was a fight for succession among his numerous relatives after his death in 1839. This signified the beginning of the Empire's demise.

- Ranjit Singh died in June 1839, and the process of his empire's downfall began with his death.

- **Kharak Singh,** his eldest legitimate son, succeeded him.

1.3 Misl

- There were 12 significant misls during the time of Ranjit Singh's birth (November 2, 1780): **Ahluwaliya, Bhangi, Dallewalia, Faizullapuria, Kanhaiya, Krorasinghia, Nakkai, Nishaniya, Phulakiya, Ramgarhiya Sukharchakiya, and Shaheed.**
- **Gurumatta Sangh,** which was primarily a political, social, and economic structure, served as the misl's central administration.
- **Ranjit Singh** was the son of **Sukerchakia misl chieftain Mahan Singh**. Ranjit Singh was just 12 years old when Mahan Singh died.
- However, **Ranjit Singh** showed early political savvy. By the end of the 18th century, all of the great misls (save Sukarchakia) had disintegrated.

1.4 Maharaja Ranjit Singh and the English

- The English were concerned about the possibility of a joint **Franco-Russian** invasion of India via the land route.
- **Lord Minto** dispatched **Charles Metcalfe** to Lahore in 1807.
- **Ranjit Singh** agreed to Metcalfe's proposal for an offensive and defensive alliance on the condition that the English remain neutral in the event of a **Sikh-Afghan** conflict and recognize **Ranjit Singh** as the ruler of the whole Punjab, including the Malwa (cis-Sutlej) provinces.
- However, the talks fell through. Ranjit Singh decided to sign the **Treaty of Amritsar** (April 25, 1809) with the Company amid a new political context in which the **Napoleonic threat** had diminished and the English had become more dominant.

1.5 Treaty of Amritsar (1809)

- The **Treaty of Amritsar** was noteworthy for both its immediate and potential consequences.
- It thwarted one of **Ranjit Singh's** most treasured aspirations of extending his control over the whole Sikh people by adopting the **Sutlej River** as the borderline for his and the Company's dominions.
- He redirected his efforts to the west, capturing **Multan (1818), Kashmir (1819), and Peshawar (1834).**
- Ranjit Singh was forced by political forces to sign the Tripartite Treaty with the English in June 1838; nevertheless, he refused to allow the British troops access through his lands to invade **Dost Mohammad, the Afghan Amir.**
- **Raja Ranjit Singh's** interactions with the **Company from 1809 to 1839** plainly demonstrate the former's weak position.

- Despite being aware of his precarious situation, he took no steps to form a coalition of other Indian rulers or to preserve a balance of power.

1.6 Punjab After Ranjit Singh

- **Kharak Singh,** Ranjit Singh's sole legitimate son and heir, was ineffective, and court divisions emerged during his brief rule.

- **Kharak Singh's** untimely death in 1839, along with the unintentional murder of his son, **Prince Nau Nihal Singh**, resulted in anarchy throughout Punjab.

- The intentions and counter-plans of **numerous organizations** to seize the crown of Lahore presented a chance for the English to take decisive action.

- The **Lahore administration,** following its policy of friendliness with the English firm, allowed British forces to cross through its territory twice: first on their way out of **Afghanistan** and again on their way back to avenge their defeat.

- These marches caused upheaval and economic disruption in Punjab.

- **Sher Singh,** another son of **Ranjit Singh**, succeeded after **Nau Nihal Singh** died, but he was assassinated in late 1843.

- Soon after, **Daleep Singh, Ranjit Singh's** minor son, was declared Maharaja, with **Rani Jindan** as regent and **Hira Singh Dogra as wazir.**

- **Hira Singh** himself was assassinated in 1844 as a result of royal intrigue.

- The new wazir, **Jawahar Singh**, Rani Jindan's brother, quickly enraged the troops and was overthrown and executed in 1845.

- In the same year, Lal Singh, a lover of Rani Jindan, won over the army to his side and was made wazir, while **Teja Singh** was appointed commander of the soldiers.

1.7 First Anglo-Sikh War (1845–46)

- The action of the Sikh army crossing the Sutlej River on December 11, 1845, has been ascribed to the start of the **first Anglo-Sikh war.**

- This was viewed as an aggressive maneuver that gave the English cause to declare war.

- The turmoil that erupted in the **Lahore kingdom** upon the death of **Maharaja Ranjit Singh,** culminated in a power struggle for dominance between the Lahore court and the ever-powerful and more local army

- **Mistrust** within the Sikh army was a result of the English military

efforts to capture Gwalior and Sindh in 1841 and the **battle in Afghanistan in 1842.**

*   An increase in the number of **English troops** stationed near the Lahore kingdom's border

Course of the war

*   The British side had 20,000 to 30,000 troops when the conflict began in December 1845, while the **Sikhs** had roughly 50,000 men under the general direction of **Lal Singh.**

*   However, the Sikhs were defeated five times in a row due to the treachery of **Lal Singh and Teja Singh at Mudki (December 18, 1845), Ferozeshah (December 21–22, 1845), Buddelwal, Aliwal (January 28, 1846), and Sobraon (February 10, 1846).**

*   Lahore surrendered to British soldiers without a struggle on February 20, 1846.

Result of the war

*   **Treaty of Lahore** - On March 8, 1846, the Sikhs were compelled to accept a humiliating peace at the conclusion of the **First Anglo-Sikh War.**

*   The English were to be given a war indemnity of more than one crore rupees.

*   The **Jalandhar Doab** (between the Beas and the Sutlej) was to be annexed to the Company's dominions.

*   A British resident was to be established at **Lahore under Henry Lawrence.** The strength of the Sikh army was reduced.

*   **Daleep Singh** was recognized as the ruler, with **Rani Jindan** as regent and Lal Singh as wazir.

*   Since the Sikhs were unable to pay the whole war indemnity, Kashmir, including Jammu, was sold to **Gulab Singh,** who was compelled to pay the Company 75 lakh rupees as the purchase price.

*   On March 16, 1846, a second treaty formalized the surrender of Kashmir to Gulab Singh.

*   **Bhairowal Treaty** - the Sikhs were dissatisfied with the **Treaty of Lahore** on the question of Kashmir, they revolted.

*   The **Treaty of Bhairowal** was signed in December 1846. According to the terms of the treaty, Rani Jindan was deposed as regent, and a council of regency for **Punjab was established.**

*   The council was headed over by the English Resident, Henry Lawrence, and was made up of eight Sikh sardars.

1.8 Second Anglo-Sikh War (1848–49)

- The **Sikhs** were severely humiliated by their defeat in the **First Anglo-Sikh War** and the conditions of the treaties of **Lahore and Bhairowal.**

- The inhuman treatment meted out to **Rani Jindan,** who was transported to Benares as a pensioner, fueled Sikh fury.

- **Mulraj, Multan's governor,** was replaced by a new Sikh governor due to an increase in annual revenue.

- **Mulraj** rebelled and assassinated two English officers who were accompanying the new governor.

- **Sher Singh** was dispatched to put down the rebellion, but he himself joined Mulraj, sparking a general insurrection throughout Multan.

- This might be seen as the direct cause of the conflict.

- **Lord Dalhousie,** the then-Governor General of India and a staunch expansionist, was given the justification to entirely **occupy Punjab.**

Course of the war

- **Lord Dalhousie** traveled to Punjab on his own. Before the eventual conquest of Punjab, three major wars were fought.

- These three fights were as follows:

- The **Battle of Ramnagar**, conducted by Sir Hugh Gough, the commander-in-chief of the Company, took place in January 1849.

- **Battle of Chillianwala,** January 1849

- **Battle of Gujarat,** February 21, 1849, The Sikh army surrendered at **Rawalpindi** on February 21, 1849, and their Afghan allies were forced out of India.

Result of the war

- The **surrender of the Sikh army** and Sher Singh in 1849

- **Annexation of Punjab**; and for his services, the **Earl of Dalhousie** was given the thanks of the British Parliament and promotion in the peerage, as **Marquess**

- And the establishment of a three-member **board to govern Punjab**, consisting of the Lawrence brothers (Henry and John) and Charles Mansel.

- The **board was abolished** in 1853, and Punjab was given to a chief commissioner.

- **John Lawrence** was appointed as the first Chief Commissioner.

1.9 Lord Dalhousie

- Lord Dalhousie (actual name James Andrew Ramsay) served as Governor-General of India from 1848 until 1856.

- During this time, the Sikhs were crushed once more in the Second Anglo-Sikh War (1849), and Dalhousie was successful in annexing the whole Punjab under British authority.

- He is most known for his Doctrine of Lapse, which many believe was directly responsible for the 1857 Indian Revolt.

- Despite the Doctrine, Lord Dalhousie is often regarded as the "Maker of Modern India."

- In India, Lord Dalhousie established a number of Anglo-vernacular schools. He also instituted social changes, such as the prohibition on female infanticide.

- He was a fervent believer in western administrative changes, believing that they were both essential and preferable to Indian methods.

- He also built engineering institutions to supply resources for each presidency's newly constituted public works department.

- During his term, the first railway line between Bombay and Thane was opened in 1853 and in the same year, Calcutta and Agra were connected by telegraph.

- Other changes he enacted include the establishment of P.W.D. and the passage of the Widow Remarriage Act (1856).

- Dalhousie, a highland station in Himachal Pradesh, was named for him. It began as a summer resort for English civil and military authorities in 1854.

- Lord Dalhousie died on December 19, 1860, at the age of 48.

1.10 Conclusion

Punjab, along with the rest of British India, fell under the direct sovereignty of the British crown in 1858, according to Queen Victoria's Queen's Proclamation. Sapta Sindhu, the Vedic country of the seven rivers flowing into the ocean, was the ancient name of the region. The East India Company seized much of the Punjab region in 1849, making it one of the last sections of the Indian subcontinent to fall under British rule. Punjab, along with the rest of British India, was placed under direct British authority in 1858. The Anglo-Sikh battles instilled mutual respect for each other's combat abilities. The Sikhs were to fight on the British side in the Revolt of 1857, as well as in several more operations and wars until Indian independence in 1947.

2. First Anglo-Sikh War (1845-46)

The **First Anglo-Sikh War** was fought in and around the Ferozepur area of Punjab in 1845 and 1846 between the **Sikh Empire and the British East India Company.** It culminated in the Sikh empire's loss and partial submission, as well as the cession of Jammu and Kashmir as a separate princely state under British suzerainty. This article will explain to you about the **First Anglo-Sikh War(1845-46)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

2.1 Background

- **Maharaja Ranjit Singh** developed and cemented the **Sikh kingdom of Punjab** in the early **nineteenth century**, about the same time as British-controlled lands pushed to Punjab's frontiers through conquest or annexation.

- **Ranjit Singh** maintained a careful alliance with the British, relinquishing some land south of the **Sutlej River** while building up his military strength to discourage British expansion and to wage war against the **Afghans.**

- He hired **American and European mercenary** soldiers to train his army, and he also included **Hindu and Muslim** contingents.

- This was viewed as an aggressive maneuver that gave the English cause to declare war.

- The causes, on the other hand, were far more complicated and can be summarised as follows:

- The anarchy in the **Lahore kingdom** followed **Maharaja Ranjit Singh's** death, resulting in a power struggle for **dominance** between the court at **Lahore** and the ever-powerful and increasingly local army.

- Suspicions among the **Sikh army** arising from English military campaigns to achieve the annexation of Gwalior and Sindh in 1841 and the campaign in **Afghanistan in 1842.**

- An increase in the number of **English troops** stationed near the border with the **Lahore kingdom.**

2.2 Course of the war

- The British side had 20,000 to 30,000 troops when the conflict began in December 1845, while the Sikhs had roughly 50,000 men under the general direction of Lal Singh.

- However, the Sikhs were defeated **five times** in a row due to the treachery of **Lal Singh and Teja Singh at Mudki** (December 18, 1845), Ferozeshah (December 21–22, 1845), **Buddelwal, Aliwal** (January 28, 1846), and Sobraon (February 10, 1846).
- Five battles were fought in the **First Anglo-Sikh War.**
- **Battle of Mudki - Tej Singh** led his army across the **Sutlej River** and moved on the British outpost at **Ferozepur,** but they did not attack or surround it.
- At the **Battle of Mudki** late on December 18, another force led by **Lal Singh** met with Gough's and Hardinge's advancing army.
- The British came out on top in a sloppy engagement fight, but they took a lot of losses.
- **Battle of Ferozeshah** - The Battle of Ferozeshah took place on the 21st and 22nd of December 1845 at the hamlet of Ferozeshah in Punjab, between the British East India Company and the Sikh Empire.
- **Sir Hugh Gough** and **Governor-General Sir Henry Hardinge** commanded the British, while Lal Singh led the Sikhs. The British came out on top.
- **Battle of Baddowal** - The **Battle of Baddowal** was a Sikh Empire raid against a British East India Company detachment near **Ludhiana** in the present-day state of Punjab in 1846.
- **Battle of Aliwal** - The Battle of Aliwal took place in northern India on January 28, 1846, between **British and Sikh forces**
- Sir Harry Smith led the British forces, while Ranjodh Singh Majithia led the Sikhs.
- **Battle of Sobraon** - The **Battle of Sobrao**n took place on February 10, 1846, between the East India Company and the Sikh Khalsa Army, the Punjabi Sikh Empire's army.
- This was the decisive battle of the **First Anglo-Sikh War,** when the Sikhs were decisively crushed.
- Lahore surrendered to British soldiers without a struggle on February 20, 1846.

2.3 Result of First Anglo-Sikh War

- **Lahore Treaty** (March 8, 1846) On March 8, 1846, the Sikhs were compelled to accept a humiliating peace at the conclusion of the **first Anglo-Sikh War.**
- The following were the key provisions of the **Treaty of Lahore:**
  — The English were to get a war indemnity of more than one crore rupees.

— The Company annexed the **Jalandhar Doab** (between the Beas and the Sutlej).

— Henry Lawrence was to create a British residency in Lahore.

• The Sikh army's strength was diminished.

• Daleep Singh was proclaimed ruler, with Rani Jindan as regent and Lal Singh as wazir.

• Since the **Sikhs** were unable to pay the full war indemnity, Kashmir, including Jammu, was sold to Gulab Singh, who was compelled to pay the Company 75 lakh rupees as a down payment.

• On March 16, 1846, a second treaty formally transferred **Kashmir to Gulab Singh.**

• **The Bhairowal Treaty** - The Sikhs revolted because they were dissatisfied with the Treaty of Lahore on the question of Kashmir.

• The **Treaty of Bhairowal** was signed in December of 1846. Rani Jindan was deposed as regent and a council of regency for Punjab was established as a result of the treaty's terms.

• The council was made up of eight Sikh sardars and was presided over by H**enry Lawrence, the English Resident.**

2.4 Treaty of Lahore

• The **Treaty of Lahore,** signed on March 9, 1846, marked the conclusion of the **First Anglo-Sikh War.**

• The Treaty was signed by Governor-General Sir Henry Hardinge and two East India Company officers for the British, and by **Maharaja Duleep Singh Bahadur** and seven members of Hazara for the Sikhs, covering the territory south of the river Sutlej as well as the forts and territory in the Jalandhar Doab between the rivers Sutlej and Beas.

• Punjab's king, Maharaja Duleep Singh, was to continue in power, with his mother Jindan Kaur serving as regent.

• The Sikhs were forced to hand over the **Doab of Jalandhar to the British.**

• The Sikhs were also expected to pay the English a colossal war indemnity.

• However, because they were unable to pay the entire amount, only a portion was paid, and the remainder was handed to the English in the form of **Kashmir, Hazarah,** and all lands between the Beas and the Indus Rivers.

• The Sikhs were supposed to keep their force to a specific size.

- **Sir Henry Lawrence,** a British Resident, was also appointed to the Sikh court.

2.5 Conclusion

After the rise of the company and the fall of the Mughal empire, the Sikh empire was one of the few remaining kingdoms in India. Despite the fact that the conflict damaged the Sikh Army, resentment of British meddling in administration led to the Second Anglo-Sikh War three years later.

3. Second Anglo-Sikh War (1848-49)

The **Second Anglo-Sikh Wa**r was a military conflict in **1848 and 1849** between the **Sikh Empire** and the **British East India Company**. It culminated in the fall of the **Sikh Empire** and the East India Company's acquisition of the Punjab and what became the **North-West Frontier Province.** This article will explain to you about the **Second Anglo-Sikh War (1848-49)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

3.1 Background

- The settlement of Punjab during the **first Sikh War** neither suited the **English imperialistic** objectives nor the **Sikhs.**

- As a result, the reasons for the **second Anglo-Sikh war developed quickly**. The English offered certain facilities to the Muslims in Punjab, which **harmed Sikh religious sensibilities**.

- Soldiers who were discharged from the military felt cheated since they had no other options.

- The **Sikhs were** persuaded, correctly or erroneously, that their failure was due only to the treachery of their leaders and that, given another chance, they would easily overcome the **English.**

- As a result, they sought another opportunity to **battle the English.**

- The **Sikhs** were severely humiliated by their defeat in the **First Anglo-Sikh War** and the conditions of the **treaties of Lahore and Bhairowal.**

- The inhuman treatment meted out to **Rani Jindan,** who was transported to **Benares as a pensioner**, fueled Sikh fury.

- **Mulraj,** Multan's governor, was replaced by a new **Sikh governor** due to an increase in annual revenue.

- **Mulraj** rebelled and assassinated two English officers who were accompanying the new governor.

- **Sher Singh** was dispatched to put down the rebellion, but he joined Mulraj, sparking a general insurrection **throughout Multan.** This might be seen as the direct cause of the conflict.

- **Lord Dalhousie,** the then-Governor General of India and a staunch expansionist, was given the justification to entirely occupy Punjab.

3.2 Course of the war

- **Lord Dalhousie** proceeded to **Punjab on his own.** Before the eventual conquest of Punjab, three major wars were fought.

- These three fights were as follows:
- The **Battle of Ramnagar,** headed by **Sir Hugh Gough,** the Company's commander-in-chief.
- On November 22, 1848, the first fight between the English and the Sikhs was fought at **Ramnagar.** However, it **remained undecided.**
- **Chillianwala Battle,** On January 13, 1849, the second fight was fought at **Chillianwala**.
- It was likewise uncertain, but the **English were successful in Multan.**
- The Sikh army **surrendered at Rawalpindi** on February 21, 1849, and their **Afghan allies** were pushed out of India.
- **Mulraj surrendered** himself on January 22. The crucial fight, however, took place on February 21, 1849, at Gujarat, a town near the Chenab.
- The Sikhs were thoroughly beaten**. Sher Singh, Chattar Singh,** and the other **Sikh leaders surrendered t**o the English in March 1849.
- On March 29, 1849, **Dalhousie annexed Punjab.**
- **Maharaja Dalip Singh** was awarded a pension of four to five lacs per year and deported to England with his mother, Rani Jhindan.

3.3 Result of Second Anglo-Sikh War

- According to the **Treaty of Lahore,** the British seized Punjab in March 1849 under **Lord Dalhousie.**
- **Duleep Singh,** the eleven-year-old Maharaja, was pensioned off to England.
- **Rani Jindan or Jind Kaur** and her son, the Maharaja, were separated and sent to Firozpur. Her allowance was cut to a pittance, and her jewelry and cash were seized.
- The first Chief Commissioner of Punjab, **Sir John Lawrence,** was chosen to oversee the government.
- **Dalhousie** was named a Marquis in recognition of his participation in the British acquisition of Punjab.
- The famed **Koh-i-Noor diamond** was acquired by the British. It was in the ownership of Maharaja Ranjit Singh, who had bequeathed it to the Puri Jagannath Temple in Odisha, but the British did not carry out his will.
- It was allegedly acquired as part of the **Lahore Treaty** during the second Anglo-Sikh war.

3.4 Lord Dalhousie

- Lord Dalhousie (actual name James Andrew Ramsay) served as Governor-General of India from 1848 until 1856.

- During this time, the Sikhs were crushed once more in the Second Anglo-Sikh War (1849), and Dalhousie was successful in annexing the whole Punjab under British authority.

- He is most known for his Doctrine of Lapse, which many believe was directly responsible for the 1857 Indian Revolt.

- Despite the Doctrine, Lord Dalhousie is often regarded as the "Maker of Modern India."

- In India, Lord Dalhousie established several Anglo-vernacular schools. He also instituted social changes, such as the prohibition on female infanticide.

- He was a fervent believer in western administrative changes, believing that they were both essential and preferable to Indian methods.

- He also built engineering institutions to supply resources for each presidency's newly constituted public works department.

- During his term, the first railway line between Bombay and Thane was opened in 1853, and in the same year,Calcutta and Agra were connected by telegraph.

- Other changes he enacted include the establishment of P.W.D. and the passage of the Widow Remarriage Act (1856).

- Dalhousie, a highland station in Himachal Pradesh, was named for him. It began as a summer resort for English civil and military authorities in 1854.

- Lord Dalhousie died on December 19, 1860, at the age of 48.

3.5 Conclusion

The second **Anglo-Sikh war** was the final conflict waged by the English to expand their dominion inside India's borders. The acquisition of Punjab stretched British India's territory up to the country's natural borders in the northwest. Furthermore, when the Sikh force was destroyed, there was no local power in India that could pose a danger to English security. The Anglo-Sikh battles instilled mutual respect for each other's combat abilities. Up to India's independence in 1947, the Sikhs fought loyally on the British side in the Revolt of 1857 and many subsequent conflicts and wars.

4. The French (1664-1760)

France was the last of the **main European maritime powers to engage the East India trade in the 17th century**. The French had no sustainable trading firm or permanent station in the **East six decades** after the formation of the **English and Dutch East India companies** (in 1600 and 1602, respectively), and at a period when both enterprises were increasing factories (trading posts) on the beaches of India. **The first French commercial** venture to India is thought to have occurred during **King Francis I's** reign in the first part of the 16th century. This article will explain to you about **The French (1664-1760)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

4.1 Rise of the French

- The **French** had a desire to engage in **East Indian trade** from the early **16th century,** their arrival at the Indian ports was delayed.

- Indeed, the **French** were the last Europeans to arrive in India for commercial purposes.

- During **Louis XIV's reign,** the king's famed minister Colbert set the groundwork for the **Compagnie des Indes Orientales** (**French East India Company)** in 1664, in which the king also had a vested stake.

- A 50-year monopoly on French commerce in the **Indian and Pacific Oceans** was granted to the **French East India Company**.

- The **French king** also awarded the corporation a perpetual concession over the **island of Madagascar,** as well as any additional countries it may capture.

- The **Company** invested a lot of money and energy attempting to resurrect the **Madagascar colonies,** but with little result.

- Then, in 1667, **Francois Caron** led an expedition to India, where he established a factory in Surat.

- After securing a patent from the **Sultan of Golconda, Mercara, a Persian** who followed Caron, established another French workshop at Masulipatnam in 1669.

- **Shaista Khan**, the Mughal **subahdar of Bengal**, granted the French permission to develop a colony at Chandernagore near Calcutta in 1673.

4.2 The Nerve centers of French

- **Sher Khan Lodi,** the ruler of **Valikandapuram** (under the Bijapur Sultan), awarded Francois Martin, the director of the Masulipatnam factory, a colony site in 1673.

- **Pondicherry was established in 1674.**
- **Francois Martin** took over as French governor the next year, succeeding Caron.
- The French corporation also constructed plants in various sections of India, notably around the coast.
- The **French East India Company** had key commercial centers at Mahe, Karaikal, Balasore, and Qasim Bazar.
- **Francois Martin** established Pondicherry as a significant location after assuming command of it in 1674.
- It was, indeed, the French stronghold in India.

4.3 French East India Company

- The **French East India Company** was a colonial commercial venture that was established on September 1, 1664, to compete with the **English (later British**) and Dutch trade firms in the East Indies.
- The company's interest in the **Mughal Empire** would not be much simpler to come by.
- On September 4, 1666, the French obtained a royal mandate from Emperor Aurangzeb allowing them to trade via the port of Surat.
- By 1683, the **French had shifted** their focus to the prestigious location of Pondicherry, but the change did little to alleviate the Company's persistent **lack of finance.**
- With the collapse of the **Mughal Empire,** the French sought to meddle in Indian political matters in order to defend their interests, most notably by forming alliances with local kings in south India.
- The commencement of war between the **Dutch and the French** had a negative impact on the **French position in India.**
- The **Dutch seized Pondicherry** in 1693, bolstered by their affiliation with the English after the Revolution of 1688.
- Despite the fact that the **Treaty of Ryswick**, signed in September 1697, returned Pondicherry to the French, the **Dutch garrison** hung on to it for another two years.
- **Pondicherry** flourished once more under **Francois Martin's** capable leadership and grew to become the most significant French outpost in India.
- When the War of **Spanish Succession** broke out in Europe, the French company's fortunes in India took another turn for the worse.
- As a result, they were forced to close their facilities in **Surat, Masulipatnam, and Bantam** in the early 18th century.

- When **Francois Martin** died on December 31, 1706, the French in India suffered another loss.

- The **British were France's** major adversary. As a result of continual battles in Europe, particularly the **War of the Austrian Succession** and the **Seven Years' War,** the British gained control of French colonies in India.

- The lands were restored to France by the **Treaty of Paris in 1763**. It was granted a **seven-year monopoly** on all trade with countries beyond the **Cape of Good Hope.**

- The agreement, however, did not foresee the **French Revolution,** and the monopoly was terminated on 3 April 1790 by an act of the **new French Assembly that excitedly** stated that the profitable Far Eastern trade would now be "thrown open to all Frenchmen."

- The Company was unable to sustain itself financially.

- In 1785, the firm was reorganized and 40,000 shares of the stock were issued at a price of 1,000 livres each.

- The firm, unaccustomed to either competition or official disfavour, **declined steadily** and was eventually dissolved in 1794.

4.4 The Anglo-French Struggle for Supremacy

- However the **British and French** arrived in India for trade, they were eventually dragged into Indian politics. Both had ambitions to wield political influence in the region.

- The **Anglo-French** competition in India mirrored the customary rivalry between **England and France** throughout their histories; it began with the commencement of the **Austrian War of Succession** and culminated with the **Seven Years' War.**

- In India, the competition, which took the shape of **three Carnatic wars,** determined once and for all that the English, not the French, would be the lords of India.

- South India's political status was unsettled and perplexing in 1740.

- **Nizam Asaf Jah of Hyderabad** was old and busy **fighting the Marathas** in the western Deccan, while his subordinates speculated about the ramifications of his death.

- To the south of his dominion was the **Coromandel Coast,** which lacked a strong monarch to preserve power balance.

- Instead, there was the remainder of the former **Vijayanagara empire** in inner **Mysore, Cochin, and Travancore on the Malabar Coast, and minor realms of Madura (Madurai), Tanjore (Thanjavur), and Trichinopoly in the east (Thiruchirapally).**

- The **loss of Hyderabad** signaled the end of Muslim expansionism, and the English adventurers prepared their plans accordingly.
- In particular, in India, the rivalry, which took the shape of **three Carnatic wars,** determined once and for all that the **English, rather than the French**, were the better candidates to establish their control over India.

4.5 Causes for the English Success

- The **English corporation** was a private enterprise, which instilled in the people a spirit of optimism and self-assurance.
- With less **governmental oversight,** this corporation may make choices quickly without waiting for clearance from the government.
- The **French corporation,** on the other hand, was a state-owned enterprise.
- It was governed and regulated by the **French government,** and it was constrained by government policies and decision-making delays.
- The **English navy was superio**r to the French fleet, and it assisted in cutting off the important maritime route between France's colonies in India and France.
- The English controlled three significant cities: **Calcutta, Bombay, and Madras,** while the French controlled just **Pondicherry.**
- The French prioritized geographical ambition over business interests, resulting in a lack of cash for the French enterprise.
- Regardless of their imperialistic motivations, the British never ignored their **business interests.**
- As a result, they always had the cash and, as a result, a **solid financial position** to aid them considerably in their conflicts against their adversaries.
- The supremacy of the British commanders was a crucial element in the English triumph in India.
- In comparison to the English side's lengthy list of commanders - **Sir Eyre Coote, Major Stringer Lawrence, Robert Clive,** and many more - the French side had just Dupleix.

4.6 Dupleix

- In 1741, **Joseph Francois Dupleix** began to have ambitions for a **French Empire in India,** but he was unable to persuade his superiors to support the concept.
- When the British and French clashed in India, a series of skirmishes ensued.

- **Robert Clive** landed in India in 1744. This rogue British officer dashed Dupleix's aspirations of establishing a French colony in India.
- **Pondicherry** was seized by the British in 1761, and the French possessions in India have remained marginalized ever since.
- The analysis of the first two **Carnatic wars** demonstrates Dupleix's diplomacy as a leader who envisioned the course of the European invasion of India.
- **Dupleix** utilized the **Nawab of Carnatic** to prevent the English from fighting in his territory, allowing the French colonists in Pondicherry to be protected until the French soldiers gained sufficient strength.
- After the English were vanquished, the nawab was promised **Madras in exchange.**
- **Dupleix** was the first European to meddle in the domestic affairs of the Indian monarchs.
- He supported **Muzzaffar Jang** for Hyderabad and **Chanda Sahib for Carnatic,** and his candidates were elected, and in exchange, he made significant concessions to **Dupleix.**

4.7 India and French - Post Independence

- France's Indian assets were reunited with former British India when India won independence from the **British in 1947.**
- In 1948, France and India decided to hold an election to determine the political destiny of the territories remaining under the French administration.
- **Pondicherry** was handed to the Indian Union on November 1, 1954, while **Chandernagore** was restored to India on May 2, 1950.
- When the **French Parliament** ratified a deal with India in 1962, the remaining regions of French India were restored to India.

4.8 Conclusion

The victory at Wandiwash effectively ended the English East India Company's European rivalry in India. As a result, they were prepared to seize control of the entire country. Natives served as sepoys on both sides during the Battle of Wandiwash. It leads one to believe that regardless of who won, the fall of India to European invaders was unavoidable.

5. French Settlements in India

French India, formally the, was a **French settlement** consisting of five geographically isolated enclaves on the Indian Subcontinent that were once French East India Company industries. In 1950 and 1954, they were **de facto** absorbed into the **Republic of India. Pondicherry, Karaikal, Yanaon (Andhra Pradesh) on the Coromandel Coast, Mahe on the Malabar Coast, and Chandernagor in Bengal were the enclaves.** This article will explain to you about the **French Settlements in India** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

5.1 French Advent in India

- France was the last of the main **European maritime** powers to engage the **East India trade** in the 17th century.

- Six decades after the establishment of the **English and Dutch East India companies** (in 1600 and 1602, respectively), and at a time when both companies were multiplying factories (trading posts) on India's shores, the **French** still lacked a viable trading company or a single permanent establishment in the **East.**

- The **French East India Company** was a colonial commercial venture that was established on September 1, 1664, to compete with the English (later British) and Dutch trade firms in the East Indies.

- The company's interest in the **Mughal Empire** would not be much simpler to come by.

- On September 4, 1666, the French obtained a royal mandate from **Emperor Aurangzeb** allowing them to trade via the port of Surat.

- **Sher Khan Lodi,** the ruler of Valikandapuram (under the Bijapur Sultan), awarded Francois Martin, the director of the Masulipatnam factory, a colony site in 1673.

- **Pondicherry** was established in **1674.**

- **Francois Martin** took over as French governor the next year, succeeding Caron.

- The French corporation also constructed plants in various sections of India, notably around the coast.

- The **French East India Company** had key commercial centres at Mahe, Karaikal, Balasore, and Qasim Bazar.

5.2 French settlements in India

- Mascara was successful in building another **French factory at Masulipatam** in 1669.

- Fort Saint Thomas was seized in 1672, but the Dutch drove the French out. With the authority of Nawab Shaista Khan, the Mughal administrator of Bengal, Chandernagore (now Chandannagar) was founded in 1692.

- The French purchased Pondicherry from the Qiladar of Valikandapuram under the Sultan of Bijapur in 1673, laying the groundwork for Pondichéry.

- By 1720, the British East India Company had taken over the French factories at Surat, Masulipatam, and Bantam.

- The French firm also built plants in various sections of India, notably around the coast.

- The French East India Company had commercial centres at Mahe, Karaikal, Balasore, and Qasim Bazar, among others.

- Francois Martin established Pondicherry as a significant location after assuming command in 1674. Indeed, it was the French's strongest hold in India.

5.3 Pondicherry

- The city of Puducherry, on India's southeast coast, has no known history dating back to antiquity.

- Puducherry's history is only documented following the arrival of colonial powers including the Dutch, Portuguese, English, and French.

- Nearby settlements like Arikanmedu (Now Ariyankuppam), Kakayanthoppe, Villianur, and Bahur, which were conquered by the French East India Company throughout time and formed the Union Territory of Puducherry after Independence, have recorded history dating back before the colonial era.

- The French East India Company established a commercial centre at Pondicherry in 1674.

- This colony later became the most important French presence in India.

- With the French Revolutionary Wars, the British regained control of the territory during the Siege of Pondicherry in 1793, then restored it to France in 1814.

- The British permitted the French to keep their colony in India when they took control of the nation in the late 1850s.

- Until 1954, Pondicherry, Mahe, Yanam, Karaikal, and Chandernagar were all part of French India.

- In French Colony Pondicherry, the Basilica of the Sacred Heart of Jesus church is located on the south promenade and is a fine example of Gothic architecture.

- It is made up of rare stained glass panels depicting events from Jesus Christ's and the saints' lives. It has become a well-known Christian pilgrimage site.
- The **unification of France's** Indian territories with erstwhile British India was sparked by I**ndia's independence in 1947.**
- The residents of the **Indian territories of France** would select their **political future,** according to a 1948 agreement between **France and India.**
- **French India** did not become a de jure member of the Indian Union until 1962. On November 1, 1954, the **bureaucracy was de facto** merged with that of India.
- In 1963, it was designated as a **Union Territory. India has annexed Puducherry.**

5.4 Mahe

- Only during the French colonisation of India did the name Mahe (Mayyazhi) gain a position on the **Indian map.**
- The **French in Mahe** began their history in 1721, when the British established their Empire on the west coast, inspiring the **French** to build their dominion in Mahe.
- **Thalassery** was their first site in Kerala. However, they picked Mahe as their safe haven from the British.
- During that time, Mahe was ruled by **'Vadakara Vazhunnor,'** and he was known as '**King of Kadathanadu,**' and he was ruled by 'Kolathiri' till the 7th century.
- In 1670, with the help of **Chirackal King** and the **'Thalassery Naduvazhi'** Shri. **Kurangoth Nair, t**he French, built a fort at Thalassery.
- Despite the help of local kings, they were unable to defeat the British East India Company.
- Then they constructed a storage facility at **Punnol in 1702**. Because of the failure in Punnol, they were obliged to transfer to Mahe in 1721.
- Due to the obvious consequences of the **French-English War** in 1761, then- **British Commandant Thomas Hodge** insisted that the French surrender and the French consented on some terms.
- The French kept Mahe as a result of the **Paris Peace Agreement** of 1763. However, the **British retook Mahe** from the French in 1779.
- **Mahe** was recaptured by the French in 1817. Because the British had taken control of the whole **Malabar area,** the French were compelled to rule Mahe with certain restrictions.

- Mahe became a district of the **Puducherry Union Territory** when the French left.
- From **Mayyazhi in the north to Azhiyoor** in the south, Mahe is a large island. Mahé is made up of two villages: Pandakkal, Pallur, Chalakara, and Chembra, as well as Mahé town.
- **Hyder Ali** (about 1722–1782), the king of the **Kingdom of Mysore** from the 1760s, gave Naluthara to the **French as a sign** of gratitude for their aid in the battle.
- On May 1, the Indian flag was raised in the **Naluthara enclave.** From June of that year, the independence fighters imposed an embargo on Mahe.
- The **Mahajana Sabha** coordinated a march towards Mahé on July 14, 1954, which was freed on July 16, 1954.

5.5 Karaikal

- **Karaikal** is a town in **Puducherry,** India's Union Territory.
- **Karaikal** became a French colony in 1674, and it remained under French rule until 1954, when it, along with **Chandernagore, Mahe, Yanaon, and Pondicherry,** was merged into the Republic of India.
- Prior to 1739, **Raja Pratap Singh of Tanjore** ruled and ruled over Karaikal.
- In 1738, **Pierre Benoit Dumas,** eager to expand French territory in India by peaceful means, bargained with **Sahuji of Thanjavur** for the acquisition of **Karaikal, the Karakal Cheri citadel,** and five villages in exchange for 40,000 chakras.
- **The French** gained control of **Karaikal town,** the fort of Karakalcheri, and eight dependent settlements on February 14, 1739.
- On 13 June 1947, the Karaikal National Congress was formed, and on 31 January 1947, the **Karaikal Students' Congress was formed,** symbolising the first tangible expression of public demand in Karaikal for independence from the French India.
- The **French governed** this area until October 31, 1954, when the **French flag** above the **Karaikal government** building was lowered with military honours in front of a huge crowd of officials and non-officials.
- Despite the fact that the land was transferred to the Republic of India on November 1, 1954, **Karaikal's municipal government** was maintained under the terms of the Arrêté of March 8, 1880.
- This was superseded by the **Pondicherry Municipality Act, 1973,** which took effect on January 26, 1974.

5.6 Yanam

- For over 200 years, it was a French colony, and although being unified with India in 1954, it is still referred to as **"French Yanam."**

- It is dubbed **Frelugu because** it combines French culture with the Telugu culture prevalent in **Andhra Pradesh.**

- The Tuesday market (Marche du Mardi or **Mangalavaram Santa**) in Yanam was famous among Telugu people in the Madras Presidency during the French rule, who came to **Yanam** to buy foreign and smuggled products during the Yanam **People's Festival** in January.

- Telugu people frequently flocked to Yanam after the **Child Marriage Restraint Act** was enacted in British India in 1929, to conduct child weddings, which remained lawful under the **French authority.**

- Before the French took possession in the 1720s, Yanaon was a Dutch colony. In the west of **Yanam,** indigo wells (**Neeli Kondalu**) may still be discovered.

- The Dutch erected a fort to house their cash, which was coined nearby at **Neelapalli.**

- As a result, a **French municipal government** system exists in French India. Municipal administration used to be the hub of the entire administrative apparatus in French India.

5.7 Chandernagar

- **Chandannagar** was founded during colonial times, as shown by the fact that the town is not mentioned in **mediaeval Bengali** manuscripts such as **Chandimangal** and **Manasamangal.**

- Historians believe the town was founded by the **French** by combining many minor towns in the region.

- **Gondolpara** to the south, Boro to the north, and **Khalisani** to the west were the three prominent settlements to be integrated.

- The term **"Chandernagor"** first appears in a letter dated 1696 sent by Andre Boureau-Deslandes and Palle, French officials stationed at Chandernagore, to authorities of the **French East India Company.**

- In 1688, it became a permanent French colony. Joseph Francois Dupleix was named governor of the city in 1730.

- The **British Navy seized** Chandannagar on March 23, 1757, when a conflict broke out between **France and Great Britain in 1756.**

- In 1763, the **French reclaimed Chandernagore,** but the British reclaimed it in 1794. In 1816, the city pocket of the surrounding land was restored to France.

- Though India became independent of Britain in 1947, it remained ruled as part of **French India** until 1950, under the political supervision of the governor-general in **Pondicherry.**

- In 1947, India declared independence from the **United Kingdom.** A poll performed by the French government in June 1948 revealed that 97 percent of **Chandannagar citizens** wanted to join India.

- The French gave the Indian government **de facto sovereignty of Chandannagar** in May 1950, and the city was officially ceded to India on February 2, 1951.

- On **June 9, 1952,** a de jure transfer occurred. Like their counterparts in **Pondicherry,** the residents were given the choice of keeping their French nationality.

5.8 Contributions of French in Indian Culture

- **Pondicherry,** the wonderfully constructed city seen in **Ang Lee's " Life of Pi,"** was under French sovereignty for 245 years.

- The magnificently constructed **French Colonies, Catholic Cathedrals,** and beaches all reflect the tremendous impact of **French culture.**

- Despite its modest size, the town played a pivotal part in the fight for independence from the British and the struggle to liberate itself from the French.

- **Sri Aurobindo** and a French woman, **Mira Alfassa,** widely known as "The Mother," influenced **Pondy's ethnic culture,** which is now a Union Territory.

- **Chandnagar,** which offers a taste of **French culture,** became an integral part of India in 1955.

- The attractive town was dominated by the French from 1673, after being a mute witness to numerous **crucial wars** for trade and power by various foreign invaders.

- The town, which was once an important **commercial centre in Bengal,** has been reduced to a jumbled past, picturesque streets, and glimpses of French culture with a **Bengali twist.**

5.9 French Settlements - Post Independence

- **France's** Indian assets were reunited with former British India when India won independence from the **British in 1947.**

- In 1948, France and India decided to hold an election to determine the political destiny of the territories remaining under the French administration.

- **Pondicherry** was handed to the Indian Union on November 1, 1954, while **Chandernagore** was restored to India on May 2, 1950.
- When the **French Parliament** ratified a deal with India in 1962, the remaining regions of French India were restored to India.

5.10 Conclusion

The acquisition of property at Chandannagar from the Mughal Governor of Bengal launched the French colony in India in 1673. The **Sultan of Bijapur** sold them Pondicherry the following year. Both were the core of the French's marine economic efforts in India. The French, like the British, intended to expand their sphere of influence by exploiting rivalry among Indian monarchs. In order to demonstrate their economic and political fortunes in India, they clashed with the British.

6. French Conquests in India

French India, formally the **French Settlements in India**, was a French colony in the Indian Subcontinent that consisted of five geographically dispersed enclaves that were formerly **French East India Company establishments.** In the 17th century, France was the last of the major European naval nations to engage in the East India trade. The **French conquest** of India began in 1673 with the acquisition of territory from the Mughal Governor of **Bengal at Chandernagore**. The next year, they purchased Pondicherry from the Sultan of Bijapur. Both became hubs for the French's maritime economic interests in India. This article will explain to you about **French Conquests in India** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

6.1 Rise of the French

- Although the **French** had a desire to engage in **East Indian trade** from the early 16th century, their arrival on the Indian ports was delayed.

- Indeed, the **French** were the last Europeans to arrive in India for commerce purposes.

- During **Louis XIV's reign,** the king's famed minister Colbert set the groundwork for the **Compagnie des Indes Orientales (French East India Company)** in 1664, in which the king also had a vested stake.

- A 50-year monopoly on French commerce in the **Indian and Pacific Oceans** was granted to the **French East India Company**.

- The **French king** also awarded the corporation a perpetual concession over the **island of Madagascar,** as well as any additional countries it may capture.

- The **Company** invested a lot of money and energy attempting to resurrect the **Madagascar colonies,** but with little result.

- Then, in 1667, **Francois Caron** led an expedition to India, where he established a factory in Surat.

- After securing a patent from the **Sultan of Golconda, Mercara, a Persian** who followed Caron, established another French workshop at Masulipatnam in 1669.

- **Shaista Khan**, the Mughal **subahdar of Bengal**, granted the French permission to develop a colony at Chandernagore near Calcutta in 1673.

6.2 Pondicherry - Centre of French

- **Sher Khan Lodi,** the ruler of Valikandapuram (under the Bijapur

Sultan), awarded **Francois Martin,** the director of the Masulipatnam factory, a colony site in 1673.

- **Pondicherry** was established in 1674. Francois Martin took over as French governor the next year, succeeding Caron.

- The French corporation also constructed plants in various sections of India, notably around the coast.

- The **French East India Company** had key commercial centres at Mahe, Karaikal, Balasore, and Qasim Bazar.

- **Francois Martin** established Pondicherry as a significant location after assuming command of it in 1674. It was, indeed, the French stronghold in India.

6.3 Struggle for Supremacy

- However the **British and French** arrived in India for trade, they were eventually dragged into Indian politics. Both had ambitions to wield political influence in the region.

- The **Anglo-French** competition in India mirrored the customary rivalry between **England and France** throughout their histories; it began with the commencement of the **Austrian War of Succession** and culminated with the Seven Years' War.

- In India, the competition, which took the shape of **three Carnatic wars,** determined once and for all that the English, not the French, would be the lords of India.

- South India's political status was unsettled and perplexing in 1740.

- **Nizam Asaf Jah of Hyderabad** was old and busy fighting the Marathas in the western Deccan, while his subordinates speculated about the ramifications of his death.

- To the south of his dominion was the **Coromandel Coast,** which lacked a strong monarch to preserve power balance.

- Instead, there was the remainder of the former **Vijayanagara empire in inner Mysore, Cochin, and Travancore on the Malabar Coast, and minor realms of Madura (Madurai), Tanjore (Thanjavur), and Trichinopoly in the east (Thiruchirapally).**

- The **loss of Hyderabad** signalled the end of Muslim expansionism, and the English adventurers prepared their plans accordingly.

- In particular, in India, the rivalry, which took the shape of **three Carnatic wars,** determined once and for all that the **English, rather than the French**, were the better candidates to establish their control over India.

6.4 Battle of Wandiwash

- The **Battle of Wandiwash** took place in 1760 in India between the **French and the British.**

- The battle took place as part of the **Third Carnatic War**, which was fought between the French and British colonial empires and was part of the worldwide Seven Years' War.

- It happened at **Vandavasi, Tamil Nadu.** After making significant advances in **Bengal and Hyderabad**, the British were **well-equipped** to meet the French at Wandiwash, whom they destroyed.

- The English won the **crucial battle** of the **Third Carnatic War** on January 22, 1760 at Wandiwash (or Vandavasi) in Tamil Nadu.

- The French, led by **Comte de Lally,** were hampered by a **lack of naval support** and finances, so they sought to retake Vandavasi, now in Tamil Nadu.

- While attempting to do so, they were assaulted by **British forces** led by **Sir Eyre Coote**, and the French were decisively destroyed in the subsequent fight.

- As a result of the fight, the French in South India were confined to Pondicherry, where they surrendered on 22 January 1761, under the command of commander Marquis de **Bussy-Castelnau.**

- One of the factors that prompted France to **sign the Treaty of Paris** was the collapse of the **French position in India,** which reduced the French to nothing more than traders in that nation and ultimately ended further French imperial ambitions in that country.

- Britain, on the other hand, consolidated its dominance over other **European nations** in India during this conflict.

6.5 Reasons for French Failure

- The British have greater **naval strength.** They might bring warriors from Europe as well as supplies from Bengal. The French had no such option for replenishing supplies.

- The French Army had 300 European Cavalry, 2,250 European Infantry, 1,300 sepoys (soldiers), 3,000 Mahrattas, and 16 pieces of artillery, whereas the English had 80 European Horses, 250 Native Horses, 1,900 European Infantry, and 2,100 sepoys.

- Britain possessed three significant posts: **Madras, Bombay, and Calcutta.**

- The French, on the other hand, only possessed one strong station, Pondicherry.

- This meant that if **Pondicherry** was taken, the French had little chance of regaining control. However, if one of the bases is seized, Britain may rely on either of the other two.

- The British gained access to a wealthy territory, Bengal, as a result of their victory in the **Battle of Plassey.**

- The British army had numerous skilled soldiers, including Robert Clive, Stringer Lawrence, and **Sir Eyre Coote.**

6.6 Significance of Carnatic Wars

- Although the **First Carnatic War** had nothing to do with I**ndian politics,** its influence on India could not be overlooked.

- The **European countries** were made aware of the hollowness of **Indian politics** and **military impotence** throughout this conflict.

- The **Carnatic Nawab** was unable to prevent a commercial business from going to war.

- In terms of outcomes, the **second carnatic** war proved to be more crucial than the first.

- The British were now in a **stronger position** than they had been previously.

- This conflict exposed the native rulers' **political hollowness to outsiders** for the first time, allowing them to openly participate in Indian politics.

- Following the third **Carnatic war,** the British have really become India's **fortune-tellers.**

- Although there were several skirmishes between the French and the British until 1818 AD, the **British consolidated** their dominance by conquering the French in 1763.

6.7 Conclusion

In 1673, the French colony in India was established with the purchase of property at Chandannagar from the Mughal Governor of Bengal. The next year, the Sultan of Bijapur sold them to Pondicherry. However, the victory at Wandiwash against the Frenchlargely ended the European competition of the English East India Company in India. As a consequence, they were ready to take over the entire country. During the Battle of Wandiwash, natives acted as sepoys on both sides. It gives the impression that no matter who won, the fall of India to European invaders was inescapable.

7. Anglo-French Rivalry

The **Anglo-French rivalry** in India reflected the long-standing rivalry between England and France, which began with the start of the **Austrian War of Succession** and ended with the **Seven Years' War.** However the British and French arrived in India for trade, they were eventually dragged into Indian politics. Both had ambitions to wield political influence in the region. This article will explain to you about the **Anglo-French Rivalry** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

7.1 The Anglo-French Struggle for Supremacy

- However the **British and French** arrived in India for trade, they were eventually dragged into Indian politics. Both had ambitions to wield political influence in the region.

- The **Anglo-French** competition in India mirrored the customary rivalry between **England and France** throughout their histories; it began with the commencement of the **Austrian War of Succession** and culminated with the Seven Years' War.

- In India, the competition, which took the shape of **three Carnatic wars,** determined once and for all that the English, not the French, would be the lords of India.

- South India's political status was unsettled and perplexing in 1740.

- **Nizam Asaf Jah of Hyderabad** was old and busy fighting the Marathas in the western Deccan, while his subordinates speculated about the ramifications of his death.

- To the south of his dominion was the **Coromandel Coast,** which lacked a strong monarch to preserve power balance.

- Instead, there was the remainder of the former **Vijayanagara empire** in inner **Mysore, Cochin, and Travancore on the Malabar Coast, and minor realms of Madura (Madurai), Tanjore (Thanjavur), and Trichinopoly in the east (Thiruchirapally).**

- The **loss of Hyderabad** signalled the end of Muslim expansionism, and the English adventurers prepared their plans accordingly.

- In particular, in India, the rivalry, which took the shape of **three Carnatic wars,** determined once and for all that the **English, rather than the French**, were the better candidates to establish their control over India.

7.2 Conclusion

Despite the fact that the British and French came to India to trade, they were eventually entangled into India's politics. Both had ambitions to consolidate political control in the region. The Anglo-French competition in India mirrored England and France's long standing rivalry throughout their histories; it began with the commencement of the Austrian War of Succession and culminated with the Seven Years War.

8. First Carnatic War
(1740-48)

The **First Carnatic War (1746–1748)** was the first in a series of Carnatic Wars that established early British control on the east coast of the Indian subcontinent during the **War of the Austrian Succession.** During this war, the **British and French East India Companies** competed on land for control of their respective commercial centres in **Madras, Pondicherry, and Cuddalore**, while French and British naval troops fought off the coast. The campaign paved the way for the fast expansion of French power in southern India during the **Second Carnatic War**, which was led by French Governor-General **Joseph Francois Dupleix**. This article will explain to you about **The First Carnatic War (1740-48)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

8.1   Background

- The **Coromandel coast** and its hinterland were given the name **Carnatic by Europeans.**

- The **First Carnatic War** was a **European extension** of the **Anglo-French War** triggered by the Austrian War of Succession.

- The **First Carnatic War** is famous for the Battle of **St. Thome (in Madras**), which took place between **French forces and the forces of Anwar-ud-din**, the **Nawab of Carnatic,** to whom the English called for assistance.

- Although France, aware of its inferior position in India, did not want hostilities to be extended to India, the English fleet under Barnet captured some French ships in order to antagonise France.

- In 1746, France replied by taking Madras with the assistance of a squadron from Mauritius, the French island of Mauritius, led by **Admiral La Bourdonnais,** the French governor of Mauritius.

- As a result, the first Carnatic War began.

8.2   Course of the war

- The **War of Austrian Succession,** which erupted in Europe in 1740, pitted France and Britain against one other.

- Due to the **Anglo-French rivalry,** their commercial businesses in India competed for domination.

- **Dupleix,** the French Governor of Pondicherry, had established an army of Indian sepoys in India under French command.

- In 1720, France nationalised the **French East India Company,** and France had imperialistic plans for India.
- In 1745, **Britain launched** a naval attack against a French fleet, putting **Pondicherry in jeopardy**.
- **Dupleix,** with the help of extra French forces from Mauritius, repelled the invasion and took Madras, which had been under English hands.
- The English launched a second attempt on Pondicherry, but suffered a devastating defeat. The English requested assistance from **Anwaruddin Khan**, the **Nawab of Carnatic (Arcot).**
- The Nawab requested that Madras be returned to the British by the French.
- Dupleix tried unsuccessfully to persuade the Nawab that Madras would be given up to him at a later date.
- The **Nawab** then dispatched a massive army to combat the French. In 1746, this army was destroyed by a small contingent of French soldiers in Mylapore (modern-day Chennai).
- This revealed the inferiority of the Indian monarchs' troops in comparison to the well-trained armies of the European powers.

8.3 The War of Austrian Succession

- Most of Europe's leading countries were embroiled in a battle between 1740 and 1748 over **Maria Theresa's** succession to the Austrian Habsburg throne.
- The conflict engulfed the entire continent, with France, Prussia, Spain, Bavaria, and Saxony pitted against Austria and Britain.
- The **First Silesian War (1740–42) and the Second Silesian War (1744–45),** the first two series of hostilities, were concentrated on Austria and Prussia.
- The third war was centred on France's and Britain's continuing feud for colonial conquests in India and North America.
- British forces proved their worth as soldiers during the conflict.
- The **Aix-la-Chapelle Peace Treaty**, signed in October 1748, brought the conflict to an end.
- In exchange for Louisbourg, France promised to leave the Austrian Netherlands and return Madras to the British.
- **Maria Theresa's** reign as Austrian monarch was also affirmed.

8.4 Result of the First Carnatic War

- The **Treaty of Aix-La Chapelle,** which brought the Austrian War of Succession to an end, concluded the First Carnatic War in 1748.

- Madras was returned to the English under the provisions of this treaty, while the French received their colonies in North America in exchange.

- The **Battle of St. Thome (in Madras)**, fought between the **French** and the soldiers of **Anwaruddin,** the **Nawab of Carnatic**, to whom the English turned for assistance, is recognised as a turning point in the **First Carnatic War.**

- **At St. Louis,** a small French force led by Captain Paradise beat a large Indian army led by Mahfuz Khan.

- For the Europeans in India, this was a wake-up call: it proved that even a small, disciplined force could easily beat a much **bigger Indian army.**

- Furthermore, the importance of naval might in the **Anglo-French** fight in the Deccan was amply demonstrated by this war.

8.5 Treaty of Aix-La Chapelle

- The Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, also known as the Treaty of Aachen, ended the War of the Austrian Succession in 1748.

- The treaty effectively ended the First Carnatic War (1746–1748).

- Dupleix's French army overcame the English and took Madras.

- Then, in 1748 AD, the peace treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle was signed, restoring Madras to the British and allowing for the exchange of war captives.

8.6 Battle of St. Thome

- The **battle of St. Thome** (4 November 1746) was the second of two wins in three days by tiny French soldiers over the greater army of the **Carnatic Nawab** (**First Carnatic War**).

- The fight had two outcomes. Dupleix declared Madras French by right of conquest in the short term and selected Paradis to govern the city.

- **Madras** remained in **French hands** until the end of the war, when it was returned to the British, who in turn returned **Louisburg to the French.**

- The longer-term impact was that **British and French** generals realised they now had a weapon capable of defeating the massive Indian armies that had previously intimidated them - the rapid fire of **disciplined troops** was now capable of defeating Indian troops, particularly the highly prestigious cavalry.

- This discovery would quickly change the balance of power in India.

8.7 Conclusion

Dupleix recognized the superiority of a small number of well-trained French and Indian men against larger Indian formations employing outdated military methods, and he used this advantage to substantially increase **French authority** in south India over the following several years. Neither the British nor the French gained any new territory, and their prior possessions were returned to them. The conflict had also increased the French status in the Carnatic region.

9. Second Carnatic War (1749-54)

The **Second Carnatic War (1749-54)** was a power struggle between various contenders to the positions of **Nizam of Hyderabad** and **Nawab of the Carnatic,** with each claimant backed by the **British or the French.** Although the **First Carnatic War** was a direct struggle between the two European powers, in the **Second Carnatic War**, both of them publicly supported opposing local claims in Hyderabad and the Carnatic. This article will explain to you about the **Second Carnatic War (1749-54)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

9.1 Second Carnatic War (1749-54) - Background

- Rivalry in India created the backdrop for the **Second Carnatic War.**

- **Dupleix,** the **French governor** who had led the **French armies to victory** in the **First Carnatic War,** aspired to expand his authority and political influence in southern India by engaging in local dynastic rivalries in order to beat the English.

- The death of **Nizam-ul-Mulk,** the founder of the independent kingdom of Hyderabad, in 1748, and the Marathas' release of **Chanda Sahib,** the **son-in-law of Dost Ali,** the **Nawab of Carnatic**, in the same year gave the chance.

- **Nasir Jung,** the Nizam's son, was deposed from the throne of Hyderabad by **Muzaffar Jung,** the Nizam's grandson, who claimed the throne by claiming that the **Mughal Emperor** had chosen him as the **governor of Hyderabad.**

- Chanda Sahib hated the appointment of **Anwaruddin Khan** as Nawab in the Carnatic.

- The French-backed **Muzaffar Jang** and **Chanda Sahib** in their claims to the Deccan and Carnatic, respectively, while the English backed **Nasir Jang** and Anwaruddin.

9.2 Course of the War

- At the **Battle of Ambur (near Vellore)** in 1749, the united troops of **Muzaffar Jang, Chanda Sahib,** and the French defeated and **killed Anwaruddin.**

- **Muzaffar Jang** was named subahdar of Deccan, while **Dupleix** was named governor of all **Mughal holdings** south of the **Krishna River.**

- To protect French interests in **Hyderabad,** a French army led by Bussy was stationed there.

- The **French received** territories surrounding Pondicherry as well as certain regions along the Odisha coast (including Masulipatnam).

- After failing to give meaningful support to **Muhammad Ali** at Trichinopoly, the English company's agent ('factor') **Robert Clive** proposed a diversionary attack against the governor of **Madras, Saunders.**

- He proposed a surprise **attack on Arcot,** the **Carnatic capital,** to ease **Trichinopoly's siege**. In such a case, he reasoned, **Chanda Sahib** would rush to rescue his capital.

- As a result, in August 1751, **Robert Clive** invaded and took Arcot with only 210 men.

- **Chanda Sahib** rushed to his capital, bringing with him a force of 4,000 soldiers from Trichinopoly, but despite a 53-day siege from September 23 to November 14, he was unable to retake the fort.

- **Trichinopoly, Clive,** and **Stringer Lawrence** were now aided by Mysore, Tanjore, and the Maratha leader, Morari Rao.

- Trichinopoly was the first to be released from its siege, although **General Law of France** remained imprisoned on the island of **Srirangam with Chanda Sahib.**

- When **Muhammad Ali** killed **Chanda Sahib** in June 1752, and the British failed to intervene, they were obliged to submit.

- The Battle concluded in 1754 with the **Treaty of Pondicherry.**

9.3 Result of the Second Carnatic War

- The French government, enraged by **Dupleix's policy's** massive **financial losses,** resolved to recall him in 1754.

- As the **French governor-general** in India, **Godeheu replaced Dupleix**. Godeheu pursued a campaign of **diplomacy with the English,** and they signed a pact with him.

- The **English and the French** agreed not to intervene in native rulers' quarrels.

- Furthermore, each side was left in control of the territory that they had occupied at the time of the pact.

- According to historians, the **French suspended hostilities** in India because of fear of dire repercussions in **America.**

- It became clear that Indian authority's approval was no longer required for **European success;** rather, Indian authority was growing increasingly reliant on European backing.

- **Salabat Jang** in **Hyderabad and Muhammad Ali** in the **Carnatic** became clients rather than patrons.

9.4 Treaty of Pondicherry

- The **Treaty of Pondicherry** was signed in 1754, bringing the Second Carnatic War to a close.

- It was agreed upon and signed at **Puducherry,** a **French enclave in French India.**

- **Mohamed Ali Khan Walajan,** the preferred British nominee, was named Nawab of the Carnatic.

- Despite the fact that it was intended to be a long-term solution, the **Third Carnatic War** flared out just two years later, in 1756.

- **Dupleix** was replaced as **French Governor-General** in India by **Charles Robert Godeheu.**

- Godeheu pursued a strategy of conciliation with the English, signing the **Treaty of Pondicherry** with them, in which the English and French promised not to intervene in the disputes of native kings.

9.5 Battle of Ambur

- The **Battle of Ambur,** which took place on August 3, 1749, was the first significant battle of the **Second Carnatic War.**

- **Muzaffar Jung** instigated the assault, which was sponsored by Joseph Francois Dupleix and led by **Chanda Sahib**, in order to depose **Anwaruddin Muhammed Khan,** the **Nawab of Carnatic,** for backing Nasir Jung's claim to be Nizam of Hyderabad.

- The allies won thanks to French soldiers; **Anwaruddin Muhammed Khan** was slain in the fight, and Chanda Sahib took control of the Carnatic.

- The united troops of **Dupleix, Chanda Sahib, and Muzaffar Jung** met Anwaruddin Muhammed Khan's army at Ambur on 3 August 1749.

- Despite being outnumbered 3 to 1, **Anwaruddin Muhammed Khan's** soldiers managed to build a threatening posture by assembling behind their howdahs, but it was the disciplined **French infantry** forces headed by **De Bussy** who entirely altered the course of the **battle against Khan.**

- **Anwaruddin Muhammed Khan** was shot and killed while directing his soldiers from a howdah during a furious battle.

- The next day, **Muzaffar Jang and Chanda Sahib** triumphantly invaded Arcot, and Chanda Sahib became the Carnatic's second Nawab.

- **Muhammed Ali Khan Wallajah, Anwaruddin Muhammed Khan's son,** went south to Trichinopoly, where he hid and sought British aid.

- The **Battle of Ambur** conclusively established Europe's superiority in armaments, discipline, and infantry combat.

9.6 Conclusion

Despite the fact that the war concluded with a succession of **French defeats**, the **French** had won the most from the conflict. Their candidate was **Nizam of Hyderabad,** and they had been rewarded with the majority of the Northern Circars (now the coast of Andhra Pradesh, to the northeast of the Carnatic). They had also amassed a sizable region surrounding Pondicherry. The British had acquired some territory surrounding Madras as well, but the French seemed to be the main winners.

10. Third Carnatic War (1758-63)

The **Third Carnatic War** was one of a series of conflicts waged in the coastal Carnatic area in the middle of the 18th century. From **1758 until 1763,** it was fought between the British and the French. The **Third Carnatic War** was a regional variant of Europe's Seven Years' War. The French dreams to establish a colonial empire in India were dashed by the Third Carnatic War. This article will explain to you about the **Third Carnatic War(1758-63)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

10.1 Background

- When Austria sought to reclaim **Silesia in 1756**, the **Seven Years' War (1756–63)** erupted throughout Europe.
- Britain and France were once again at odds.
- When the Seven Years' War broke out in Europe in 1756, it reignited warfare between **French and British soldiers in India.**
- The French were dealing with a number of financial issues at the time.
- The **Third Carnatic War** reached Bengal, when British soldiers took the French town of Chandernagore (now Chandannagar) in 1757.

10.2 Course of the War

- The **French army** led by **Count de Lally** conquered the English forts of **St. David and Vizianagaram in 1758.**
- The English then went on the attack, inflicting significant losses on the French navy led by **Admiral D'Ache at Masulipatnam.**
- The fall of **Jinji and Mahe** lowered French dominance in India to its nadir.
- Lally was captured as a prisoner of war in **London and returned to Franc**e, where he was imprisoned and killed in 1766.
- The war, however, was won in the south, where the British successfully held Madras and **Sir Eyre Coote** decisively beat the French, led by **Comte de Lally,** in the **Battle of Wandiwash** in 1760.
- Following **Wandiwash,** the British **captured Pondicherry,** the French capital, in 1761.

10.3 Result of the Third Carnatic War

- The Third Carnatic War turned out to be pivotal. Despite the fact that the **Treaty of Paris (1763)** restored the French industries in India, the French political authority faded after the war.

- Following that, the French, like their Portuguese and Dutch rivals in India, restricted themselves to tiny enclaves and commerce.
- Since the Dutch were destroyed at the **Battle of Bidara** in 1759, the English became the **dominant European force** in the Indian subcontinent.
- Historians generally see the **Battle of Plassey in 1757** as the crucial event that resulted in final British dominance over India.
- However, one cannot deny that the success of British forces against French **forces at Wandiwash in 1760** was a watershed moment in subcontinental domination.
- The victory at **Wandiwash effectively** ended the English East India Company's **European rivalry** in India.
- As a result, they were prepared to seize control of the entire country.
- Natives served as sepoys on both sides during the Battle of Wandiwash.
- It makes one think: regardless of which side triumphed, the surrender of India to **European invaders was unavoidable.**
- **Native kings** exhibited a l**ack of awareness** of the geopolitics of the day, as well as a lack of foresight.

10.4 Treaty of Paris (1763)

- After Great Britain's victory over France and Spain during the Seven Years' War, the Treaty of Paris, also known as the Treaty of 1763, was signed on 10 February 1763 by the kingdoms of Great Britain, France, and Spain, with Portugal in agreement.
- The signing of the treaty effectively concluded the battle between France and the **United Kingdom** over sovereignty of North America, ushering in a period of British supremacy outside of Europe.
- France **reclaimed its factories** in India, but acknowledged British clients as rulers of vital Indian native nations and promised not to deploy soldiers to Bengal.
- Following that, the French, like their **Portuguese and Dutch** competitors in India, confined themselves to small enclaves and commerce.

10.5 Conclusion

The Seven Years' War concluded in 1763, with the signing of the Treaty of Paris. The French were granted back several of its towns in India, including Chandranagar and Pondicherry, as part of this deal. However, they were not permitted to construct any fortifications there. Thus, the third Carnatic War sealed the fate of the French in India for all time, leaving only Britain to dispute the local rulers of India's sovereignty.

Chapter 4: Decline of Mughal Empire

1. Decline of Mughal Empire

The **Mughal Empire** collapsed apart in the 1750s, and the Successor States arose in its place. Until 1707, the **Mughals** had direct control over practically all of India. After Aurangzeb's death in 1707 CE, the **Mughal Empire** began to fall apart quickly. This year is usually used to distinguish the reign of the **Great Mughals** from the reign of the smaller Mughals, commonly known as the Later Mughals. This article will explain to you about the **Decline of Mughal Empire** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

1.1 Mughal Empire

- The **Mughal Empire**, sometimes known as the **Mogul Empire**, was a South Asian early **modern empire.**

- The empire spanned two centuries, from the western outskirts of the Indus basin, northern **Afghanistan in the northwest**, and Kashmir in the north, to the highlands of modern-day Assam and Bangladesh in the east, and the **Deccan plateau uplands** in south India.

- **Babur founded** the Mughal empire in 1526 after defeating Ibrahim Lodi in the **first battle of Panipat.**

- Thus started a new age and empire in India, which lasted over three centuries, from 1526 to 1857.

- The **"Great Mughals," Babur, Humayun, Akbar, Jahangir, Shah Jahan, and Aurangzeb**, were six prominent rulers of this dynasty who made their mark on Indian history.

- The M**ughal courts** grew even wealthier as the European presence in the Indian Ocean grew, as did the demand for Indian raw and finished goods.

- The **Mughal aristocracy** engaged in more ostentatious expenditure, resulting in increased sponsorship of painting, literary forms, textiles, and architecture, particularly during Shah Jahan's rule.

- After **Aurangzeb's death** in 1707, the empire began to crumble.

1.2 Challenges before the Mughals

- In the **absence of internal strength,** the Mughals were unable to mount a strong defence against external threats, which included **multiple invasions** from the north-west.

- The n**orthern frontiers** were disregarded by the later Mughals, and little effort was invested to preserve them.

- The Persian ruler **Nadir Shah** invaded India in 1738–39, conquering Lahore and defeating the Mughal army at Karnal on February 13, 1739.

- Muhammad Shah was later apprehended, and Delhi was plundered and destroyed.

- Apart from the **Peacock Throne** and the **Kohinoor diamond,** an estimated seventy crore rupees were gathered from the government treasury and the safes of the wealthy nobility.

- **Nadir Shah** took control of the strategically **crucial Mughal area** west of the Indus, including Kabul.

- As a result, India became exposed to assaults from the north-west once more.

- Between 1748 and 1767, **Ahmad Shah Abdali** (or Ahmad Shah Durrani), who was elected as **Nadir Shah's successor** following the latter's death in 1747, invaded India many times.

- He relentlessly pursued the **Mughals**, who attempted to purchase peace in 1751–52 by giving Punjab to him. In 1757, Abdali seized Delhi and left an Afghan caretaker to keep an eye on the Mughal emperor.

- Before his return, **Abdali** had recognised Alamgir II as Mughal emperor and the Rohilla commander**, Najib-ud-Daula,** as the empire's Mir Bakhshi.

1.3 Later Mughals

- The era from 1707 CE and 1761 CE saw the return of regional identities and revealed a sad state of affairs for the once-mighty Mughals.

- The Mughal court became a hotbed of feuds amongst nobility.

- In c. 1739 CE, Nadir Shah imprisoned the Mughal Emperor and ravaged Delhi, exposing the empire's fragility.

- **Aurangzeb was the Mughal Empire's** final great monarch.

- Later Mughals were the **Mughal rulers** who succeeded him.

- Despite the fact that the Mughals were still the undisputed rulers of the region, their influence was diminishing, especially following the death of **Aurangazeb.**

1.4 Bahadur shah (ruled 1707–12)

- At the age of 63, **Muazzam** ascended the throne and acquired the title of Bahadur Shah.

- He had a liberal approach toward the nobles, granting them their preferred domains and promoting them.

- As a result, the state's finances have deteriorated. The true authority, according to legend, was held by the wazir**, Zulfiqar Khan.**

- He was accommodating of Hindus, however he never eliminated the jizya tax.

- The **independence of Marwar** was recognised during his rule.

- The settlement, however, was unable to return these nations to their former status as completely devoted combatants for the Mughal cause.

- He had a half-hearted reconciliation programme with the Marathas as well. He didn't see **Shahu** (whom he freed) as the legitimate Maratha monarch.

- He gave **Maratha the Deccan sardeshmukhi,** but not the Chauth, and hence could not completely please them.

- As a result, the **Marathas continued** to battle one other as well as the Mughals.

- In his war against the Sikhs, he was assisted by Jat chief Charuman and Bundella chief Chattrasal.

- **Guru Gobind Singh,** the eleventh Sikh Guru, was given **high mansab.**

- He did, however, have to deal with **Banda Bahadur's insurrection,** and it was during his war against Banda Bahadur that he died (in c. 1712 CE).

- Mughal historians such as **Khafi Khan** gave him the title **"Shah-i-Bekhabar."**

1.5 Jahandar Shah (ruled 1712–13)

- Following Bahadur Shah's death, a **new type of politics** evolved in the Mughals' political arena, in which nobles were 'king makers,' and monarchs were only **'puppets'** in their hands.

- **Jahandar Shah** was Mughal India's first puppet king. **Zulfiqar Khan** (wazir), who had the executive reins in his hands, backed him up.

- **Zulfiqar Khan** developed cordial relationships with the Marathas, Rajputs, and various Hindu chieftains.

- **He abolished jizya a**nd bestowed the titles of **"Maharaja"** and **"Mirza Raja Sawai"** on Ajit Singh (Marwar) and Jai Singh of Amber, respectively.

- **Shahu** was also given the Deccan Chauth and Sardeshmukhi by him. However, **Banda Bahadur** and the Sikhs were subjected to the same oppressive policies as before.
- **Zulfiqar** also attempted to improve the empire's financial status by scrutinising rash jagir and office allocations. He also required mansabdars to maintain the official army quota.
- However, he is remembered for instituting the heinous practice of **Ijarah** (revenue farming).
- The court was ruled by **Jahandar Shah's** favourite woman, **Lal Kanwar** (a dancing girl).

1.6 Farruk Siyar (ruled 1713–1719)

- In 1713 CE, **Farrukh Siyar defeated** his brother Jahandar Shah in Agra.
- With the help of the **Sayyid brothers (kingmakers)** - Saiyyad Abdullah Khan (Wazir) and Hussain Ali Khan (Mir Bakshi) – he came to the throne .
- The **Sayyid brothers** assassinated **Zulfiqar Khan** and ascended to positions of power.
- The **Sayyid brothers** attempted to make peace with the **Marathas, Jats, and Rajputs,** as well as crushing the Sikh rebellion. Banda Bahadur, the Sikh leader, was assassinated during this period.
- Farrukh Siyar granted the **East India Company** several commercial rights and waived customs charges for its trade via Bengal in 1717 CE.
- **Jizya** was abolished altogether by the Sayyid brothers, as was pilgrimage tax in a number of areas.
- **Farukh Siyar** and the **Sayyid brothers** drifted apart as a result of the Sayyid brothers' overwhelming authority. The emperor planned against the brothers three times but was unable to defeat them.
- The **Sayyid brothers** formed an alliance with **Balaji Vishwanath** (the Maratha emperor) in 1719 CE, and with the support of Maratha forces, assassinated **Farrukh Siyar.**

1.7 Rafi-us-Darajat (ruled 1719)

- **Rafi-us-Darajat** was crowned by the **Sayyid brothers. In** fact, the Sayyid brothers elevated three young princes to the throne in less than eight months.
- He died four months later as a result of his excessive drinking.
- **Nikusiyar,** Aurangzeb's grandson, revolted during his reign and seized the throne of Agra with the help of Mitrasen (a Nagar Brahmin).

1.8 Rafi-us-Daula (ruled 1719)

- **Nikusiyar** was imprisoned at Agra by Hussain Ali Khan (the Saiyyad brother).
- **Rafi-us- Shah Jahan II** was the title given to **Daula.**
- He was only in power for a brief time before succumbing to consumption of **opium (Tuberculosis).**

1.9 Muhammad Shah (ruled 1719–48)

- **Jahan Shah** has a brother who loved to dance and was an accomplished Kathak dancer.
- With the support of **Nizam-ul-Mulk, Chin Qilich Khan,** and his father's cousin **Muhammad Amin Khan**, he successfully removed the Saiyyad brothers in 1720.
- Under the title of Itmad-ud-Daula, he named Muhammad Amir Khan, the man who assassinated Hussain Ali Khan, as wazir.
- During his reign, however, autonomous nations emerged: **Nizam-ul-Mulk** ruled the Deccan, **Saadat Khan** ruled Awadh, and Murshid Quli Khan ruled Bihar, Bengal, and Orissa.
- In 1739 CE, **Nadir Shah** invaded India, **Battle of Karnal,** imprisoned the Mughal emperor, and devastated Delhi, exposing the Mughal empire's fragility.

1.10 Ahamad shah (ruled 1748–1754)

- Ahmad Shah was an inept emperor who delegated state matters to Udham Bai, the **'Queen Mother.'**
- **Udham Bai,** given the title Qibla-i-Alam, was a poor-intellectual lady who governed with the assistance of her paramour, Javid Khan (a infamous eunuch).
- **Ahmad Shah Abdali** (ruler of Afghanistan) repeatedly assaulted Delhi, and Punjab, along with Multan, were given to him.
- Malwa and Bundelkhand were taken over by the Marathas.
- Imad-ul-Mulk, his wazir, blinded him and imprisoned him in **Salimgarh.**

1.11 Alamgir II (ruled 1754–59)

- **Alamgir II** was **Emperor Jahandar Shah's son**. In January 1757, the Iranian invader **Ahmed Shah Abdali** arrived in Delhi.
- In June 1757, under his rule, the **Battle of Plassey** was fought. Alamgir II was murdered.

- He was **Jahandar Shah's** second son, and he was elevated to the throne by Imad-ul-Mulk when he toppled **Ahmad Shah.**
- **Ahmad Shah Abdali's** recurrent invasions had to be faced. Imad-ul-Mulk, his wazir, also assassinated him.

1.12 Shah Jahan III (ruled 1759–60)

- Also known as M**uhiul-millat,** he ascended to the throne as a consequence of Delhi intrigues, but was ousted later by Maratha interference.
- During his reign, Mughal authority was so diminished that a Persian proverb arose: "**Sultanat-e-Shah Alam, Az Dili ta Palam,"** which means "The kingdom of Shah Alam is from Delhi to Palam," Palam being a Delhi suburb.

1.13 Shah Alam II (ruled 1760-1788; 1788-806)

- During his reign, two significant conflicts occurred: the **Third Battle of Panipat (1761) and the Battle of Buxar (1762).**
- He escaped to **Awadh (1761 – 1764 CE)** as a result of his struggle with the wazir. When the Marathas re-established their authority over Delhi and welcomed him to the capital, he returned.
- According to the stipulations of the **Treaty of Allahabad** (August 1765), he was brought under the protection of the **East India Company** and stayed in Allahabad in 1765.
- He also issued a farman awarding the **Company the Diwani** (right to collect income) of **Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa in perpetuity.**
- The **Marathas transported** him to Delhi in 1772, where he remained until 1803. After the defeat of **Daulat Rao Scindia** by the English in 1803, he embraced the English's protection once more.
- Following it, the **Mughal emperor b**ecame an English pensioner.

1.14 Akbar Shah II (ruled 1806–37)

- **Rammohan Roy** was given the title of **'Raja'** by him.
- During his reign, in 1835, the **East India Company** stopped referring to itself as a subject of the **Mughal empero**r and stopped striking coinage in his honour.
- He was a brilliant poet who is credited with establishing the Hindu-Muslim unification festival Phool Walon Ki Sair.

1.15 Bahadur Shah II (ruled 1837–57)

- **Bahadur Shah II,** often known as Bahadur Shah Zafar (his surname was Zafar), was the final Mughal emperor.

- The **Revolt of 1857** had failed in its effort to crown him Emperor of India.
- He was apprehended by the English and sent to Rangoon, where he died in 1862.
- The **Mughal Empire** officially ended on November 1, 1858, with Queen Victoria's pronouncement.

1.16 Cause of Decline

Religious Policies of Aurangzeb

- **Aurangzeb's** religious and Deccan policies contributed to the empire's downfall.
- The endeavour to extend the **Mughal government over Golconda,** Bijapur, and Karnataka strained the Mughal administration to its limits.
- It also left **Mughal lines of communication** vulnerable to Maratha raids, making it difficult for **Mughal nobility** in the area to collect their dues from the jagirs entrusted to them and forcing them to make secret pacts with the Marathas.
- His failure to respect the sensitivities of his **non-Muslim subject**s on numerous occasions, his enunciation of a policy that resulted in the destruction of many temples and the re-imposition of **jizya.**
- This **alienated the Hindus** and strengthened the hands of those who were opposed to the Mughal Empire for political or other reasons, alienated the Hindus and strengthened the hands of those who were opposed to the **Mughal Empire** for political or other reasons.
- **Aurangzeb's successors** were weak and unable to properly retain the administration.

Influence of Nobles

- The majority of them were pawns in the hands of strong nobility. The succession struggle that afflicted **Delhi from 1707 to 1719 CE** eventually damaged the empire.
- Following **Aurangzeb's death**, the nobles took a great deal of authority, and the path of politics and governmental activity was led by their own interests.
- The **Turanis, Iranis, Afghans**, and **Indian-born Muslims** comprised the **Mughal court's** four aristocratic groups.
- These factions were continuously fighting for more power, jagirs, and high posts, which finally contributed to the empire's demise.
- The formation of several autonomous nations reduced tax resources, and the ongoing battles further i**mpoverished the treasury.**

Ineffective army

- In addition, the foreign invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali were costly to the royal budget.
- After losing multiple wars, the **Mughal army** progressively grew **ineffective and unmotivated.**
- The Mughals' disregard of **naval power** also paid them dearly.
- The entry of **British and other European colonial powers** in India was the final nail in the coffin of the Mughal empire's chances of survival.
- **Western colonial powers** were militarily and financially superior, as well as politically aware of Indian realities.

Rise of Regional Aspirations

- Regional groups like the **Jats, Sikhs, and Marathas** revolted under Aurangzeb's rule.
- They challenged the **Mughal state's authority** in order to establish their own kingdoms.
- They did not succeed, but they had an impact on the future course of political events in their respective regions.
- Their constant fight for political dominance against the **later mughals, damaged** the **empire significantly.**
- By seeking to control the **Rajputs, Aurangzeb, and later Bahadur Shah I,** incited them to fight the Mughals.
- **Later Mughals** attempted to pursue a policy of reconciliation with the Rajputs, but it was too late: the **Rajputs no longer** trusted the Mughals enough to cooperate with them for the sake of the empire.
- The **Marathas** were also proving to be a tough foe.
- Their goal was first restricted to reclaiming control of the Maharashtra area, but it quickly expanded to encompass obtaining legal permission from the Mughal emperor to collect sardeshmukhi and chauth across India.
- They pushed northward and, by 1740, had established control over the provinces o**f Gujarat, Malwa,** and Bundelkhand.
- The **Rajput battle** against the empire, as well as the Marathas' rising ambition and might, harmed the Mughal might.

Economic and Administrative Problems

- The number of amirs and their ranks, or mansabs, had grown dramatically over time, and there was little territory remaining to be dispersed among them as **jagirs.**

- **Aurangzeb** attempted to alleviate the acute shortage of **jagirs or bejagiri** by demonstrating increased revenue from the jagirs on record.

- However, this was a short-sighted solution since the amirs attempted to retrieve the reported revenue from their **jagirs** by putting pressure on the peasantry.

- As a result, both the amirs and the peasants were at odds.

- Then there were the battles, the emperors' and amirs' lavish lives, and the loss in **khalisa land,** all of which weighed heavily on the state.

- As a result, the state's expenditure much outweighed its revenue.

- Furthermore, there was no big scientific or technical advancement that may have helped a stagnant economy.

- Even when **European traders** made advances along with coastal India, the once-thriving commerce did not enhance the empire's coffers.

- Following **Aurangzeb's death**, these economic and administrative issues only grew worse.

- When the emperors were weak and inept, the empire had become too large to be successfully controlled by a centralised administration.

1.17 Jagirdari Crisis

- The nobility consisted of those who were either allotted huge jagirs and mansabs or appointed subahdars of **Mughal subas** and tasked with preserving these.

- Many **Rajput kings,** subahdars, and mansabdars belonged to this class.

- **Mughal reign** has been referred to as **"the rule of the aristocracy"** because nobility played an important part in empire administration.

- Although **Akbar** had supplied them with a well-knit organisation, there remained division among the nobles based on **religion, country, and tribe**, and each category created its own group.

- **Mutual competition**, envy, and power struggles among the numerous parties during the rule of the **later Mughals (**in the lack of a strong central leadership) not only lowered the emperor's reputation but also led to the empire's demise.

1.18 Rise of Regional States

- The states that arose as a result of the Mughal Empire's fall may be divided into three basic categories:
  — Successor States
  — Independent Kingdoms
  — The New States

- **Successor States -** These were the Mughal provinces that became states after seceding from the empire.

- Though they did not dispute the **Mughal ruler's sovereignty**, their governors' installation of essentially independent and hereditary power demonstrated the rise of autonomous polity in these provinces. Awadh, Bengal, and Hyderabad are a few instances.

- **Independent Kingdoms -** These nations arose mostly as a result of the destabilisation of Mughal sovereignty over the provinces, with Mysore and the Rajput states serving as examples.

- **The New States -** These were the states established by rebels against the Mughal empire, such as the Maratha, Sikh, and Jat states.

1.19 Conclusion

After Aurangzeb's death in c. 1707 CE, the Mughal Empire began to fall apart quickly. This year is usually used to distinguish the reign of the Great Mughals from the reign of the smaller Mughals, commonly known as the Later Mughals. Social, economic, political, and institutional issues all had a role in the collapse of the Mughal Empire. By 1813, the British government had stripped the East India Company of its monopolistic authority, and the company began to operate on behalf of the government. The Indian Rebellion took place in 1857, prompting the British colonial administration to exile the last monarch, Bahadur Shah II, and seize control of the Indian subcontinent.

2. Bahadur Shah (1707-1712)

Bahadur Shah, also known as **Muhammad Mu'azzam and Shah Alam,** was India's eighth **Mughal emperor,** reigning from 1707 until 1712. He plotted to depose his father, the **sixth Mughal emperor**, and take to the throne while he was young. At the age of 63, Muazzam ascended the throne and acquired the title of Bahadur Shah. This article will explain to you about the **Bahadur Shah (1707-1712)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

2.1 Early Life

- Bahadur Shah was born on October 14, 1643, at Burhanpur, as Mu'azzam, the third son of Aurangzeb, the sixth Mughal emperor, and his wife Nawab Bai.

- **Mu'azzam was appointed vizier of Lahore** from 1653 until 1659 under the reign of Shah Jahan. In 1663, **Mu'azzam succeeded Shaista Kha**n as administrator of Deccan.

- **Shivaji** stormed the fringes of Mughal Deccan capital Aurangabad, but Mu'azzam did little to stop him.

- Enraged, Aurangzeb dispatched his most capable commander, **Raja Jai Singh**, to fight Shivaji, and it was here that the momentous **Treaty of Purandar** was signed.

- After **Raja Jai Singh I** defeated **Shivaji at Purandar** in May 1667, Mu'azzam was granted command of the Deccan and was aided by Maharaja Jaswant Singh.

- Mu'azzam organised an insurgency in 1670 to depose Aurangzeb and make himself Mughal emperor.

- However, **Mu'azzam** nearly revolted again in 1680, this time over **Aurangzeb's** scorched earth tactics in suppressing **Rajput rebellions.**

- Aurangzeb gently discouraged Mu'azzam once again and kept a closer eye on him.

2.2 Reign

- **Aurangzeb died in 1707**, without choosing a crown prince, when **Mu'azzam** was governor of Kabul and his younger half-brothers (**Muhammad Kam Bakhsh** and **Muhammad Azam Shah**) were administrators of the Deccan and Gujarat, respectively.

- All three sons were determined to obtain the throne, and **Kam Bakhsh** began minting coins in his honor.

- Azam planned to march to Agra and declare himself the new ruler, but he was defeated by Mu'azzam in the **Battle of Jajau** in June 1707. In the struggle, Azam and his son, Ali Tabar, were slain.

- At the age of 63, Muazzam ascended the throne and acquired the title of **Bahadur Shah.**

- He had a liberal approach toward the nobles, granting them their preferred domains and promoting them.

- As a result, the state's finances have deteriorated. The true authority, according to legend, was held by the wazir, **Zulfiqar Khan.**

- He was accommodating of Hindus, however he never eliminated the **jizya tax.**

- The independence of **Marwar and Mewar** was recognized during his rule.

- The settlement, however, was unable to return these nations to their former status as completely devoted combatants for the Mughal cause.

- He had a **half-hearted r**econciliation programme with the Marathas as well. He didn't see **Shahu** (whom he freed) as the **legitimate Maratha ruler**.

- He gave Maratha the Deccan **sardeshmukhi**, but not the **Chauth,** and hence could not completely please them.

- As a result, the Marathas continued to battle one other as well as the Mughals.

- Bahadur Shah attempted to make peace with the Marathas, who had been the biggest danger to **Mughal power under Aurangzeb,** who had held Shahu, Shivaji's grandson, as a captive at his court.

- **Bahadur Shah** wanted to appease the Marathas by putting Shahu as Raja of Satara in the heart of the Maratha land.

- Shahu was a pleasant courtier who appeared to serve the Great Mughal well, but he was nominated as peshwa of Pune the cunning **Chitpavan Brahman Balaji Vishvanath**, whose son **Baji Rao** rose to become the biggest threat to Mughal control.

- In his war against the Sikhs, he was assisted by Jat chief **Charuman and Bundella chief Chattrasal.**

- **Guru Gobind Singh**, the eleventh Sikh Guru, was given high mansab.

- He did, however, have to deal with Banda Bahadur's insurrection, and it was during his war against **Banda Bahadur** that he died (in 1712 CE).

- Mughal historians such as Khafi Khan gave him the title **"Shah-i-Bekhabar."**

- His son **Jahandar Shah** succeeded him, and his reign was much less successful than his father's.

- Nonetheless, Mughal control persisted.

- Rather, the **Mughal empire** became hollow, with numerous groups utilising it for their own ends, and Bahadur Shah's successors became mere puppets in the political game of **eighteenth-century India.**

2.3 Sikh Rebellion

- **Bahadur Shah** left the Deccan for the north after learning of the insurrection launched by **Banda Bahadur** in Punjab, just a year after **Guru Gobind Singh's** death.

- The Sikhs proceeded slowly towards Delhi, where they joined the **sarkar of Hissar** and began preparing for a military operation.

- In November 1709, they assaulted Samana and beat the faujdar in the Battle of Samana while plundering the town.

- The Sikhs attempted to drive the **Mughals out of Jalandhar and Amritsar.** They demanded that **Shamas Khan,** the Faujdar of Jalandhar, implement reforms and hand over the money.

- **Shamas** feigned to submit before assaulting them. In the guise of religion, he appealed to Muslims and vowed war against the Sikhs.

- **Sikhs** exploited their newfound authority to depose Mughal officials and replace them with Sikhs.

- Banda created a **mint in Lohgarh**, where he founded his capital.

- He dismantled the **mughal Zamindari system** and granted growers ownership of their own land.

2.4 Coinage of Bahadur Shah

- He issued **gold, silver, and copper coins**, however, his predecessors' coinage was also used to pay government officials and in commerce.

- Copper coins from **Aurangzeb's reign** were re-minted with his name.

- Unlike the previous Mughal emperors, his coins did not have his name in a couplet; poet **Danishmand Khan** wrote two lines for the coins, but they were rejected.

2.5 Conclusion

His rule lasted only 5 years, from 1712 to 1713, and during that time he attempted to overthrow his father's severe edicts. He was unable to abolish Jizya, but he did encourage music, allowing people to hear the tunes once more. He attempted to make peace with the Sikhs and the Marathas. He died in 1712 while overseeing the repairs at Lahore's Shalimar Gardens. Jahandar Shah, his son, trailed him.

3. Jahandar Shah (1712-1713)

Jahandar Shah, also known as **Mirza Muhammad Mu'izz-ud-Di**, was a Mughal Emperor who reigned from 1712 to 1713. **Shahanshah-i-Ghazi Abu'l Fath Mu'izz-ud-Din Muhammad Jahandar Shah Sahib-i-Qiran Padshah-i-Jahan** was his complete title. Prince Jahandar Shah was the son of **Emperor Bahadur Shah I** and was born in Deccan Subah. Nizam Bai, the daughter of Fatehyawar Jang, a lord from Hyderabad, was his mother. This article will explain to you about **Jahandar Shah (1712-1713)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

3.1 Early Life

- Prince **Jahandar Shah** was the son of Emperor **Bahadur Shah I** and was born in Deccan Subah.

- **Nizam Bai,** the daughter of Fatehyawar Jang, a king from Hyderabad, was his mother.

- In 1671, his grandfather, **Aurangzeb, named Jahandar Shah** as **Vizier of Balkh**. When their grandpa died on February 27, 1712, he and his brother, Azim-ush-Shan, crowned themselves emperors and fought for control of the throne.

- After **Azim-us-Shan** was assassinated on March 17, 1712, Jahandar Shah reigned for another eleven months.

- **Jahandar Shah** traveled over the Indian Ocean and was a **successful trader** before succeeding to the throne.

- He was also given the title of **Sindh Subedar.**

- He had three sons, one of which being **Aziz-ud-Din,** the Mughal emperor from 1754 to 1759.

3.2 Reign

- After **Bahadur Shah's death**, a new type of politics evolved in the Mughals' political arena, in which nobles were **'king makers,'** and rulers were only 'puppets' in their hands.

- **Jahandar Shah** was Mughal India's first puppet king. **Zulfiqar Khan (wazir)**, who had the executive reins in his hands, backed him up.

- **Zulfiqar Khan** developed cordial relationships with the Marathas, Rajputs, and various Hindu chieftains.

- He **abolished jizya** and bestowed the titles of **"Maharaja ''** and **"Mirza Raja Sawai"** on **Ajit Singhof Marwar** and **Jai Singh of Amber**, respectively.

- **Shahu** was also given the **Deccan Chauth and Sardeshmukh**i by him.
- However, **Banda Bahadur** and the **Sikhs** were subjected to the same oppressive policies as before.
- Zulfiqar also attempted to improve the empire's financial status by scrutinizing **rash jagir** and **office allocations**.
- He also required **mansabdars** to maintain the official army quota.
- However, he is remembered for instituting the heinous practice of **Ijarah (revenue farming).**
- Jahandar Shah lived a **hedonistic lifestyle,** and his court was frequently enlivened by dancing and other forms of entertainment.
- **Lal Kunwar,** his favorite wife, was a lowly dancing girl until she was elevated to the role of Queen Consort.
- They stunned the **Mughal Empire**, and even Aurangzeb's surviving daughter, **Zeenat-un-Nissa,** resisted them.
- The third Nawab of the Carnatic, **Muhammed Saadatullah Khan I**, denied his authority and assassinated **De Singh of Orchha**, largely because the Nawab believed he was the righteous commander of the **Gingee Fort.**
- Khan launched a smear campaign against **Jahandar Shah,** calling him a usurper on the Mughal throne.
- Jahandar Shah sent presents to the **Ottoman Sultan Ahmad III** to bolster his power.
- On 10 January 1713, **Jahandar Shah** was defeated in combat at **Agra by Farrukhsiyar,** his nephew and the second son of Azim-ush-Shan, with the help of the **Sayyid Brothers.**
- He went to Delhi, where he was apprehended and given to the new Emperor, who imprisoned him and Lal Kunwar.
- He was imprisoned for a month until professional stranglers were dispatched to murder him on February 11, 1713.

3.3 Coinage of Jahandar Shah

- **Jahandar Shah** reinstated **couplets and struck gold**, **silver, and copper coins.** Two couplets i.e. **Abu al-Fateh and Sahab Qiran** were utilized.
- Copper coins were produced in two weight standards: 20 g and 14 g.
- Jahandar Shah issued the **gold mohur,** which was struck in **Mustaqir ul-Mulk,** or the **'Abode of the Kingdom'.**

3.4 Ijarah system

- The **Ijarah system** entailed awarding a formed task in exchange for a lump-sum payment to the highest bidder.

- During the **Mughal era,** it was commonly practiced. **Jahadar Shah** established the **Ijarah system,** which was a **revenue farming scheme (**1712 to 1713).

- In the 18th century, the **ijarah technique** of income assessment and collection became prevalent.

- When peasants **lacked the resources** to cultivate their land or when cultivation was rendered impossible due to a natural disaster, the fields were farmed out on ijarah to a third party known as revenue farmers.

- It was **illegal for tax officials** or their relatives to acquire land on ijarah.

- It was expected that revenue farmers would not take more than the stipulated land revenue from peasants.

- The **revenue farmer paid** the government nine-tenths of the entire amount collected and kept the rest as collection costs.

3.5 Conclusion

Jahandar Shah, the son of Bahadur Shah I, reigned for just a short time. Following their father's death on February 27, 1712, he and his brother Azim-ush-Shan declared themselves emperors and engaged in a succession battle. The emperor, who enjoyed luxury and pleasure, spent most of his time with Lal Kanwar, who had significant power over him.

4. Mohammad Shah
(1719-1748)

Nasir-ud-Din Muammad Shah, or **Muammad Shah,** was the twelfth Mughal emperor, reigning from 1719 until 1748. He was the son of **Khujista Akhtar,** Bahadur Shah I's fourth son. At the age of 17, he gained the kingdom with the support of the Sayyid brothers. This article will explain to you about **Mohammad Shah (1719-1748)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

4.1 Early life

- **Bahadur Shah I's** fourth son, **Khujista Akhtar,** was his father.
- With the help of the **Sayyid brothers,** he was able to acquire control of the kingdom at the a**ge of 17.**
- With the aid of Asaf Jah I, he was able to get rid of them afterwards.
- In 1720, **Syed Hussain Ali Khan** was assassinated in **Fatehpur Sikri,** and in 1722, **Syed Hassan Ali Khan Barha** was poisoned to death.
- Muhammad Shah was a huge supporter of the arts, particularly musical, artistic, and administrative advancements.
- **Sada Rangila** was his pen name, and he was known as **"Muhammad Shah Rangila,"** as well as **"Bahadur Shah Rangila,"** after his grandfather Bahadur Shah I.
- **Muhammad Shah's reign** was distinguished by the Mughal Empire's swift and permanent fall, notwithstanding his patronage of the arts.
- The **Mughal Empire** was already in decline, but Nader Shah of Persia's invasion and subsequent devastation of Delhi, the **Mughal capital,** hastened the process.
- The **Mughals themselves,** as well as other outsiders, notably the British, were astonished and embarrassed by the happenings.

4.2 Reign

- **Muhammad Shah** was enthroned at the Red Fort on September 29, 1719, with the title **Abu Al-Fatah Nasir-ud-Din Roshan Akhtar Muhammad Shah**.
- His mother was granted a monthly budget of 15,000 rupees for her necessities, but the **Sayyid Brothers** maintained a close eye on the young ruler.
- With the support of **Nizam-ul-Mulk, Chin Qilich Khan,** and his

father's cousin **Muhammad Amin Khan**, he successfully removed the **Saiyyad brothers in 1720.**

- Under the title of **Itmad-ud-Daula**, he named **Muhammad Amir Khan,** the man who assassinated **Hussain Ali Khan, as wazir.**

- During this time, the **Mughal-Maratha Wars** (1728–1763) would wreak untold havoc on the people of the ill-managed Mughal Empire.

- Despite efforts by the **Nawab of Awadh Saadat Ali Khan** and the Mughal **Subedar in Bangalore, Dilawar Khan** (r.1726–1756), to quell rebellions in 1724, the Malabar Coast became a well-protected haven.

- During his reign, however, autonomous nations emerged: Nizam-ul-Mulk ruled the Deccan, Saadat Khan rule**d Awadh, and Murshid Quli Khan ruled Bihar**, **Bengal, and Orissa.**

- In 1739 CE, **Nadir Shah invaded India**, imprisoned the Mughal emperor, and devastated Delhi, exposing the Mughal empire's fragility.

- Following **Nader Shah's invasion,** Persia's arch foe, the **Ottoman Empire**, swiftly seized the hole left at their Eastern frontiers, since practically all Persian forces were engaged in the Mughal Empire.

- During this time, Mughal Emperor **Muhammad Shah** kept a close eye on the Ottomans' movements and worked closely with Ottoman envoy **Haji Yusuf Agha** until his death in 1748, following the Mughal Army's victory in the Battle of Manupur (1748) against yet another adversary (Ahmad Shah Durrani)

- Afghanistan's **Ahmad Shah Durrani** invaded the Mughal Empire in 1748.

- Following Shahnawaz Khan's loss in Lahore, heir apparent **Ahmad Shah Bahadur,** Grand Vizier **Qamaruddin Khan** and his son Moin-ul-Mulk, popularly known as **Mir Mannu,** Intizam-ud-Daula, and Safdarjung were dispatched with 75,000 soldiers.

- Durrani's 12,000 soldiers were beaten at the **Battle of Manupur (1748),** and he was forced to retire.

- This event was widely celebrated across the Mughal Empire.

- The Mughal Army's victory in the **Battle of Manupur (1748)** came at a high cost, with many soldiers dying in battle.

- On April 26, 1748, he died of sadness, and his burial was attended by visiting Imams from Mecca.

- The invasion of **Nader Shah** devastated what remained of the **Mughal Empire,** bringing it to an end.

- The **Mughals** quickly crumbled after the invasion. Following this assault, the Mughal Army's weaknesses were exposed.

- The **Nawabs were evidently** unable to relieve their conquered capital of Delhi, which served as their seat of power.
- Rebellions and **treachery** were prevalent once the Mughals were utterly robbed of their wealth.

4.3 Contributions

- **Qawwali** was reintroduced into the **Mughal imperial** court during Muhammad Shah's reign, and it swiftly spread throughout South Asia.
- **Muhammad Shah** is also credited with establishing Islamic educational institutes such as **Maktabs.**
- During his rule, the **Quran** was translated into basic Persian and Urdu for the first time.
- During his reign, the **Sherwani** supplanted the traditional **Turkic attire** that had been worn by the elite Mughal nobles as Mughals originated from **Samarqand.**
- Mohammad Shah was a patron of the arts, nearly to the exclusion of administrative goals, allowing for the collapse of government.
- While **Mughal political authority** declined during his reign, the Emperor promoted the arts by engaging skilled artists like **Nidha Mal and Chitarman,** whose vibrant paintings portray scenes of royal life including Holi festivals, hunting, and hawking.
- **Naimat Khan**, also known as **Sadarang,** and his nephew Firoz Khan were musicians in the **Mughal court** at the period, and their compositions popularized the Khyal musical genre.
- **Khyal** was created for Naimat Khan's followers, although he never performed it.
- At the court of Muhammad Shah, an important component of **Indian classical music developed,** rose, and acquired royal support.
- Between the years 1727 and 1735, **Jai Singh II of Amber** created a notable scientific work known as the **Zij-i Muhammad Shahi,** which comprised of 400 pages, during the reign of Muhammad Shah.

4.4 Conclusion

Mohammad Shah Rangila was able to hold the reign for over 29 years, in part because the Sayyid Brothers were deposed first. During his reign, Nadir Shah stormed and devastated Delhi, as well as seizing the Peacock Throne. The Mughal Empire's fall was hastened by Nadir Shah's invasion. The states of Hyderabad, Bengal, and Awadh were created as separate kingdoms under his reign.

5. Ahmad Shah (1748-1754)

The fourteenth **Mughal Emperor, Ahmad Shah or Ahmad Shah Bahadur,** also known as **Mirza Ahmad Shah** or **Mujahid-ud-Din Ahmad Shah Ghazi**, was born to Emperor Muhammad Shah. At the age of 22, he succeeded his father to the kingdom in 1748. The Mughal Empire was crumbling when **Ahmed Shah Bahadur** (1748–1754) came to power. This article will explain to you about **Ahmad Shah (1748-1754)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

5.1 Early Life

- Mughal Emperor **Muhammad Shah** and his wife **Qudsia Begum** had Prince Ahmad in 1725.

- The collapse of the **Mughal Empire** began with decentralisation during his father's reign, the **Maratha Wars,** and the blow from **Nadir Shah's invasion.**

- He is also known to have been **illiterate and never participated in military training,** owing to his miserly father's attitude, who deprived him of necessities and used to browbeat him, never even giving him the allowance required of imperial princes.

- As a prince, he defeated **Ahmed Shah Abdali** at the **Battle of Manupur** in (c. 1748).

- As emperor for six years, **Ahmed Shah Bahadur** inherited a considerably reduced Mughal kingdom, but left all state issues to opposing groups.

- Vizier **Imad-ul-Mulk** deposed him, and he and his mother were later blinded.

5.2 Reign

- The **Battle of Manupur** had a significant influence on Ahmad Shah Bahadur's tactical prowess.

- He is reported to have established and organized the **Purbiya camel corps** after he became Emperor, notably in the years 1754–51, to resist invading Durranis and rebellious Sikhs in his empire's northwestern areas.

- **Prince Ahmad ascended** the throne on April 18, 1748, and was crowned on April 29, 1748, in the Red Fort in Delhi.

- **Abu Nasir Mujahid-ud-Din Ahmad Shah Ghazi** was his new title.

- Safdarjung, the **Nawab of Oudh,** was named Grand Vizier, Imad-

ul-Mulk was named Mir Bakshi, and Moin-ul-Mulk, the son of Qamaruddin Khan, was named Punjab Governor.

- **Javed Khan,** the Mughal court's primary servant, was awarded the rank of **Nawab Bahadur** and a 5000-strong army.

- **Javed Khan** became a successful regent with the help of the emperor's mother, who was granted an army of 50,000 men.

- The **emperor's troops,** in particular, saw **Javed Khan's** ascent to power and authority as an affront to the empire's nobility and aristocracy.

- The weak but powerful **Ahmad Shah Bahadur** kept in touch with distant vassals and Nawabs like **Chanda Sahib, Nawab of Tinnevelly,** and Muzaffar Jung through letters.

- He was given the title Nasir Jung by Muhammad Shah, and then the following Mughal Emperor **Ahmad Shah Bahadur** designated him as the Subedar of the Deccan and gave him the title **Nasir-ud-Daula by Ahmad Shah Bahadur.**

- He was assassinated by the rebel **Himmat Khan** in 1750.

- **Ahmad Shah Bahadur** was imprisoned at the Salimgarh Fort after his deposition in 1754. He stayed there for the rest of his life, dying at the age of 49 during Emperor **Shah Alam II's** reign in 1775.

- In 1788, one of his sons **Mahmud Shah Bahadur Bidar-Bakht** ruled as Shah Jahan IV for a short time.

5.3 Battle of Manupur

- On March 11, 1748, the **Mughal Empire and the Durrani Empire** fought the **Battle of Manupur.**

- **Ahmad Shah Durrani** assumed power of Persian Afghanistan after the killing of **Nader Shah,** the final Emperor of the Persian Afsharid dynasty.

- He launched operations against the weakening **Mughal Empire** in late 1747, capturing Kabul, Peshawar, and Lahore on January 18, 1748.

- By February 1748, a **Mughal force** headed by Prince **Ahmad Shah Bahadur and Qamaruddin Khan,** the Subahdar of Lahore province, had gathered and was on its way to push the **Durrani army out.**

- **Ahmad Shah** began hunting for the Mughal army on March 1, 1748, and made touch with them on March 10, 1748, outside the **hamlet of Manupur.**

- When **Qamaruddin Khan,** the Mughal leader, was killed by artillery in an early exchange of fire, his son, **Moin-ul-Mulk,** also known as Mir Mannu, took over the fight.

- Ahmad **Shah's Afghan** warriors pushed aside the **Mughal army's** left flank and looted their baggage train, but a fire that started in a seized rocket waggon spread to the **Durrani artillery storage,** burning hundreds of soldiers alive and causing **Ahmad Shah Durrani** to flee.

- The scared Mughals were unable to follow **Durrani's escape,** but Sikh bands led by **Charat Singh, Jassa Singh Ahluwalia**, and **Ala Singh** harassed them as they withdrew to Kabul.

- The first **Shah invasion was a failure,** but it provided a chance for the Sikhs to form the **Dal Khalsa, a Sikh Confederacy army,** in Amritsar in March 1748.

5.4 Conclusion

Ahmad Shah was an inept emperor who entrusted the administration of the state to Udham Bai, the 'Queen Mother.' Udham Bai, who was granted the title of Qibla-i-Alam, was a shrewd woman who controlled with the support of her lover, Javid Khan. The Mughal Empire was crumbling when Ahmed Shah Bahadur came to power. Furthermore, his administrative shortcomings eventually contributed to the rising of Imad-ul-Mulk, who usurped the throne.

6. Alamgir (1754-1759)

Alamgir II was India's **sixteenth Mughal Emperor,** reigning from June 3, 1754, until November 29, 1759. Jahandar Shah was his father. **Imad-ul-Mulk** removed Ahmad Shah Bahadur in 1754 and installed Aziz-ud-Din, the second son of Jahandar Shah, on the throne. This article will explain to you about **Alamgir (1754-17590)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

6.1 Early Life

- He was the second son of **Maaz-ud-Din,** the son of future Emperor Bahadur Shah I, and was born on June 6, 1699 at Burhanpur.

- When Alamgir II's great-grandfather Aurangzeb died in the Deccan, he was seven years old.

- Following the death of his grandfather, **Bahadur Shah I**, and the subsequent succession battle, his father, **Maaz-ud-Din,** was beaten by **Farrukhsiyar**, the new **Mughal Emperor.**

- By usurping Vizier **Imad-ul-Mulk, Aziz-ud-Din** was imprisoned in 1714 and freed in 1754.

- He saw **Aziz-ud-Din** as a fragile individual who would not oppose his authority.

- As a result, on 2 June 1754, the vizier bestowed the title **Alamgir II** to Aziz-ud-Din on his own advice, as he desired to emulate **Aurangzeb's** centralised strategy.

- **Ahmad Shah Abdali** invaded India again in 1756, capturing Delhi and plundering Mathura. Because of their alliance with **Imad-ul-Mulk,** the Marathas grew in strength and ruled over all of northern India.

6.2 Reign

- Following the rise of **Alamgir II,** the **Mughal Empire** began to re-centralize rashly, especially as numerous Nawabs sought the gratification of the **Mughal Emperor** and his coordination in their struggle to the **Maratha.**

- This was certainly disappointing news for **Imad-ul-Mulk,** who was looking to bolster his dictatorship with the unwavering backing of the Marathas.

- In June 1757, under his rule, the **Battle of Plassey** was fought.

- **Imad-ul-Mulk** recruited **Maratha mercenaries** to do his bidding, pocketed all imperial income, and starved Alamgir II's family. He also tormented Alamgir II's eldest son, **Ali Gauhar.**

- Since then, ties between **Alamgir II** and **Imad-ul-Mulk**'s administration have deteriorated to the point that the latter killed him in November 1759.

- In October 1757, the **Mughal Emperor Alamgir II**, accompanied by courtiers such as **Shah Waliullah,** nobles such as **Najib-ul-Daula,** and the imperial family, travelled to meet Ahmad Shah Durrani, whose armies fought the Marathas in warfare and threatened to overturn and execute **Imad-ul- Mulk's rule.**

- **Ahmad Shah Durrani's** relationship with the **Mughal Emperor** was further cemented when his son **Timur Shah Durrani** was chosen as Alamgir II's daughter **Zuhra Begum's** suitor.

- **Ahmad Shah Durrani** married **Hadrat Begum,** the daughter of the former Mughal Emperor Muhammad Shah, as well.

- **Ahmad Shah Durrani** withdrew to Kabul, leaving his men, headed by his son **Timur Shah Durrani,** to consolidate inside the garrisons of Lahore, where they created the Zamzama cannon with the help of Mughal metalsmiths.

- Ali Gauhar, **Alamgir II's** son, fled Delhi's persecution, and Shah Jahan III was installed on the throne.

- As a result, **Imad-ul-Mulk** devised a plan to assassinate **Mughal Emperor Alamgi**r II and his family.

- A few Mughal princes, notably Ali Gauhar, managed to flee before being assassinated.

- In November 1759, the **Mughal Emperor Alamgir II** was informed that a devout man had arrived to visit him.

- **Alamgir II,** always anxious to meet holy persons, hurried out promptly to meet him at Kotla Fateh Shah, where he was brutally stabbed by Imad-ul-assassins.

- Mulk's The death of **Mughal Emperor Alamgir II** was widely mourned across the **Mughal Empire**, particularly among Muslims.

- After the killing of **Alamgir II** in 1759, the **Peshwa under Sadashivrao Bhau** had reached the pinnacle of its short-lived authority, particularly when he proposed destroying the Mughal Empire and installing Vishwasrao on the throne in Delhi by bribing or deposing **Imad-ul-Mulk.**

6.3 Imad-ul-Mulk

- **Nizam Shahabuddin** or **Feroze Jung III Muhammad Feroz Khan Siddiqi Bayafandi,** better known by his sobriquet **Imad-ul-Mulk** and royal treason name Gaddar-ul-Mulk, was the **Mughal Empire**'s grand

vizier allied with the Maratha Empire, and was sometimes considered as the Mughal Empire's de facto ruler.

- He was the son of **Ghazi ud-Din Khan Feroze Jung II** and the grandson of **Nizam ul Mulk Asaf Jah**, the founder of the **Nizam Dynasty.**

- In 1754, he blinded and imprisoned **Emperor Ahmad Shah Bahadur**.

- Imad encouraged the Marathas to assault Delhi in 1757 in order to drive away the Afghans and **Rohillas.**

- The **Afghan Emperor, Ahmad Shah Durrani,** declared I**mad-ul-Mulk** an "apostate" the same year.

- Emperor Alamgir II was killed two years later in 1759. Later, he was dubbed the **Wazir ul-Mamalik-i-Hindustan.**

- **Imad-ul-Mulk** also plotted the assassination of young Ali Gauhar and even directed **Mir Jafar, the Nawab of Bengal,** to push as far as Patna with the intent of killing or capturing the Mughal Crown Prince.

- After the rising of **Najib-ud-Daula** and the **Mughal Army,** which finally established **Shah Alam II** as the new Mughal Emperor, Imad-ul-Mulk departed Delhi.

6.4 Conclusion

He was Jahandar Shah's second son, and after Imad-ul-Mulk ousted Ahmad Shah, he was elevated to the throne. Ahmad Shah Abdali's assaults had to be fought again. During his reign, the legendary Battle of Plassey (23 June c. 1757 CE) took place. The Battle of Plassey was essential in the British East India Company gaining control of Bengal. Imad-ul-Mulk, his wazir, assassinated him as well.

7. Shah Alam II
(1759-1806)

Shah Alam II, often known as **Ali Gohar or Ali Gauhar,** was the seventeenth Mughal Emperor and Alamgir II's son. **Shah Alam II** ascended to the throne of a collapsing Mughal empire. During his reign, his influence was so diminished that a Persian proverb arose: Sultanat-e-Shah Alam, Az Dilli ta Palam, which translates as **"The kingdom of Shah Alam is from Delhi to Palam,"** with Palam being a Delhi suburb. This article will explain to you about **Shah Alam 2 (1759-1806)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

7.1 Early Life

- On June 25, 1728, **Ali Gohar** was born to Shahzada (Prince) Aziz-ud-Din, son of the overthrown Mughal Emperor **Jahandar Shah.**

- He grew up in the **Red Fort's Salatin quarters,** with his father, in semi-captivity.

- Unlike the bulk of Mughal princes growing up in similar conditions, he is not described as having become a **decadent prince** by the time his father became emperor, and hence was automatically awarded prominent offices during his father's rule.

- Upon his father's ascension, he became the empire's **Waali al-Ahd** (Crown Prince), and his father's main agent, while practically all authority remained in the hands of the **Wazir Imad-ul-Mulk.**

- His disagreements with Amir, along with his dread for his safety, drove him to escape Delhi in 1758.

- **Shah Alam II** was regarded as the sole and true ruler, but he was unable to return to Delhi until 1772.

- When he was protected by Maratha commander **Mahadaji Shinde.** He also participated in the Battle of Buxar against the British East India Company.

7.2 Reign

- During his reign, Mughal authority was so diminished.

- He **escaped to Awadh** (1761 – 1764 CE) as a result of his struggle with the wazir.

- When the Marathas re-established their control over Delhi, he accepted their invitation to enter the city.

- **Shah Alam** faced several invasions, most of which were led by the Emir of Afghanistan, A**hmed Shah Abdali.**

- Which resulted in the **Third Battle of Panipat** between the Maratha Empire, which retained suzerainty over Mughal affairs in Delhi, and the Afghans commanded by Abdali.

- In 1760, the Marathas, **headed by Sadashivrao Bhau,** drove away Abdali's invading armies and removed **Shah Jahan III,** the puppet Mughal emperor of **Imad-ul-Mulk,** and restored **Shah Alam II** as the legitimate monarch (1760–1772).

- The **Battle of Buxar** took place in 1764 CE between forces led by Hector Munro of the **British East India Company** and the united armies of Mir Qasim (Nawab of Bengal), Shuja-ud-Daula (Nawab of Awadh), and the Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II.

- The **Treaty of Allahabad** (about 1765 CE) ended the conflict by granting the **British East India Company** Diwani rights (the right to collect land income) in Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa.

- He was the first Mughal ruler to become a pensioner of the **East India Company.**

- The **Bengal Famine of 1770** was a catastrophic disaster that marked the fall of the Mughal Empire and the beginning of chaos in the Indian Subcontinent.

- By the time the famine struck, it was evident that the **Mughal Empire** was no longer a major political force, not just in the outside globe, but also in South Asia.

- During his attempt to reclaim the **Eastern Subahs, Shah Alam II** was strongly aided by Jean Law de Lauriston and 200 Frenchmen.

- During their disputes with the **British East India Company** during the **Anglo-Mysore** Wars, **Shah Alam II** communicated with Hyder Ali and subsequently with his son Tipu Sultan, and was well aware of the British expansionist goal.

- On November 19, 1806, Shah Alam II died of natural causes.

- His burial, together with those of **Bahadur Shah I** (also known as Shah Alam I) and Akbar Shah II, is in a marble enclosure near the dargah of the 13th-century Sufi saint **Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki** at Mehrauli, Delhi.

- Shah Alam II was a poet who wrote under the pen name Aftab and published his own Diwan of poetry. Mirza Fakhir Makin directed, compiled, and gathered his poems.

- **Shah Alam** also wrote the classic book **Ajaib-ul-Qasas,** which is

regarded as one of the oldest and most important works of Urdu literature.

7.3 Conclusion

The sixteenth Mughal Emperor was Shah Alam II (also known as Ali Gauhar). In 1759, he inherited from his father Alamgir II a collapsing and very limited Mughal empire. During his reign, the Mughal Empire only stretched from Delhi to Palam, a Delhi suburb suitably named 'Sultanat-e-Shah Alam, Az Dilli ta Palam' in Persian (The Kingdom of Shah Alam is from Delhi to Palam only). Shah Alam II's fortunes were rarely prosperous throughout his lifetime.

8. Akbar II
(1806-1837)

Akbar II was India's nineteenth **Mughal emperor**, also known as **Akbar Shah II**. From 1806 to 1837, he ruled. He was Shah Alam II's second son and the father of Bahadur Shah II. The **Hindu–Muslim** unification celebration **Phool Walon Ki Sair** is ascribed to Akbar II. At Mehrauli, his burial is located near to the dargah of 13th-century Sufi saint **Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki**. This article will explain to you about **Akbar II (1806-1837)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

8.1 Early Life

- Prince **Mirza Akbar** was born on April 22, 1760, at **Mukundpur, Satna,** to **Emperor Shah Alam II** while his father was in exile.

- He was born during a period when the **Mughal emperor's power** extended practically over the subcontinent, but by the time of his ascension, this had been confined to the bounds of the **imperial capital of Shahjahanabad (Delhi).**

- Even back then, the city was directly administered by an **East India Company** Resident.

- Despite this, **Akbar II** discreetly established his power through the continued ceremonial and courtly traditions of his forefathers, and was still respected by his followers well beyond the city gates.

- Following the death of his elder brother, the prince was appointed Crown Prince with the title of **Wali Ahd Bahadur** on 2 May 1781 at the Red Fort. He was named viceroy of Delhi in 1782 and served till 1799.

- When the **Rohilla chieftain Ghulam Qadir** took Delhi in 1788, the young **Prince Mirza Akbar** was compelled to perform the nautch dance alongside other Mughal princes and princesses.

- He saw how members of the **imperial Mughal family** were humiliated and starved.

- When **Shah Jahan IV** fled, **Mirza Akbar** assumed the title of **Akbar Shah II** and remained acting emperor until January 1789, even after the restoration of his father, **Shah Alam II.**

8.2 Reign

- **Emperor Akbar II** ruled over a nominally vast realm but was really constrained to the **Red Fort in Delhi.**

- During his rule, the **cultural life** of Delhi as a whole blossomed.

- However, his treatment of East India Company officials, particularly **Lord Hastings,** to whom he refused to give an audience on terms other than subject and sovereign, although honourable to him

- Which irritated the British, who saw him as just their pensioner.

- As a result, the British lowered his nominal power to **'King of Delhi' in 1835**, and the **East India Company** stopped to operate as the Mughal Empire's simple lieutenants, as it had done from 1803 to 1835.

- Simultaneously, Persian writing was changed with **English text** on the company's coins, which no longer featured the emperor's name.

- The British urged the **Nawab of Oudh** and the **Nizam of Hyderabad t**o accept royal titles in order to reduce the Emperor's position and power even more. The Nizam did not do so out of reverence, but the Nawab of Awadh did.

- **Akbar II** is also claimed to have given the title of **Nawab to the Nawab of Tonk** and the **Nawab of Jaora.**

- Akbar II appointed the Bengali reformer **Ram Mohan Roy** to appeal against the East India Company's treatment of him, bestowing the title of Raja on him.

- The Mughal envoy to the Court of St. James, **Ram Mohan Roy**, then visited England.

- Akbar II's burial, together with those of **Bahadur Shah I** (Shah Alam I) and **Shah Alam II,** is located in Mehrauli, Delhi, near to the dargah of the 13th century Sufi saint, **Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki.**

- The Hindu–Muslim unification celebration **Phool Walon Ki Sair** was founded by Akbar II.

8.3 Phool Walon Ki Sair

- **Phool Walon Ki Sair,** which translates as "procession of the florists," is an annual ceremony held by Delhi's flower vendors.

- It is a **three-day event** that is usually celebrated in September, right after the rainy season in the Mehrauli region.

- It is seen as an example of **Delhi's composite culture,** which has aided in the city's climate of religious tolerance, and the festival is still celebrated by both Hindus and Muslims today.

- **Phool Waalon Ki Sair** dates back to 1812, during the reign of **Mughal King Akbar Shah II.**

- This **secular event begins** with a procession led by shehnai players and dancers and carrying giant flower fans, pankhas, to **Yogmaya Temple,**

the temple of **Devi Jog Maya,** and continues through Mehrauli bazar to the dargah of 13th century Sufi saint, **Khwaja Bakhtiyar Kaki.**

• During this **three-day festival,** also known as **Sair-e-Gul Faroshan,** flower dealers pray for a better flower season in the future year by presenting large **fans, pankhas, adorned** with flowers to both temples.

• The Festival was held even after the 1857 insurrection by the **British Deputy Commissioner,** who was the top government functionary in Delhi, with the assistance of certain famous residents.

• The British halted the Festival during **Mahatma Gandhi's Quit India Movement** in 1942 as part of their persecution of the movement.

8.4 Ram Mohan Roy

• **Ram Mohan Roy** was an Indian reformer who helped establish the Brahmo Sabha, the forerunner of the **Brahmo Samaj**, a social-religious reform movement in the Indian subcontinent.

• **Akbar II,** the **Mughal emperor,** bestowed the title of Raja on him.

• His influence was felt in **politics, government, education, and religion.**

• He was well-known for his attempts to end sati and child marriage. Many historians regard Roy as the "Father of the Bengal Renaissance."

• Roy established the **Atmiya Sabha** and the Unitarian Community in order to combat social problems and promote social and educational changes in India.

• He was a **fighter against superstitions,** a forerunner in **Indian education,** and a trailblazer in Bengali prose and **Indian journalism.**

• Roy saw education to be a tool for social transformation.

• In 1817, he co-founded the **Hindu College in Calcutta with David Hare.**

• Roy established the **Anglo-Hindu school** in 1822, followed four years later (1826) by the **Vedanta College,** where he pushed that his monotheistic theories be integrated with "modern, western curriculum."

• Ram Mohan Roy's contribution to contemporary Indian history was his restoration of the **Vedanta school of philosophy's pure** and ethical ideas as described in the Upanishads.

• He taught **God's oneness,** published early English translations of Vedic literature, co-formed the **Calcutta Unitarian Society,** and founded the **Brahma Samaj.**

8.5 Conclusion

Due to the general growing British influence in India via the East India Company, Akbar had little de facto control. He sent Ram Mohan Roy to Britain as an ambassador and bestowed the title of Raja upon him. During his reign, the East India Company stopped referring to itself as a subject of the Mughal Emperor and stopped minting coins in his honour in 1835. The Persian lines indicating this on the company's coins were removed.

9. Bahadur Shah II
(1837-1857)

Emperor Bahadur Shah II, often known by his poetic title **Bahadur Shah Zafar,** was the **twentieth and final Mughal Emperor** of India. He was born Mirza Abu Zafar Siraj-ud-din Muhammad. He was **Akbar II's** second son and the heir apparent to his father, who died on September 28, 1837. He was a titular **Emperor since the Mughal** Empire existed only in name, and his power was restricted to the walled city of Old Delhi **(Shahjahanabad).** This article will explain to you about **Bahadur Shah II (1837-1857)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

9.1 Early Life

- He was **Akbar II's** second son and the heir to his father, who died on September 28, 1837.

- He was a titular Emperor since the Mughal Empire existed only in name, and his power was restricted to the walled city of Old Delhi (Shahjahanabad).

- **Mirza Abu Zafar Sirajuddin Muhammad Bahadur Shah Zafar** was his full name. **Zafar** was educated in Urdu, Persian, and Arabic as a kid.

- He was also taught the **military techniques of horseback, swordsmanship,** bow and **arrow shooting**, and guns.

- He was considered to be more interested in Sufism, music, and literature than in national politics. This is one of the reasons he was not the favoured heir to the kingdom after his father's death.

- Following his father's death in 1837, he ascended to the throne as the 20th Mughal emperor.

- The original candidate for succession was **Mirza Jahangir,** but because he had a significant problem with the British, **Zafar was chosen emperor.**

- Due to the increasing influence of the British at the time, the final king of the **Mughal Dynasty** did not govern over his realm with a hard hand.

9.2 Reign

- After his father's death, Zafar was crowned in **September 1837** at **Red Fort** as **Bahadur Shah II.**

- There isn't much that can be stated about what happened during his rule.

- It was largely he who held his ceremonial darbars, poetry gatherings

with renowned Urdu poets like **Mirza Ghalib and Ustad Zauq**, ceremonial processions such as **Phoolwalo ki sair,** and wrote poetry himself.

- He is credited with the construction of certain smaller monuments, including a little **Zafar mahal** at Red Fort and some structures in **Mehrauli's Zafar Mahal**.

- The **Zafar Mahal** in Mehrauli was the final Mughal palace to be erected, and Bahadur Shah Zafar would visit there during the monsoon season.

- Overall, though, **Bahadur Shah** was never able to wield power like most of his predecessors, whose words were the order of the day. In the couplet below, Zafar expresses his views in this respect.

- **Bahadur Shah Zafar** was a well-known **Urdu poet** who wrote a lot of Urdu ghazals.

- While some of his work was lost or destroyed during the Indian Rebellion of 1857, a substantial portion of it was preserved and assembled into the **Kulliyyat-i-Zafar.**

- Several prominent Urdu intellectuals, poets, and authors have resided at his court, including **Mirza Ghalib, Daagh Dehlvi, Momin Khan Momin,** and **Mohammad Ibrahim Zauq.**

- In **mid-nineteenth-century** India, the East India Company became the dominating political and military force.

- **Hundreds of kingdoms** and principalities divided their territories beyond the company's authority.

- The corporation revered the emperor and rewarded him with a pension. The monarch granted the business the authority to collect taxes from Delhi and to keep a military presence within it.

- **Zafar** had little interest in statecraft and had no **"imperial desire."** The British deported him from Delhi during the Indian Rebellion of 1857.

- **Zafar** and his family were transferred from **Diamond Harbur** to Rangoon on December 4, 1858, and arrived on December 10, 1858.

- According to a **British account,** his visit did not thrill the other Indian people in the area.

- **Bahadur Shah Zafar** came to **Rangoon at the age of 83.** His health deteriorated worse throughout his stay.

- He had suffered paralysis in the neck region and died as a result of it on November 7, 1862. He was laid to rest in an unmarked burial.

9.3 Indian Rebellion of 1857

- The **Indian Rebellion of 1857** was a great rebellion in India between 1857 and 1858 against the authority of the **British East India Company**, which served as a sovereign power on behalf of the **British Crown.**

- Its name is contested, and it has been called the **Sepoy Mutiny, the Indian Mutiny, the Great Rebellion, the Revolt of 1857,** the Indian Insurgency, and the **First War of Independence.**

- The **Indian Rebellion of 1857** was the consequence of a series of events that transpired over time, rather than a single event.

- **Sepoy battalions** arrived at the **Mughal Court** in Delhi as the Indian Rebellion of 1857 expanded. Because of Zafar's agnostic attitude toward religion, many Indian rulers and regiments welcomed and proclaimed him Emperor of India.

- **Bahadur Shah Zafar** is well remembered for his participation in the 1857 uprising and the events that followed.

- When Indian soldiers revolted against the **East India Company** during the uprising, they moved towards Delhi.

- When they arrived in Delhi, they asked Zafar to lead them and crowned him King.

- However, as the **conflict proceeded,** the Company retook control of Delhi, the Indian warriors were crushed, and the King fled to **Humayun's Tomb.**

- He eventually surrendered and was brought to trial. Two of his sons and one of his grandchildren were slain.

- He was found guilty and sentenced to exile in Burma. On October 7, 1858, he was deported to **Rangoon, Burma,** with his wives and two boys.

- The Last **Mughal Emperor,** whose predecessors would return to the capital from campaigns in the most opulent manner imaginable, was departing the capital, thereby terminating the centuries-old **Mughal Empire.**

- The **centuries-old Mughal empire** came to an end with his exile. The crown of Britain took over the government of India.

- **Zafar** was more than just the final **Mughal Emperor.** In addition, he was a significant figure in **India's First War of Independence.**

9.4   As a Poet

- **Many of his ghazals** have been performed by well-known vocalists such as Jagjit Singh and Mehdi Hassan.

- **Ghulam Ali** During the 150th anniversary of the 1857 War, **Jagjit Singh** played one of Zafar's renowned ghazals, 'Lagta Nahin Hai Dil Mera,' in Parliament in 2007.

- The ghazal expresses **Zafars'** anguish as he misses his motherland while living in exile in Burma.

- In one of the lines, he laments his bad situation of being unable to obtain a few yards of ground in his country to be buried.

- Aside from the tombs of several **Mughal Emperors,** there is an empty royal burial for the **Poet King,** who died in exile kilometres away, in the ruins of Zafar Mahal.

9.5 Religious Beliefs

- **Bahadur Shah Zafar** was a practising Sufi. He was known as a Sufi Pir and would take murids or students.

- As a poet, **Zafar absorbed** the most esoteric mystical Sufi teachings.

- He also believed in the mystical and superstitious aspects of **Orthodox Sufism.**

- He, like many of his followers, felt that his status as both a Sufi pir and an emperor bestowed spiritual abilities on him.

- **Zafar** openly said in one of his poetry that **Hinduism and Islam** had the same spirit.

- His court, which exemplified a cosmopolitan composite **Hindu-Islamic Mughal culture,** implemented this concept.

9.6 Conclusion

At the age of 62, **Bahadur Shah Zafar** (also known as Aboo Zafar) rose to the Mughal throne in 1837. He was the heir apparent to his father, Emperor Akbar Shah II. Zafar was not only a poet, but also a patron of art, language, and poetry, therefore there are more authors and poets in his court than warriors. Ibrahim Zauq and Mirza Ghalib were the two most esteemed people at court in the fields of art and poetry.

10. Nadir Shah

Nader Shah Afshar founded the **Afsharid dynasty of Iran** and was one of the most powerful monarchs in Iranian history, reigning as shah of Iran (Persia) from 1736 until 1747, when he was killed after a rebellion. The **Persian ruler Nadir Shah** invaded India in 1738–39, conquering Lahore and defeating the Mughal army at Karnal on February 13, 1739. This article will explain to you about **Nadir Shah** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

10.1 Early Life

- **Nadir Shah** was born at the **fortress of Dastgerd** into the **Afshars' Qereqlu clan,** a semi-nomadic **Turkic Qizilbash pastoralist tribe** living in the northern valleys of Khorasan, an Iranian Empire region in the northeast.

- Nader was born in the latter years of the **Safavid dynasty**, which controlled Iran from 1502.

- **Safavid Iran** was a formidable empire at its apex, led by leaders such as Abbas the Great, but by the early **18th century,** the realm was in serious decline, and the reigning shah, **Sultan Husayn,** was a weak ruler.

- In 1730, Nader Shah ascended to the throne of Persia.

- In that year, his troops captured Esfahan from the **Safavid dynasty** and established the **Afsharid dynasty.**

- After conquering Kandahar, the last bastion of the Hotaki dynasty in Afghanistan, in 1738, **Nadir Shah** proceeded to conduct expeditions across the Hindu Kush mountains into Northern India, which was then ruled by the Mughal Empire.

- As he went into **Mughal territory**, he was joined by **Erekle II,** his Georgian vassal and future ruler of eastern Georgia, who commanded a Georgian detachment as a military commander as part of **Nadir's troop.**

10.2 Afsharid Dynasty

- The **Afsharid dynasty** was an Iranian dynasty that ruled Iran (Persia) in the mid-eighteenth century, descended from the Turkoman Afshar clan in Iran's north-eastern region of Khorasan.

- The **dynasty was established in 1736 by Nadir Shah**, a superb military leader who toppled the last member of the **Safavid dynasty** and proclaimed himself Shah of Iran.

- Iran attained its largest breadth since the Sasanian Empire during Nader's rule.

- It ruled over modern-day Iran, **Armenia, Georgia, Azerbaijan Republic, sections of the North Caucasus (Dagestan), Afghanistan, Bahrain, Turkmenistan, Uzbekistan, and Pakistan,** as well as parts of Iraq, Turkey, the United Arab Emirates, and Oman at its peak.

- Following his death, the majority of his empire was partitioned among the **Zands, Durranis, Georgians, and Caucasian khanates**, with Afsharid sovereignty limited to a tiny provincial **kingdom in Khorasan.**

- Finally, in 1796, **Agha Mohammad Khan Qajar** overthrew the Afsharid dynasty, establishing a new native Iranian kingdom and restoring Iranian suzerainty over several of the aforementioned provinces.

10.3 Invasion of India by Nader Shah

- Emperor **Nadir Shah (1736–47),** Shah of Persia and founder of the I**ranian Afsharid dynasty of Persia,** invaded Northern India, finally invading Delhi in March 1739.

- His army handily beat the **Mughals in the War** of Karnal and would later conquer the Mughal capital as a result of the battle.

- **Aurangzeb's death** left a hole in the Mughal empire that none of his successors could fill.

- The empire had become weaker as a result of frequent conflicts for the throne and treachery of ministers.

- **Nadir Shah,** who rose from the ranks of the dacoits to become King of Persia, saw the weak realm as an **opportunity.**

- **Nadir Shah** then invaded India in 1738. The invasion was justified because the Mughal ruler **Muhammad Shah** had insulted the Persian ambassador at the royal court of Delhi.

- In 1739, he overran the Mughal empire's western boundaries, taking **Ghazni, Kabul, and Lahore.**

- When **Nadir Shah** crossed the **Khyber Pass,** the Governor of Punjab requested that the Mughal empire improve Punjab's defences, but the then-Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah turned a deaf ear to his sincere appeal.

- Soon after **Nadir Shah entered Punjab,** Muhammad Shah, seeing a threat, sent **Khan Dauran and Nizam-ul-Mulk** to head the Mughal armies against Nadir Shah.

- However, when both were defeated, **Muhammad Shah** was compelled to take leadership of the army himself.

- The two armies clashed at Karnal, but the **Mughal soldiers were quickly trapped and crushed**. The Nawab of Awadh, Saadat Khan, was kidnapped, and **Khan Dauran** was gravely injured.

- The **Mughal army's defeat caused** disarray among its ranks. The Nizam acted as a go-between, persuading **Nadir Shah** to return to Persia in exchange for 20 million rupees.

- The **Mughal emperor,** impressed with Nizam, bestowed the title of **'Amir-Ul-Umra'** on him and named him Prime Minister.

- **Saadat Khan** contacted Nadir Khan and warned him that he should not be content with such a little that even a province governor might provide him.

- This electrified the Persian king, and the splendour of **Delhi flashed** before his eyes.

10.4 The massacre

- **Nadir Shah,** triumphant, entered Delhi besides the prostrated **Mughal Emperor.**

- The keys to the **Delhi fort** and its wealth had already been handed over. As a condition for his return, a sum was also agreed upon with Nadir Shah.

- However, word spread that **Nadir Shah** had been assassinated. Riots erupted in Delhi, and a few **Persian troops were murdered.** When **Nadir Shah** learned of this, he immediately rode towards the city, where he discovered the death of Persian warriors laying on the streets.

- Some people threw stones at him at the **Sunhari masjid of Roshnuddola,** and a stray gunshot **killed a Persian soldier.** He was so incensed that he ordered a massive murder in all areas where the remains of **Persian soldiers** had been discovered.

- As a result, on March 11, 1739, **inhabitants of Delhi** were pillaged and slain; some historians estimate that almost 0.2 million people were killed.

10.5 Consequences of the Invasion

- The army of **Nadir Shah demolished,** robbed, plundered, and wrecked the whole city of Delhi.

- **Nadir Shah** carried the Peacock throne erected by **Shah Jahan** with him. He also stole the fabled **"Koh-i-noor"** diamond.

- Aside from that, he stole 10 million rupees in gold, 600 million rupees in jewellery, and 6 million rupees in currency.

- According to historians, his whole collection after **invading India** was worth 700 million rupees, including 7000 artisans, 200 carpenters, 100 stone-cutters, and thousands of elephants, horses, and camels, which he carried to Persia.

- The invasion of India by **Nadir Shah** was a stark representation of cruelty and harsh treatment meted out to the residents of the city, the first of its sort in Indian history.

- The carnage at Delhi rendered the **Mughals** so weak that they were unable to confront other foes or rebuild their power.

- This invasion caused catastrophic harm to the **Mughal Empire.** The Persians took control of Mughal territories.

- Following **Nadir Shah's** footsteps, Ahmad Shah Abdali invaded India many times and assaulted Delhi between 1748 and 1767.

10.6 Peacock Throne

- The **Peacock Throne** was a magnificent jewelled throne that served as the seat of the **Mughal Empires in** India.

- It was commissioned by **Emperor Shah Jahan i**n the early 17th century and was housed in the **Diwan-i-Khas** (Hall of Private Audiences, or Ministers' Room) of Delhi's Red Fort.

- It was called after a peacock because two peacocks are seen dancing at its back.

- On the **Throne was inscribed** in emerald a phrase celebrating **Shah Jahan's** achievements.

- It was made with an estimated 116 emeralds, 108 rubies, and other rare diamonds, sapphires, and pearls.

- There were **silver stairs** leading up to a platform 6 ft by 4 ft. The platform was raised about 25 inches above the ground on four gold-encased feet.

- **Nadir Shah** was slain by his own bodyguards in 1747, and Persia sank into turmoil. In the pandemonium that erupted thieves looted the palace and demolished the Peacock Throne.

10.7 Conclusion

The Mughal empire was irreparably damaged by Nadir Shah's assault. Mughal lands on both sides of the Indus were given to the Persians. Later, encouraged by Nadir Shah's antics, his successor, **Ahmad Shah Abdali**, invaded India four times between 1748 and 1767, plundering Delhi.

Chapter 5: Rise of Autonomous States

1. Ahmed Shah Abdali

Ahmad Shah Durrani, also known as Ahmad Shah Abdali or Ahmad Khan Abdali, was the founder of the **Durrani Empire** and the contemporary state of Afghanistan. Between 1748 and 1767, **Ahmad Shah Abdali** (or Ahmad Shah Durrani), who was elected as Nadir Shah's successor following the latter's death in 1747, invaded India many times. This article will explain to you about **Ahmed Shah Abdali** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

1.1 Early Life

- **Abdali was born in Multan** (then Mughal Empire, now Pakistan) in 1722 to **Mohammad Zaman Khan**, governor of Herat and leader of the **Abdali clan**.
- Durrani's forebears were Sadozais, while his mother was Alakozai.
- The **Abdali soldiers** led by **Zulfiqar** surrendered to **Nader Shah Afshar,** the emerging new ruler of Persia, in June 1729. However, they soon started a rebellion and took over **Herat and Mashhad.**
- He defeated **Ibrahim Khan**, a military leader, and Nader Shah's brother, in July 1730.
- Since roughly 1729, Nader Shah had been enrolling the Abdalis in his army. Durrani and his brother Zulfiqar were liberated and given prominent positions in Nader Shah's government after the conquest of Kandahar in 1738.
- **Durrani continued** as Nader Shah's personal attendant, while Zulfiqar was appointed Governor of Mazandaran.
- **Durrani distinguished** himself in Nader Shah's service, rising from the rank of a personal attendant (yaswal) to head the Abdali Regiment, a cavalry of 4,000 troops and commanders.
- During **Nader Shah's invasion** of the Mughal Empire in 1738, the **Abdali Regiment** formed part of his troops.

1.2 Durrani Empire

- The **Durrani Kingdom,** also known as the **Sadozai Kingdom** and the

Afghan Empire, was a **Central Asian, Middle Eastern, and South Asian empire** created and constructed by **Ahmad Shah Abdali.**

- The empire reigned over modern-day **Afghanistan and Pakistan,** as well as areas of northeastern and southeastern Iran, eastern Turkmenistan, and northern India at its peak.

- The **Durrani Empire** was the strongest Muslim empire of the second part of the eighteenth century, second only to the **Ottoman Empire.**

- **Ahmad Shah Abdali** unified the many **Pashtun tribes** and established the **Durrani Empire with his Baloch allies,** which comprised modern-day Afghanistan and Pakistan, as well as sections of northeastern **Iran, eastern Turkmenistan, and northwestern India, including the Kashmir area,** at its zenith.

- During the early half of the nineteenth century, the Durranis were succeeded by the **Barakzai dynasty.**

- **Ahmad Shah** and his descendants descended from the **Durrani Popalzai** line (formerly known as the Abdalis), making them the second Pashtun kings of Kandahar after the **Hotak dynasty.**

- **The Durranis** rose to prominence in the second part of the 18th century, owing mostly to the leadership of **Ahmad Shah Durrani.**

1.3 Ahmed Shah Abdali - Indian Invasion

- Between 1748 and 1767, **Ahmad Shah Durrani invaded** India eight times.

- Following **Nadir Shah's demise**, Ahmad Shah Durrani ascended to the **Afghan throne** and began pillaging wealth from neighbouring territories.

- Abdali ambushed many people in the **Chota Ghalughara and Vada Ghalughara**, but he eventually fled when he met the Sikhs on the banks of the Chenab on his route to India.

- Following Durrani's return to Afghanistan, the Sikhs revolted and conquered a number of towns in the Punjab area.

- His repeated raids decimated the **Mughal empire** and, at **Panipat,** delivered a significant blow to Maratha pretensions in the north, creating a power vacuum.

- His "tireless energy, ambition, and purpose" were mirrored in the frequency of his repeated invasions.

- Afghanistan, being a poor and "backward" country, was unable to provide **nutrition** for its people or financial support for the government.

- So Abdali felt it was "essential" to **invade India,** a **"rich but poorly guarded neighbouring nation,"** to loot and exploit its riches.

- In addition, he intended to create **"political hegemony**" in India.
- The Mughal empire was collapsing during his reign, and he was "ready to step into the shoes of the **decadent Mughal power"** to fill the "political vacuum without any waste of time."
- In 1757, **Abdali seized Delhi** and left an Afghan caretaker to keep an eye on the Mughal emperor.
- Before his return, **Abdali** had recognized **Alamgir II** as the **Mughal emperor and the Rohilla ruler, Najib-ud-Daula,** as the empire's Mir Bakhshi, who was to operate as Abdali's personal supreme agent.'
- **Raghunath Rao,** the Maratha leader who also seized Punjab, evicted **Najib-ud-Daula** from Delhi in 1758.
- **Ahmad Shah Abdali** returned to India in 1759 to exact vengeance on the Marathas.
- In the **Third Battle of Panipat** in 1761, **Abdali defeated the Marathas.** The final of Abdali's invasions occurred in 1767.

1.4 Third Battle of Panipat

- On 14 January 1761, a northern invading army of the **Maratha Empire** and the **King of Afghanistan, Ahmad Shah Durrani,** with two Indian Muslim allies - the **Rohilla Afghan**s of the **Doab and Shuja-ud-Daula,** the Nawab of Oudh - fought at Panipat.
- The fight is regarded as one of the largest fought in the **18th century,** with the most casualties known in a single day in a typical formation combat between two armies.
- With no supplies and dying warriors, the **Maratha leaders** pleaded with their commander, **Sadashiv Rao Bhau,** to let them die in combat rather than starve to death.
- The **Marathas left** their camp to march towards the **Afghan camp** in a desperate bid to break the siege.
- Over 125,000 men were involved in the conflict, which lasted many days.
- Prolonged clashes erupted, with both forces suffering losses and gaining ground.
- After defeating many **Maratha flanks**, the armies headed by **Ahmad Shah Durrani** emerged triumphant.
- The magnitude of both sides' casualties is estimated to be **between 60,000–70,000** dead in battle, with the number of injured and captives taken varying greatly. The day following the fight, around 40,000 Maratha captives were killed in cold blood.

- The fight halted future **Maratha advances** in the north and destabilised their territory for almost ten years.

- In 1771, ten years after **Panipat, Peshwa Madhavrao** led a huge Maratha force into North India in an attempt to re-establish **Maratha dominance** in the region.

- Punish obstinate powers that had either joined with the Afghans, like as the **Rohillas,** or had shrugged from **Maratha dominance** following Panipat.

- This campaign's triumph might be viewed as the final chapter in the protracted **narrative of Panipat.**

1.5 Conclusion

Ahamad Shah Abdali, also known as Ahamad Shah Durrani, was an Afghan leader of the Durrani tribe. After the killing of Nadir Shah, he ascended to the Afghan throne in 1747. From 1747 until his death in 1773, he governed. During this reign, he invaded India eight times, captured Punjab, and defeated the Marathas in the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761.

2. Jagirdari Crisis

The **Jagirdari Crisis** was a financial scenario in which there was a scarcity of lands, or jagirs. This reduced the **expense of administration,** and the imperial crown was unable to fund wars or maintain the nobility's quality of living. As a result, the Mughal crown was forced to give up its own territory in order to pay its officials. This article will explain to you about the **Jagirdari Crisis** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

2.1 Jagirdari System

- The practice of allocating money from a certain province to nobles in exchange for services to the state was maintained by the **Mughals as well.**

- Under the **Mughals**, the lands allotted were **known as Jagirs,** and the people who held them were known as Jagirdars.

- The **Jagirdari system** was a vital aspect of the mansabdari system that emerged under Akbar and underwent adjustments during his successors' reigns.

- During Akbar's reign, the country was divided into two parts:
  - **Khalisa.**
  - **Jagir**.

- The revenue from the first went to the imperial treasury, while the revenue from Jagir was given to Jagirdars in place of a cash stipend.

- Mansabdars' salary entitlements were computed based on their **Zat and Sawar** grades.

- The wage was paid either in cash (in which case it was referred to as Naqdi) or through the assignment of a **Jagir,** with the latter being the preferred method.

- At any moment, the Emperor might move a portion or the full Jagir from one section of the imperial empire to another.

- **During the Mughal era**, the ratio of **Jagir to Khalisa** fluctuated.

- During Akbar's reign, Khalisa accounted for barely 5% of overall revenue; under Jahangir, it was 10%, and during Shahjahan, it ranged between 9 and 15%.

- There was a lot of strain on the Khalisa in the later half of Aurangzeb's reign since the number of claims for Jagir rose with the number of mansabdars.

- **Jagirdars** were also moved from one Jagir to another (but in certain cases they were allowed to keep their Jagir in one locality for a longer period of time).

- The **transfer mechanism** prevented the Jagirdars from establishing local roots. At the same time, it had the problem of discouraging Jagirdars from pursuing long-term steps to improve their districts.

- Jagirs came in a variety of shapes and sizes.

  — **Tankha Jagirs** were awarded in place of salary.

  — **Mashrut Jagirs** were given under particular conditions.

  — **Watan Jagirs** were allotted to Zamindars or Rajas in their respective dominions.

  — **Altamgha Jagirs** were bestowed to Muslim nobility at their home cities or birthplaces.

2.2 Jagirdari Crisis

- The **Jagirdari Crisis** was a financial scenario in which there was a scarcity of lands, or jagirs.

- This reduced the expense of administration, and the imperial crown was unable to fund wars or maintain the nobility's quality of living.

- As a result, the **Mughal crown** was forced to give up its own territory in order to pay its officials.

- This reduced the **Mughal Emperor's** territory and, as a result, his influence.

- About four-fifths of the land revenue of the **Mughal Empires** was under the hands of mansabdars and jagirdars

- Yet, this income was unevenly divided among them, fostering jealousies among the nobility, especially at a time when the Empire's resources were declining.

- 18th century **jagirdari crisis'** as "the available **societal surplus** was insufficient to defray the **expense of administration,** pay for Wars of one kind or another, and to offer the ruling classes a level of life in conformity with their expectations."

- In this case, real revenue collection was substantially lower than anticipated, lowering the predicted income of the jagirdars.

- The **Deccan war** necessitated a larger number of mansabdars, and the resulting political turbulence made income collection more difficult.

- The jagirdari crisis resulted in an ugly rivalry for control of the fertile jagir.

- This exacerbated the already-existing factionalism at Court following the death of **Bahadur Shah** in 1712A.D., since low-ranking officials found it impossible to sustain their lifestyles with the paltry amounts they received from the jagirs.

- The **jagirdari crisis** worsened as **agricultural revenue** fell and the number of contestants seeking a piece of the surplus increased.

- Though commerce, both **domestic and foreign,** continued unaffected and even thrived, the rest of the e**conomy stagnated.**

2.3 Conclusion

As a consequence of a number of disparate but interconnected reasons, the Mughal Empire declined dramatically within a few decades of Aurangzeb's death. The age of the great Mughals, a brilliant era in mediaeval Indian history, ended in this fashion, paving the way for the foundation of several autonomous regional Kingdoms in its aftermath.

3. Rise of Autonomous States - Causes of Decline of Mughal Empire

The Rise of Autonomous states like the Jats, Sikhs, and Marathas revolted under Aurangzeb's rule. They challenged the Mughal state's authority in order to establish their own kingdoms. They did not succeed, but they had an impact on the future course of political events in their respective regions. Their constant fight for political dominance against the empire damaged the empire significantly. This article will explain to you about the **Rise of Autonomous States** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

- Rise of Autonomous States
- The states that arose as a result of the Mughal Empire's fall may be divided into three basic categories:
  - — Successor States
  - — Independent Kingdoms
  - — The New States
- **Successor States -** These were the Mughal provinces that became states after seceding from the empire.
- Though they did not dispute the **Mughal ruler's sovereignty**, their governors' installation of essentially independent and hereditary power demonstrated the rise of autonomous polity in these provinces. Awadh, Bengal, and Hyderabad are a few instances.
- **Independent Kingdoms -** These nations arose mostly as a result of the destabilisation of Mughal sovereignty over the provinces, with Mysore and the Rajput states serving as examples.
- **The New States -** These were the states established by rebels against the Mughal empire, such as the Maratha, Sikh, and Jat states.

3.2 Autonomous States

State	Dynasty/Founder/ Leader	Significance
Hyderabad	Nizam-ul-Mulk, was the founder of the Hyderabad Asaf-Jah dynasty.	• Disgusted with the Mughal emperor for appointing Mubariz Khan as a full-fledged viceroy of the Deccan, Nizam-ul-Mulk determined to confront Mubariz Khan. • In the Battle of Shaker-Kheda, he defeated and later killed Mubariz Khan (1724). • He was now in command of the Deccan. • In 1725, he was appointed viceroy and given the title Asaf-Jah.

(contd.)

Awadh	Saadat Khan, also known as Burhan-ul-Mulk, founded the autonomous principality of Awadh.	• Saadat Khan had participated in a plot against the Sayyid brothers, which resulted in his receiving an enhanced mansab. • After being pushed out of the court, he was inspired to establish a new independent state. • Saadat Khan committed himself as a result of pressure from Nadir Shah, who demanded a large bounty from him. • Safdar Jang succeeded him as Nawab of Awadh.
Bengal	Murshid Kuli Khan established the independent state of Bengal.	• Murshid Kuli Khan was a skilled monarch who led Bengal to prosperity. • In 1727, he was succeeded by his son Shujaud-din. • Sarfaraz Khan, his successor, was assassinated in 1740 by Alivardi Khan, the deputy governor of Bihar at Gheria, who seized control and declared independence from the Mughal emperor by paying yearly tribute.
The Rajputs	Ajit Singh attempted to re-establish Rajput independence in the 18th century.	• This compelled Bahadur Shah I, the Mughal emperor, to march against Ajit Singh (1708), who had forged an alliance with Jai Singh II and Durgadas Rathor. • The agreement, however, was shattered, and the situation was salvaged for the Mughals. • The Rajputs formerly ruled the whole country stretching from the south of Delhi to the western shore.
Mysore	Ruled by the Wodeyars	• Various powers, all of which were interested in this land, transformed the area into a perpetual battleground. • Finally, the Mysore state was placed under the leadership of Haider Ali, who administered the state with difficulty. • He and his son Tipu Sultan were often at odds with the British.
Kerala	Martanda Varma established Kerala	• Kerala as an autonomous state, with Travancore as its capital. • Martanda Varma expanded his state's borders from Kanyakumari to Cochin. • He worked hard to organise his army following Western lines and implemented a variety of policies to help his country grow.

(contd.)

The Jats	Churaman and Badan Singh were successful in establishing the Jat kingdom of Bharatpur.	• The agriculturist Jat settlers of Delhi, Mathura, and Agra revolted against Aurangzeb's repressive policies. • Suraj Mal's reign was the pinnacle of Jat power. • He not only established an effective administrative structure, but he also considerably expanded the state's area. • His kingdom stretched from the Ganga in the east to the Chambal in the south, and it comprised the Subahs of Agra, Mathura, Meerut, and Aligarh. • However, with the death of Suraj Mal in 1763, the Jat kingdom began to crumble.
The Sikhs	Banda Bahadur, who subsequently became the Sikhs' leader in 1708,	• Following the invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali, the Sikhs asserted their dominance once more. • At this point, they had organised themselves into 12 misls or confederacies that controlled different portions of the country. • Ranjit Singh is credited with founding a powerful Punjab empire. • Ranjit Singh took control of the territory stretching from the Sutlej to the Jhelum. • In 1799, he captured Lahore, and in 1802, he seized Amritsar. • Ranjit Singh recognised the British claim over the Cis-Sutlej provinces in the Treaty of Amritsar with the British.
The Marathas	Under the skillful leadership of the Peshwas	• The Marathas drove the Mughals out of Malwa and Gujarat and established their own dominion. • They formerly claimed to be the sole heirs of the Mughal empire, but their power was challenged by Ahmad Shah Abdali at the Third Battle of Panipat (1761). • The Marathas soon rebounded from defeat and posed the most dangerous opposition to the English East India Company in India's quest for political power.
Rohilkhand and Farrukhabad	The Bangash Pathans' kingdom	• Ali Muhammad Khan used the collapse of authority in North India after Nadir Shah's invasion to establish a tiny kingdom, Rohilakhand. • This was the Himalayan foothills region between Kumaon in the north and the Ganga in the south.

(contd.)

		• The Rohillas, as the people of Rohilkhand were known, suffered much at the hands of the area's other powers, the Jats and Awadh monarchs, and subsequently, the Marathas and the British. • During the reigns of Farrukhsiyar and Muhammad Shah, Afghan Mohammad Khan Bangash established an autonomous kingdom to the east of Delhi in the territory surrounding Farrukhabad.

3.3 Significance of the Autonomous States

- The territories' distinct political systems maintained relations with the Mughal imperial power and accepted the emperor's status as an umbrella.

- Even rebel chieftains of the **Marathas and Sikhs** acknowledged the Mughal emperor as the supreme power.

- The polity that arose in these nations was regional in nature and functioning, thanks to the combined backing of many local groups such as **zamindars, merchants, local lords, and chieftains.**

- In order to survive, the provincial rulers had to take care of these varied local interests.

- Of course, there were exceptions; for example, monarchs in Mysore did not recognise local chieftains.

3.4 Limitations of the Autonomous States

- Certain limitations applied to the regional states. The provincial rulers were unable to create a system that was based on strong financial, administrative, and military organisation.

- Though some strove to modernise, most **notably Mysore,** they were generally behind in science and technology.

- Another **disadvantage was the incessant** conflict these governments engaged in with neighbouring regional powers - wars in which none could eventually prevail.

- In truth, these republics were powerful enough to threaten **Mughal dominance,** but none were able to replace it with an all-India stable polity.

- The **jagirdari situation** worsened as agricultural revenue fell and the number of contestants seeking a piece of the surplus increased.

- Though commerce, both d**omestic and foreign,** continued unaffected and even thrived, the rest of the economy stagnated.

3.5 Conclusion

The disintegration of the Mughal empire was a watershed moment in Indian history, ushering in the establishment of many regional powers as well as British control for nearly 200 years. The strong authority of Aurangzeb may be traced back to the beginning of the dissolution of the Mughal empire. Aurangzeb inherited a big empire, but he pursued a strategy of expanding it to the southernmost geographical boundaries at enormous cost in terms of men and materials.

4. Murshid Quli Khan
(1717-27)

Murshid Quli Khan, also known as **Mohammad Hadi** and born **Surya Narayan Mishra,** was Bengal's **first Nawab**, reigning from **1717 until 1727**. Murshid Quli Khan was born as a **Hindu Brahmin** and adopted as a son by **Haji Shafi,** a Persian who had moved to India. **Haji Shaf**i renamed the child **Mohammed Hadi** and brought him to Persia, where he grew up. When he returned to India, he served the Mughal empire in many positions and earned a reputation for himself. This article will explain to you about **Murshid Quli Khan (1717-27)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

4.1 Murshid Quli Khan - Early Life

- **Murshid Quli Khan** was born in Deccan in 1670 as **Surya Narayan Mishra**, a Hindu. This assertion is supported by the book **Ma'asir al-umara.**

- He was sold to a Persian named **Haji Shafi** when he was around eleven years old, and he was circumcised and given the name **Mohammad Hadi.**

- In the early 1690s, **Shafi** fled the Mughal court and returned to Persia with **Murshid Quli Khan.**

- Murshid returned to India about five years after Shafi's death and served for **Abdullah Khurasani,** the **Diwan of Vidarbha** in the Mughal Empire.

- His competence in tax affairs, he was noticed by **Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb** and played an essential part in implementing **Fatawa Alamgiri's sharia**-based **financial plans.**

- **Murshid Quli Khan** was appointed Dewan of Bengal in 1700 and reigned until his death in 1727.

4.2 Murshid Quli Khan - Diwan of Bengal

- Around the year 1700, Aurangzeb appointed **Quli Khan as Diwan of Bengal.**

- **Azim-us-Shan,** the Mughal emperor's grandson, was the province's subahdar at the time.

- He was dissatisfied with this appointment because he intended to utilise the state money to support his quest to take the Mughal throne following Aurangzeb's death.

- Quli Khan proceeded to **Jahangirnagar (modern-day Dhaka)** immediately after being assigned to the post and moved employees from the services of Azim-us-han's to himself, infuriating **Azim-us-Shan.**

- He attempted to protect his province's interests by stopping the **English East India Company** from collecting taxes.

- His son-in-law, **Shujauddin Khan**, took over the government and conquered Bihar's Suba to become a part of Bengal.

- **Murshid Quli Khan** and his successor Nawabs ruled as autonomous monarchs in **Bengal, Bihar, and Odisha,** yet they continued to provide income to the Mughal emperor on a regular basis.

4.3 Murshid Quli Khan - Reign

- Until **Aurangzeb's death** in 1707, all of the subahdar's powers were vested in Quli Khan.

- In 1717, **Farrukhsiyar** bestowed the title of **Zafar Khan** on **Quli Khan** and appointed him Subahdar of Bengal, making him the first person to hold both the rank of subahdar and diwan at the same time.

- He declared himself **Nawab of Bengal,** becoming the province's first independent nawab.

- **Murshidabad** was designated as the new capital, replacing Dhaka.

- **Quli Khan** established the **Mal Jasmani system**, which was akin to France's generals, in place of the **Mughal jagirdari system.**

- He obtained security bonds from the contractors, known as **Ijaradars**, who would subsequently receive the land revenue.

- Though there were numerous **jagirdars initially**, they were quickly pushed out by the contractors, who were known as zamindars.

- **Quli Khan** maintained his policy of giving a portion of the gathered wealth to the **Mughal Empire.**

- He did so even when the empire was in decline and the emperor had little influence, as power was increasingly consolidated in the **hands of kingmakers.**

- With **Murshidabad** being the capital of Bengal, Quli Khan was obliged to construct buildings and offices in order for work to be carried out from that city.

- He constructed a palace, known as a Diwan khana, in the city's **Dugharia district** ("office of revenue collection", a court of exchequer).

- He also constructed an inn and a **mosque for foreign visitors.**

- In 1720, he built a mint in the city. In 1724, he built the **Katra Masjid**

mosque in the city's eastern outskirts, where he was interred following his death.

- **Quli Khan** died on June 30, 1727. Sarfaraz Khan, his grandson, took over as his successor at first.

- Quli Khan is buried under the steps leading to the main floor of **Katra Masjid**, a five-bayed rectangular mosque built by himself in accordance with his intentions.

4.4 Murshidabad - During Murshid Quli Khan

- **Murshidabad residents** used to take part in a variety of celebrations during Quli Khan's rule.

- **The Punyah**, which happened in the last week of the Bengali month of Chaitra, was one among them. It was attended by the **zamindars or their representatives.**

- The event that was **celebrated** with the most pomp and splendor, however, was Mawlid, which commemorated the birth of the **Islamic prophet Muhammad.** People from neighbouring regions travelled to the city to celebrate Mawlid.

- Quli Khan ordered that **chirag, or lights**, be lit in all religious buildings, including mosques and imambararas.

- Quli Khan also followed the **Mughal custom** of conducting a durbar in the city, which was attended by local bankers, foreign visitors, and representatives from European corporations.

- As commerce increased, a new class of businesspeople emerged, who also attended his durbar.

- Due to his **religious disposition, Quli Khan** faithfully observed Islam, and guests were fed twice a day according to Islamic standards.

4.5 Mal Jasmani system

- **Mal Jasmani system is** also known as Murshid Quli Khan's **Malzamini revenue settlement.**

- The terms **malzamini,** a derivative from the **Persian mal,** meaning the property of any **sort, and zamin,** meaning a **guarantor or bondsman** for the payment of rent or obligation, were used in the Bengali revenue procedure.

- It initially arose in 18th-century Bengali lexicon in conjunction with Murshid Quli Khan's **income settlement.**

- **Murshid Quli Khan**, the **Diwan-Subahdar (1700-1727)** of the Subah of Bengal, is believed to have insisted on new ijaradars (leaseholders)

supplying security bonds, i.e., **pre-guarantee**, while entering yearly contracts for the collection and payment of the prescribed revenue on time.

4.6 Conclusion

With the collapse of the Mughal Empire following the death of Aurangzeb, Bengal became an autonomous viceroyalty for all practical purposes under Murshid Quli Khan, who justified the trust placed in him with competent administration that brought Bengal to the pinnacle of wealth. Murshid Quli Khan is referred to as Jafar Khan in some British records. He was born a Brahmin but was raised as a slave in Persia. He became a zealous Muslim and demolished several temples.

5. Siraj ud Daula (1756-57)

Mirza Muhammad Siraj-ud-Daulah, also known as **Siraj-ud-Daulah or Siraj ud-Daula,** was Bengal's last independent Nawab. In 1740, he established Nizamat Imambara in **Murshidabad, West Bengal.** The end of his reign signalled the beginning of the **East India Company**'s dominion over Bengal and, ultimately, practically the whole Indian subcontinent. At the **age of 23,** Siraj succeeded his maternal grandfather, **Alivardi Khan, as Nawab of Bengal** in April 1756. This article will explain to you about **Siraj ud Daula (1756-57)** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

5.1 Early Life

- Siraj was born in 1733 to **Mirza Muhammad** Hashim and Amina Begum.

- Siraj's maternal grandfather, **Alivardi Khan**, was appointed Deputy Governor of Bihar shortly after his birth.

- Siraj was known as the family's **"lucky kid."** He got his grandfather's special care and was nurtured at the **Nawab's palace** with all the required education and training for a future Nawab.

- In 1746, young **Siraj** accompanied Alivardi on his military expeditions against the Marathas.

- **Siraj rose** against his grandpa and captured Patna in 1750, but shortly submitted and was pardoned.

- **Alivardi named Siraj** as his successor in May 1752. The former died on April 9, 1756, at the age of eighty.

- At the age of 23, Siraj succeeded his maternal grandfather, **Alivardi Khan,** as Nawab of Bengal in April 1756.

- Siraj was betrayed by **Mir Jafar,** the leader of the Nawab's army, and lost the Battle of Plassey on June 23, 1757.

5.2 Reign

- During this time, the **British East India Company** was expanding its power in the **Indian subcontinent,** notably in Bengal; Siraj quickly began to detest the E**ast India Company**'s **politico-militar**y presence in Bengal.

- He was particularly enraged by the Company's apparent involvement in, and sponsorship of, a coup plot against him by some members of his own court.

- His allegations against the firm were essentially threefold.
- First, they strengthened the fortifications around **Fort William** without any intimation or approval;
- Second, they grossly abused trade privileges granted to them by **Mughal rulers** – resulting in heavy losses of customs duties for the government;
- Third, they provided shelter to some of his officers, such as Krishnadas, son of Rajballav, who fled **Dhaka** after misappropriating government funds.
- The British success in the **Carnatic wars** has made Siraj-Ud-Daula fearful about the British increasing influence in India.
- The Company's officials abused their trading rights in a way that harmed the nawab's finances.
- The British strengthened **Fort Williams** without Nawab's approval, infuriating him even more.
- When the **East India Company** began bolstering military power at **Fort William in Calcutta**, **Siraj ud-Daulah** ordered a halt. Because the Company disobeyed his orders, Siraj responded by seizing Calcutta (for a short time renamed Alinagar) from the British in June 1756.
- He marched to **Fort Williams**, grabbed 146 Britishers, and imprisoned them in a cramped chamber, resulting in the deaths of 123 Britishers.
- This is known as the **"Black Hole Tragedy of Calcutta."**
- Siraj ud-Daulah was betrayed by Mir Jafar, the leader of the Nawab's army, and lost the **Battle of Plassey on June 23, 1757.**
- The **East India Company's** soldiers, led by **Robert Clive,** invaded Bengal, seizing control of the administration.
- Mohammad Ali Beg executed Siraj-ud-Daulah on 2 July 1757 on instructions from Mir Miran, son of Mir Jafar, at Namak Haram Deorhi as part of the agreement between **Mir Jafar** and the British East India Company.
- The grave of Siraj-ud-Daulah is located in Khushbagh, Murshidabad.
- The end of Siraj ud-rule Daulah's also signified the end of Bengali autonomy and the establishment of British control in India.

5.3 Battle of Plassey

- The Battle of Plassey took place on June 23, 1757, in the Plassey district of West Bengal.
- The **British East India Company**, led by **Robert Clive,** fought this battle against the Nawab of Bengal, **Siraj-ud-daula.**

- The French forces took part in this battle as well, fighting with Siraj-ud-daula against Robert Clive.

- The **Nawab of Bengal's** army of 50,000 warriors, with French forces on their side, vastly overpowered the British army of roughly 3000 soldiers.

- However, **Robert Clive's** conspiracy and subsequent betrayal by Mir Jafar, Rai Durlabh, and others led to the downfall of Nawab of Bengal Siraj-ud-daula in the **Battle of Plassey.**

- The Fight of Plassey is seen as a momentous battle for the British and a turning point in Indian history in their favour.

- It established the **British military** and political dominance in Bengal.

- The **battle of Plassey** is regarded by most historians as the crucial event, with origins in **British control** and governance over India.

5.4 Robert Clive

- He was born in England in 1725.

- He arrived at **Fort St. George (Madras)** in 1744 to serve as a 'factor,' or company agent, for the **East India Company.**

- He joined the company army and was able to demonstrate his abilities.

- He achieved renown and acclaim for his involvement in the Siege of Arcot, which resulted in a British triumph over the superior troops of Chanda Sahib, the Nawab of Carnatic, and the **French East India Company.**

- Despite possessing a greater army, the Nawab was beaten by the British at the **Battle of Plassey.**

- By inducing the Nawab's army Commander Mir Jaffar, who was appointed as Bengal's Nawab after the fight, Clive secured a decisive English victory.

- The British fought the **Battle of Buxar** against the united troops of Mir Qasim, Shuja Ud Daulah (the Nawab of Awadh), and Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II. This battle was won by the British.

- As a result of this fight, the **Mughal Emperor** granted the British the Diwani (right to collect income) of **Bengal, Bihar, and Odisha** in exchange for an annual sum of money and the Allahabad and Kora districts.

- **Robert Clive,** who could have annexed **Awadh** as well, chose not to do so. He hoped to utilise it as a "buffer" state between the British and the Marathas.

- Clive was also successful in capturing certain **French forts in Bengal.**

- As a result of those struggles, the **British established** themselves as the dominant force in the Indian subcontinent.

- Bengal became theirs, considerably improving the company's profits. (At the time, Bengal was wealthier than Britain.)

- This also allowed the British to expand into other sections of India, eventually leading to the creation of the **British Raj in India.**

- As a result, **Robert Clive** is also regarded as the "Conqueror of India."

5.5 Conclusion

Sirajuddaula's limits, as well as his public and private character, should be considered in light of the context in which he worked and the cause for which he fought and died. After he became a nawab, there was a significant shift in his personality. The judgement of history is that, whatever his faults may have been, Sirajuddaula never betrayed his lord or sold his nation. 'The name Sirajuddaula ranks higher on the honour scale than the name Clive. He was the only one of the main characters who didn't try to mislead.'

6. Bengal - Rise of Autonomous States during Mughal Empire

After being conquered by the **British East India Company** at the **Battle of Plassey** in 1757, **Mughal Bengal** emerged as an **independent state,** under the Nawabs of Bengal, and already observing proto-industrialization, it made a direct significant contribution to the first **Industrial Revolution** (substantially textile manufacture during the Industrial Revolution) but led to its deindustrialization. The Bengal Presidency was afterwards founded from the Subah. The Bengal Subah, often known as Mughal Bengal, was the Mughal Empire's biggest subdivision. This article will explain to you about **Bengal - Rise of Autonomous States during the Mughal Empire** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

6.1 Mughal Bengal

- Between the 16th and 18th centuries, the Bengal Subah, also known as Mughal Bengal, was the biggest subdivision of the **Mughal Empire** and subsequently an independent state under the **Nawab of Bengal,** spanning much of the Bengal area, including current Bangladesh and the Indian state of West Bengal.

- After the fall of the **Bengal Sultanate,** a key trade country in the globe, when the territory was incorporated into one of the gunpowder empires, the state was formed.

- Bengal was the richest area on the **Indian subcontinent**, and its proto-industrial economy was on the verge of launching the **Industrial Revolution.**

- Due to its people' excellent living conditions and genuine wages, Bengal Subah has been dubbed the **"Paradise of Nations" and the "Golden Age of Bengal."**

- It accounted for 40% of all **Asian imports into the Netherland**s.

- The eastern section of Bengal was a significant exporter of **silk and cotton textiles, steel, saltpetre, and agricultural and industrial goods**, and it was a global leader in sectors like textile production and shipbuilding.

- The **Anglo-Mughal War** was also fought in this region.

- By the 18th century, **Mughal Bengal** had emerged as an independent state, ruled by the **Nawabs of Bengal,** and had already witnessed proto-industrialization.

- It made a direct significant contribution to the first **Industrial**

Revolution (significantly textile manufacture during the Industrial Revolution) but was deindustrialized after being conquered by the **British East India Company a**t **the Battle of Plassey in 1757.**

- The Subah was renamed the **Bengal Presidency** later on.

6.2 The Mughal conquest of Bengal

- During the reign of the first **Mughal emperor, Babur**, the Mughal absorption of Bengal started.

- During the **Battle of Ghaghra in 1529,** Babur defeated Bengal Sultan Nasiruddin Nasrat Shah. Parts of Bengal were eventually annexed by Babur.

- **Humayun,** his son and successor, seized the Bengali capital Gaur for six months. Because of Sher Shah Suri's conquests, Humayun was subsequently compelled to seek asylum in Persia.

- **Sher Shah Suri** briefly overthrew both the Mughals and the **Bengal Sultans.**

- The Mughal conquest of Bengal started on 3 March 1575, when Akbar's army defeated Sultan of **Bengal Daud Khan Karrani**, the province's independent ruler, in the **Battle of Tukaroi.**

- Following **Daud Karrani's** fatal defeat at the Battle of Rajmahal the following year, **Mughal Emperor Akbar** established Bengal as one of the original twelve Subahs (top-level provinces), bordering **Bihar and Orissa** subahs as well as Burma.

6.3 Rise of Autonomous State - Bengal

- The last viceroy of Bengal by the **Mughal, Prince Azim-us-Shan**, granted permission for the **British East India Company**'s Fort William in Calcutta, the **French East India Company's Fort Orleans in Chandernagore**, and the Dutch East India Company's fort at Chinsurah to be **built.**

- **Murshid Quli Khan,** Azim-us-prime Shan's minister, rose to prominence in Bengal during his presidency. Khan took control of the imperial finances. Azim-us-Shan was relocated to Bihar.

- The **Mughal Court** elevated the prime minister's rank to that of the hereditary **Nawab of Bengal** in 1717.

- **Murshid Kuli Khan** established the independent state of Bengal. He was a skilled monarch who led Bengal to prosperity. In 1727, he was succeeded by his son Shujaud-din.

- The Nawabs reigned over a region that encompassed Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa.

- The Nasiri dynasty was founded by his ancestors. In 1740, Alivardi Khan established a new dynasty.

- **Sarfaraz Khan,** his successor, was assassinated in 1740 by Alivardi Khan, the deputy governor of Bihar at Gheria, who seized control and declared independence from the Mughal emperor by paying yearly tribute.

6.4 Independent Nawabs of Bengal

- In **Mughal India,** the hereditary ruler of **Bengal Subah** was known as the **Nawab of Benga**l.

- A princely state or autonomous province's Nawab is equivalent to the European title of Grand Duke.

- The **Nawab of Bengal** was the de facto independent ruler of the three territories of Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa that included the modern-day sovereign country of Bangladesh and the Indian states of West Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa in the early 18th century.

- They are also known as the Nawab of Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa.

- The Nawabs were centred at Murshidabad, which was in the heart of Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa.

6.5 Murshid Quli Khan

- Around the year 1700, Aurangzeb appointed **Quli Khan as Diwan of Bengal.**

- **Azim-us-Shan,** the Mughal emperor's grandson, was the province's subahdar at the time.

- Quli Khan proceeded to **Jahangirnagar (modern-day Dhaka)** immediately after being assigned to the post and moved employees from the services of Azim-us-han's to himself, infuriating **Azim-us-Shan.**

- He attempted to protect his province's interests by stopping the **English East India Company** from collecting taxes.

- His son-in-law, **Shujauddin Khan**, took over the government and conquered Bihar's Suba to become a part of Bengal.

- **Murshid Quli Khan** and his successor Nawabs ruled as autonomous monarchs in **Bengal, Bihar, and Odisha,** yet they continued to provide income to the Mughal emperor on a regular basis.

- **Murshidabad** was designated as the new capital, replacing Dhaka.

- **Quli Khan** established the **Mal Jasmani system**, which was akin to France's generals, in place of the **Mughal jagirdari system.**

- He obtained security bonds from the contractors, known as **Ijaradars**, who would subsequently receive the land revenue.

- Though there were numerous **jagirdars initially**, they were quickly pushed out by the contractors, who were known as zamindars.

- **Quli Khan** maintained his policy of giving a portion of the gathered wealth to the **Mughal Empire.**

6.6 Aliwardi Khan

- From 1740 until 1756, Alivardi Khan was the **Nawab of Bengal.** He deposed the **Nasiri dynasty** of Nawabs and established himself as ruler.

- During the Maratha invasions of Bengal, he is well remembered for his victory in the Battle of Burdwan against the Maratha Empire.

- Immediately following his conquest of power, **Alivardi** had his takeover legitimised by Mughal Emperor Muhammad Shah and continued Murshid Quli Khan's policies.

- He also picked Faujdars from several states, including **Patna, Dacca, and Orissa.** Since 1742, the Maratha Empire has periodically attacked Bengal, devastating its lands.

- Alivardi had a lengthy trench, known as the Maratha ditch, constructed around Calcutta almost immediately.

- Alivardi was a skilled artillery strategist, but his soldiers were overrun by a strong force of **Marathas from Berar led by Raghoji I Bhonsle,** who had come to ravage and destroy the provinces of Bengal.

- In 1750, Alivardi faced a mutiny from his daughter's son, **Siraj ud-Daulah,** who captured Patna but shortly submitted and was pardoned.

- **Alivardi** also put down a mutiny by a few militant Afghans who were attempting to break Bihar away from his dominion.

6.7 Siraj Ud Daula

- During this time, the **British East India Company** was expanding its power in the **Indian subcontinent,** notably in Bengal; Siraj quickly began to detest the E**ast India Company**'s **politico-militar**y presence in Bengal.

- He was particularly enraged by the Company's apparent involvement in, and sponsorship of, a coup plot against him by some members of his own court.

- His allegations against the firm were essentially threefold.

- The British success in the **Carnatic wars** has made Siraj-Ud-Daula fearful about the British increasing influence in India.

- The Company's officials abused their trading rights in a way that harmed the nawab's finances.

- The British strengthened **Fort Williams** without Nawab's approval, infuriating him even more.

- When the **East India Company** began bolstering military power at **Fort William in Calcutta**, **Siraj ud-Daulah** ordered a halt. Because the Company disobeyed his orders, Siraj responded by seizing Calcutta (for a short time renamed Alinagar) from the British in June 1756.

- He marched to **Fort Williams**, grabbed 146 Britishers, and imprisoned them in a cramped chamber, resulting in the deaths of 123 Britishers.

- This is known as the **"Black Hole Tragedy of Calcutta."**

- Siraj ud-Daulah was betrayed by Mir Jafar, the leader of the Nawab's army, and lost the **Battle of Plassey on June 23, 1757.**

6.8 Mir Jafar

- **Syed Mir Jafar Ali Khan Bahadur** (1691–5 February 1765) was a military officer who served as the British East India Company's first dependent Nawab of Bengal.

- Many historians believe his reign to represent the beginning of the spread of British sovereignty of the Indian subcontinent in Indian history, as well as a critical milestone in the ultimate British dominance of huge regions of modern-day India.

- Jafar initially swore allegiance to Alivardi Khan's successor, **Siraj Ud Daulah**, but deserted him at the **Battle of Plassey.**

- After **Siraj Ud Daulah's** defeat and subsequent execution, Jafar realised his long-held aim of seizing the throne, and was propped up as a puppet Nawab by the East India Company.

- After taking control of **Bihar, Odisha,** and portions of Bengal in 1760, Mughal **Crown Prince Ali Gauhar** and his Mughal Army of 30,000 planned to depose **Jafar, Imad-ul-Mulk,** whom they had attempted to capture or murder by pushing into Awadh and Patna in 1759.

- However, the battle quickly engulfed the more forceful East India Company.

- **Prince Ali Gauhar** led the Mughals, who were assisted by **Muhammad Quli Khan, Hidayat Ali, Mir Afzal, and Ghulam Husain Tabatabai.**

- Their soldiers were reinforced by Shuja-ud-Daula and Najib-ud-men.

- During the Seven Years' War, the Mughals were joined by Jean Law and 200 Frenchmen and fought a campaign against the British.

6.9 Mir Qasim

- From 1760 until 1763, Mir Qasim was the Nawab of Bengal.

- He was established as **Nawab with the backing of the British East India** Company, replacing **Mir Jafar,** his father-in-law, who had previously been backed by the **East India Company** for his involvement in the British victory at the Battle of Plassey.

- **Mir Jafar,** however, eventually fell out with the **East India Company** and sought to forge an alliance with the **Dutch East India Company** instead.

- The British finally overcame the Dutch at Chinsurah and deposed Mir Jafar, who was replaced by **Mir Qasim.**

- Qasim later clashed with the British and battled them in Buxar.

- His defeat has been seen as a major factor for the British gaining control of wide swaths of **North and East India.**

- **Mir Qasim,** like **Siraj-ud-Daulah** before him, was an effective and popular ruler.

- Their **triumph at Buxar** established the East India Company as a formidable force in the Bengal province in a far more tangible way than their victories at Plassey seven years earlier and Bedara five years earlier.

- By 1793, the **East India Company** had abolished the Nizamat (Mughal suzerainty) and taken entire control of the old Mughal region.

6.10 British Colonisation

- By the late 18th century, the **British East India Company** had established itself as the region's dominant military force, defeating the French-allied **Siraj-ud-Daulah** in the **Battle of Plassey in 1757,** which was primarily caused by the defection of the Nawab's previously trusted commander Mir Jafar.

- The corporation took administrative control of the Nawab's domains, which included **Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa.**

- Following the **Battle of Buxar in 1765,** it was granted the authority to collect taxes on behalf of the Mughal Court.

- In 1793, Bengal, Bihar, and Orissa were incorporated into the Bengal Presidency and annexed into the British colonial empire.

- When the British Raj superseded Company control in India, the Indian revolt of 1857 legally abolished the authority of the Mughal court.

6.11 Conclusion

Due to its people' high living conditions and genuine wages, Bengal Subah has been dubbed the "Paradise of Nations" and the "Golden Age of Bengal." It accounted for 40% of all Asian imports into the Netherlands. The eastern section of Bengal was a significant exporter of silk and cotton textiles, steel, saltpetre, and agricultural and industrial goods, and it was a global leader in sectors like textile production and shipbuilding. The Anglo-Mughal War was also fought in this region.

7. Awadh - Rise of Autonomous States during Mughal Empire

Awadh, sometimes known as **Avadh or Oudh i**n British history books, is a territory and proposed state in the present Indian state of Uttar Pradesh, which was previously known as the **United Provinces of Agra and Oudh before independence.** It was founded as one of the twelve original Subhas under **Mughal emperor Akbar** in the 16th century, and it became a hereditary tributary polity around 1722, with Faizabad as its initial capital and **Saadat Ali Khan** as its first Subadar Nawab and progenitor of the Nawabs of Awadh dynasty. This article will explain to you about **Awadh - Rise of Autonomous States during Mughal Empire** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

7.1 Awadh

- **Awadh,** also known as **Avadh or Oudh** in **British historical texts**, is a region and proposed state in the modern Indian state of **Uttar Pradesh,** which was previously known as the United **Provinces of Agra and Oudh** before independence.

- Awadh is bordered on the southwest by the **Ganges Doab,** on the northwest by **Rohilkhand,** on the north by Nepal, and the east by **Bhojpur-Purvanchal.**

- The people who live there are **known as Awadhis.**

- The emergence of Awadh as a self-governing state in the eighteenth century was not an isolated event.

- The **Mughal imperial system** included Awadh as a key component.

- The **Mughal emperors** directly recruited higher officials such as the Nazim and the Diwan in both provinces.

- The **rise of Awadh** as a regional political system in the eighteenth century was aided by both economic and geographical factors.

7.2 Rise of Autonomous State - Awadh

- **Saadat Khan,** also known as **Burhan-ul-Mulk,** was the founder of the autonomous principality of Awadh. **Saadat Khan** belonged to the **Shia sect.**

- He was awarded an additional mansab as a result of his involvement in a plot against the **Sayyid brothers.**

- After being thrown out of court, he felt compelled to form a new sovereign state. Due to pressure from Nadir Shah, who demanded a large bounty from him, Saadat Khan committed himself.

- As **Nawab of Awadh**, he was replaced by **Safdar Jang.**
- The combined forces of the Nawab of Bengal, **Shuja-ud-daula**, and the **Mughal emperor's failure** to defeat the English forces at Buxar severely weakened the Nawab of Awadh's authority and prestige.
- The **Treaty of Allahabad** brought Awadh into the British dragnet. **Shuja-ud-daula** was allowed to keep Awadh proper under this treaty, but Kora and Allahabad were given to the Mughal emperor.
- The vulnerability of the Nawabi was brought into sharp focus in and after 1775.
- Ironically, it was during these years that the emergence of a **provincial cultural identity** centered around the new court and capital at Lucknow (the capital had been shifted from Fyzabad) became more visible than before.
- Despite the hostility of some of Shja's courtiers and the opposition faction of his brother Saadat Ali, the governor of Rohil Khand, Asaf-ud-succession daula's to the throne in 1775 went off without a hitch.
- **Lord Wellesley,** who arrived in 1798 but rejected the Awadh system, started a more forward policy.
- Wellesley used the Nawab's declaration of inability to pay the company's increased financial demands as a pretext to consider annexation.

7.3 Saadat Khan

- **Saadat Ali Khan** (1680–19 March 1739) was the son of Muhammad Nasir and the **Subahdar Nawab of Awadh** (Oudh) from 26 January 1722 until 1739.
- At the age of 25, he accompanied his father on the **Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb**'s final expedition against the Maratha in the Deccan, for which the emperor bestowed the title of Khan Bahadur.
- Burhan-ul-Mulk In 1722, Sa'adat Khan was named subadar of Awadh, and he established one of the most important states to emerge from the Mughal Empire's disintegration.
- The lush alluvial **Ganga plain** and the primary commerce route between north India and Bengal made Awadh an affluent province.
- **Burhan-ul-Mulk** was also in charge of the subadari, Diwani, and faujdari offices.
- In other words, he was in charge of the province of Awadh's political, financial, and military affairs.
- **Burhan-ul-Mulk** attempted to reduce **Mughal powe**r in the Awadh area by limiting the number of Mughal office holders (jagirdars).

- He also lowered the size of **jagirs** and filled empty jobs with his devoted slaves.
- In 1739, a Persian monarch named **Nader Shah** attacked India.
- **Saadat Ali Khan** led a force of 3000 cavalries from Awadh to assist **Mughal Emperor Muhammad** Shah. At Karnal, he joined Muhammad Shah's army.
- The Persian army battled with Khan's men. **Muhammad Shah** granted Saadat Ali Khan permission to engage the enemy.
- However, the conflict ended in a peace treaty, and Nader Shah was forced to pay **Muhammad Shah** a payment of rupees fifty lakhs.

7.4 Safdar Jung

- During the decline of the **Mughal empire,** Safdar Jung was a key player at the Mughal court.
- When he succeeded **Saadat Ali Khan I** (his maternal uncle and father-in-law) in 1739, he became the second **Nawab Vazier of Awadh.**
- All successive Nawabs of Oudh descended from Safdar Jung's male line.
- **Safdar Jang** proved to be a capable administrator.
- He was not only successful in maintaining control of Oudh, but he also managed to provide crucial support to the **Emperor Muhammad Shah,** who was debilitated.
- He was soon appointed governor of Kashmir as well, and he rose to prominence in the Delhi court.
- During **Muhammad Shah's** final years, he obtained entire control of the Mughal Empire's government.
- **Safdar Jung** became **Ahmad Shah Bahadur's Wazir-ul-Mumalik-i-Hindustan,** or Prime Minister of Hindustan after he ascended the throne in Delhi in 1748.
- He was also appointed governor of Ajmer and **"Faujdar"** of Narnaul.

7.5 Conclusion

The ancient Hindu kingdom of Kosala, with Ayodhya as its capital, is responsible for Awadh's political unity. Modern Awadh is only mentioned in history during the Mughal era of Akbar, in the late 16th century. The boundaries of the subah (imperial top-level province) and its internal divisions appear to have changed often from prehistory until Akbar's reign, and the term Oudh, or Awadh, appears to have been used to just one of the ancient divisions or Sarkars, roughly equivalent to old Pachhimrath. It appears to have been around the same size as the Province of Oudh at the time of British India's annexation in 1858.

8. Hyderabad - Rise of Autonomous States during Mughal Empire

In 1591 CE, the **Qutb Shahi ruler Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah** created the city of **Hyderabad. The** Hyderabad Kingdom, also known as Hyderabad Deccan, was an autonomous state in India's south-central Deccan region. Kilich Khan, also known as **Nizam-ul-Mulk,** was the founder of Hyderabad's **Asaf-Jah dynasty**. **Zulfikar Khan** was the first to propose the notion of establishing an independent kingdom in the Deccan. This article will explain to you about **Hyderabad - Rise of Autonomous States during Mughal Empire** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

8.1 The Mughal conquest of Hyderabad

- By the **mid-seventeenth century,** politics in the **Deccan** were poised for another seismic transformation.

- **Aurangzeb, the Mughal ruler,** spent most of his time in the **Deccan battling** local **Hindu and Muslim kingdoms** to establish and impose Mughal supremacy.

- Following **Shah Jahan's death** in 1666, Aurangzeb solidified his position in Delhi as Emperor and returned to the south.

- He spent most of his imperial rule in **military camps in the Deccan**, waging a nearly desperate battle to extend the empire beyond its greatest extent under Akbar.

- In his view, the most **valuable prize** was the **wealthy city of Hyderabad,** which was guarded by the reputedly invincible fortress of Golconda.

- In 1686, **Aurangzeb laid siege to Golconda** alongside his commanders **Khwaja Abid Siddiqi** (Qulich Khan) and the latter's son Ghazi-ud-Din Feroze Jung.

- **Aurangzeb was forced** to retreat in disgust after **Golconda** resisted for months. Aurangzeb returned in 1687 and laid siege to Fateh Maidan for 9 months.

- **Khwaja Abid Siddiqi** was killed in the conflict and buried in Kismatpur, near Attapur, Hyderabad.

- According to local folklore, the castle held out until the gates were opened at night by a **saboteur bribed by Aurangzeb**, **Abdullah Khan Pani**. Hyderabad's independence was overshadowed.

8.2 Rise of Autonomous State - Hyderabad

- The **decline of Mughal authority** and the development of the **Asaf Jahi dynasty** are closely intertwined.

- The **Asaf Jahis** came to Hyderabad and made it their own, just like the Mughals did with Delhi, refusing to be happy with being mere subedars of a greater country.

- The **Nizams ruled over the Deccan** as a consequence of a series of political changes.

- Following **Qalich Khan's death** in 1687, Aurangzeb's attention was drawn to his grandson Qamaruddin, who showed remarkable prowess as a fighter.

- At the age of 19, Aurangzeb bestowed upon him the title **Chin Qalich Khan** (Boy Swordsman).

- **Farukh Siyar,** the grandson of Aurangzeb, bestowed the higher **title of Nizam-ul-Mulk Fateh Jung** on Qamaruddin in 1713 and named him subedar of six provinces and **Faujdar of Karnataka.**

- Qamaruddin has shown to be a good administrator. However, the **Sayyid brothers,** two formidable generals, plotted to depose him as ruler of the Deccan.

- During the reign of **Muhammad Shah** (Mughal Ruler), the Sayyids deposed **Qamaruddin** as Faujdar of Muradabad and sent him to Malwa.

- The Sayyids, alarmed by his success, asked him to quit and relocate to another region.

- When the Sayyads perished, the new emperor, **Muhammad Shah**, promoted him to the prestigious **position of Vazir.**

- He later simplified Deccan's administrative apparatus and budget. Muhammed Shah eventually realized that fighting was futile and bestowed upon Qamarrudin the title of **Asaf Jah, or equal to Asaf,** who was the **Grand Vizier** or Prime Minister in King Solomon's court.

- **Asaf Jah** was the highest title that could be bestowed upon a Mughal Empire subject.

- Although **Qamaruddin became** an independent monarch for all practical reasons after that, he never formally declared independence from Delhi.

- As a result, the **Asaf Jahi dynasty,** which governed Hyderabad until 1948, was born.

8.3 Nizam-ul-Mulk (1724-48)

- Qilich Qamaruddin Khan, also known as Nizam-ul-Mulk, Asaf Jah, and Nizam I, was the first Nizam of Hyderabad.

- He was a loyal nobleman and **General of Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb.**

- Following Aurangzeb's death in 1707, the Mughal princes engaged in an accession war, during which **Asaf Jah** maintained a neutral posture, supporting none of **Aurangzeb's sons.**

- When **Bahadur Shah I** was victorious, Asaf Jah was assigned the governorship of Subah-(provinces), which changed until 1714 AD, when **Emperor Farrukhsiyar** assigned him the **Mughal Viceroy** of the Deccan administrator of six Mughal governorates in South India

- From 1719 to 1722 AD, he was engaged in establishing his authority over different Mughal governorates and resolving the ruckus created by the **Sayyid brothers.**

- Nizam-ul- Mulk's most notable achievement was the establishment of the princely state of Hyderabad.

- As V**iceroy of the Deccan,** the Nizam was in charge of the administrative and judicial departments, as well as the source of all civil and military power in the Deccan for the **Mughal empire.**

- All officials were appointed directly by him or in his name.

- He made his laws, created his army, flew his own flag, and established his own government.

- The **Nizam died in 1748**, at the age of 76, after a reign of 24 years. His cemetery is located at the mazaar of Shaikh Burhan-ud-din Gharib Chisti in Khuldabad, near **Aurangabad.**

- Once again, with the Nizam's death, the Deccan became the center of a power struggle between the British, French, Marathas, and the Nizam's own sons and grandchildren.

- **Nasir Jung, Muzaffar Jung**, and **Salabat Jung** all held the Subhedari of the Deccan for more than 14 years at a time.

- The **Mughal emperor** recognized them as **Subhedars,** but for unclear reasons, they were never awarded the titles of **Asaf Jah,** and therefore they are not referred to as Nizams.

8.4 Nizams of Hyderabad

- From the 18th through the 20th centuries, the Nizams ruled Hyderabad.

- The Nizam of Hyderabad (Nizam ul-Mulk, sometimes known as Asaf Jah) was the name of the state's king. Asaf Jah I inherited the title

Nizam, which was abbreviated from **Nizam-ul-Mulk,** which meant Administrator of the Realm.

- In 1724, he was the viceroy of the Great Mughal in the Deccan, the most powerful courtier in **Mughal India**, and the founder of the **"Nizam of Hyderabad."**

- **Mir Qamar-ud-Din Siddiqi (Asaf Jah I)**, a viceroy of the Deccan under the Mughal Empire from 1713 until 1721, created the Asaf Jahi dynasty.

- After Emperor Aurangzeb's death in 1707, he ruled the territory on an ad hoc basis. Asaf Jah became essentially independent of the **Mughal Empire in 1724.**

- And Hyderabad became a vassal of the **Maratha Empire,** losing a series of conflicts throughout the 18th century.

- The **Nizams** were allowed to rule their princely states as client kings after the **East India Company** gained supremacy over the Indian subcontinent.

- The Nizams held internal control in Hyderabad until September 17, 1948, when the state was admitted to the nascent Indian Union.

- Hyderabad prospered under the Nizams' control, due to the Golconda mines, which were the "sole supply of diamonds in the international market at the time," making the 7th Nizam the world's richest man.

8.5 Hyderabad - Post Independence

- The Hyderabad **"police operation"** in September 1948 was code-named **Operation Polo** by the then-independent Dominion of India against Hyderabad State.

- It was a **military operation** in which the **Indian Armed Forces** attacked the princely state governed by Nizam and incorporated it into the Indian Union.

- The **princely states of India,** while in theory enjoyed self-government inside their own borders, were subject to subsidiary alliances with the British at the time of **Partition in 1947,** granting them authority over their exterior ties.

- The British abandoned all such partnerships with the **Indian Independence Act of 1947,** leaving the states with the choice of complete independence.

- **Hyderabad signed** a standstill agreement with the Dominion of India in November 1947, which kept all existing agreements in place except for the stationing of Indian soldiers in the state.

8.6 Conclusion

Hyderabad saw tremendous cultural and economic expansion from 1724 to 1948. The Nizams were well-known patrons of literature, art, architecture, and cuisine, and were among the world's wealthiest people. In fact, Asaf Jah VII was ranked as the world's fifth wealthiest person in history. After India gained independence in August 1947, the Nizam chose not to join the Indian Union. His reign came to an end in September 1948, when the Indian Army, led by Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel, then Minister of Home Affairs and Deputy Prime Minister of India launched Operation Polo.

9. Carnatic - Rise of Autonomous States during Mughal Empire

The historic **Carnatic province,** in which **Madras (Chennai) was located**, stretched from the **Krishna to the Kaveri river.** The **'Mughal Carnatic'** was in the north, while the **'Maratha Carnatic'** was in the south, with the Maratha fortifications of Gingee and Ranjankudi. Their reign was a turning point in the history of the Carnatic and Coromandel Coast areas, as the Mughal Empire gave way to the Maratha Empire's increasing power and, eventually, the British Raj. This article will explain to you about **Carnatic - Rise of Autonomous States during the Mughal Empire** which will be helpful in Modern Indian History preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

9.1 Carnatic Under Mughals

- The Carnatic was one of the Mughal Deccan's subah (provinces), and as such, it was ruled by the **Nizam of Hyderabad.**
- However, just as the Nizam had been independent of Delhi in actuality, the **Deputy Governor of the Carnatic**, known as the **Nawab of Carnatic**, had liberated himself from the Viceroy of the Deccan's jurisdiction and **made his position hereditary**.
- Thus, without the agreement of his superior, the Nizam, **Nawab Saadutullah Khan** of Carnatic appointed his nephew **Dost Ali** as his successor.
- The forces of Aurangzeb reduced the northernmost portion of the Carnatic area towards the end of the 17th century, and **Zulfikar Ali**, Nawab of the Carnatic, was appointed with his seat at Arcot in **1692**.
- Meanwhile, the Marathas' strength was growing; in 1677, **Shivaji** subdued the final remains of the Vijayanagar authority in Vellore, Gingee, and Kurnool, while his brother **Venkoji**, who overthrew the Nayaks of Thanjavur in 1674, founded a dynasty that lasted for a century in that city.
- The fall of Delhi's supremacy following Aurangzeb's death resulted in more changes.

9.2 Rise of Autonomous State - Carnatic

- The Carnatic's Nawabs were the Rowthers. As a reward for his victory over the Marathas headed by Rajaram, Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb installed Zulfikhar Ali Khan as the first Nawab of the Carnatic with his seat at Arcot in 1692.
- When the Vijayanagara Empire fell apart in 1646, the **Hindu viceroys**

Nayaks, who had established themselves in Madurai, Tanjore, and Kanchi, were independent, only to become tributaries to the rulers of **Golconda and Bijapur**, who split the Carnatic between them.

- South of the Krishna River, the Carnatic Sultanate ruled over a huge area.

- From **Gingee to Arcot, the Nawab Saadatullah Khan I (1710–1722)** relocated his court.

- In 1736, **Dost Ali (1732–1740)**, his successor, invaded and seized Madurai.

- After the Nizam of Hyderabad established his power in South-Central India, the Nawab Saadet-Allah of Arcot declared independence

- The Maratha army descended on Arcot in 1740. In the **Damalcherry Pass**, they assaulted the Nawab, Dost Ali Khan.

- Dost Ali, one of his sons, Hasan Ali, and a number of significant figures perished in the ensuing conflict.

- This early accomplishment immediately raised the Maratha's status in the south.

- The Marathas marched from Damalcherry to Arcot, which surrendered without much fight.

- **Chanda Sahib** and his son were taken into custody and sent to Nagpur.

- In 1765, **Muhammad Ali Khan Wallajah (1749–1795)** took over as king.

- The French and English, who were fighting for dominance in the Carnatic at the time, took opposing sides in this conflict.

- Muhammed Ali ruled northern Carnatic until his death in 1795, thanks to the British triumph.

- However, the region has been exposed to additional problems in the meanwhile.

9.3 Annexation of Carnatic

- The Carnatic was greatly influenced by the expanding influence of the English and French, as well as their colonial conflicts.

- **Wallajah was significantly in debt** as a result of his backing for the English against the French and Hyder Ali.

- As a result, he was forced to hand over a large portion of his domain to the **East India Company.**

- **Paul Benfield**, an English businessman, gave one of his largest loans to the Nawab in order to enable him to attack and conquer the Maratha state of Tanjore with the help of the English.

- **Ghulam Muhammad Ghouse Khan (1825–1855)**, the thirteenth Nawab, died without issue, and the British acquired the Carnatic Nawabdom on the theory of lapse.
- Queen Victoria made **Azim Jah the first Prince of Arcot (Amir-e-Arcot) in 1867**, and he was awarded an indefinite tax-free pension.

9.4 Carnatic Sultanate

- The Carnatic Sultanate was a South Indian state that existed between around 1690 and 1855 and was ruled by the Nizam of Hyderabad until its extinction.
- Their first capital was in Arcot, which is now part of the Indian state of Tamil Nadu.
- Europeans coined the term "carnatic" to describe southern India between the Eastern Ghats and the Coromandel coast of Madras presidency, which is now Tamil Nadu state.
- The reign of Arcot may be split into two phases: **Nawayat (1710–1744) and Wallajah (1744- 1855).**
- **Zulfikhar Ali Khan** was the son of **Nawab Azad Khan**, the Mughal Empire's wazir, and his forebears also served the Mughal Empire.
- Aurangzeb, the Mughal Emperor, dispatched Commissioner-in-Chief Zulfikhar Ali Khan and his son Kam Baksh to combat the Marathas.
- Zulfikhar was awarded the Nawabship of Carnatic as a prize for defeating the Marathas. With the East India Company, he enjoyed a cordial connection.
- **Safdar Ali Khan**, the son of Ali Dost Khan, was known as the Nawab of Carnatic.
- He escaped to Vellore when he was assassinated. Because the region was in anarchy, he evacuated his family to Madras, where they were protected by the British.
- Murtuza Ali, his brother-in-law, took advantage of the chaos and assassinated Safdar Ali.

9.5 Conclusion

The Carnatic was a subah of the Mughal Deccan and thus came under the control of the Nizam of Hyderabad. Nawab Saadutullah Khan of Carnatic appointed his nephew Dost Ali as his successor without consulting his superior, the Nizam. Later, after 1740, the Carnatic's affairs deteriorated due to repeated struggles for its nawabship, providing an opportunity for European trading companies to directly intervene in Indian politics. Eventually, the Mughal Empire gave way to the growing dominance of the Maratha Empire and, finally, the British Raj.

Chapter 6: Ancient History

1. Harappan Civilisation

The Harappan Civilization's seals were one of their most remarkable and artistic creations. Since 1921, approximately 3500 seals have been discovered. **The Indus Valley Civilization** was the first known urban civilization, flourishing on the banks of the **Indus River** in the second half of the third millennium BCE. Since 1921, numerous sculptures, jewels, seals, potteries, and other artifacts have been excavated from these sites. In this article on Harappan Civilization seals, we will look at the nature and characteristics of the seals of the Indus Valley Civilization.

1.1 Seals of Harappan

- Small objects called seals were carved out of stones and burned to make them more durable in the ancient civilization of the Indus Valley.

- These seals were used for commercial purposes such as sealing the mouths of jars by pressing the seals against soft clays, creating clay tags for sacks that transported goods to various destinations, and trading activities.

- A large number of seals were discovered near the Indus Valley Civilization's port city of **Lothal.**

- Several Harappan seals have also been discovered in **Mesopotamia**, Central Asia, and along the Arabian Peninsula's coasts. Similarly, Mesopotamia seals were discovered in Lothal. This confirms that seals were used in trading and that trade took place between the two world's great ancient civilizations (Harappan and Mesopotamia civilizations).

- The seals discovered at various sites of the Indus Valley Civilization are of various sizes and shapes. The seals come in triangle, square, rectangle, and circle shapes. However, square-shaped seals outnumbered other shapes in the Harappan civilization.

- The majority of these seals were made of **Steatite,** a relatively soft stone found in river beds. Aside from that, copper, terracotta, chert, faience, and agate were used to make those seals. Archaeologists have also discovered gold and ivory seals from the Harappa sites in recent years.

- Some Harappan civilization seals were discovered on the dead bodies.

These seals have a threaded hole, implying that they were used as amulets or as a necklace.

- The majority of the seals have symbols or pictographic scripts on one side, which are thought to be Indus Valley Civilization scripts.

- The vast majority of these scripts were written from right to left. However, there are some seals where the scripts have been written in a bidirectional style (i.e. the right to left on one line and left to right on the next line).

- Animal impressions were carved on the surfaces of the seals on the other sides. Tiger, buffalo, elephant, rhinoceros, bison, goat, unicorn, ibex, humped bull, crocodile, and other animal motifs were used.

- A typical Harappan seal is square in shape, with a series of symbols along the top, an animal in the centre, and one or more symbols at the bottom.

1.2 Pashupati Seal

- **The Pashupati seal** is the most famous seal of the Indus Valley Civilization. It is a steatite seal with a carved human figure, possibly a deity, sitting cross-legged. Pashupati is the name of the deity.

- He is depicted in the seal wearing a three-horned headgear and surrounded by animals, including an elephant and a tiger on the left side, a rhinoceros and a buffalo on the right side, and two antelopes below the figure.

- The steatite seal measures 3.56 cm by 3.53 cm and has a thickness of 0.76 cm.

- It features a human figure seated on a platform and facing forward in the centre. The figure's legs are bent at the knees, with the heels touching and the toes pointing down. With the thumbs facing away from the body,

the arms extend outwards and lightly rest on the knees. The arms are adorned with eight small and three large bangles. A double band wraps around the waist and covers the chest with what appear to be necklaces. The figure is adorned with a tall and ornate headdress that features a central fan-shaped structure flanked by two large striated horns.

- The human figure is flanked by four wild animals: an elephant and a tiger on one side, a water buffalo, and an Indian rhinoceros on the other. Two deer or ibexes stand beneath the dais, their curved horns almost touching in the centre.

- There are seven Indus script symbols at the top of the seal, the last of which appears to be displaced downwards due to a lack of horizontal space.

1.3 Other Seals

Seal	Description
Unicorn Seal	One of the largest Seal
Bull Seal from Harappa	It featured the motif of a majestic zebu bull with wide curving horns. The zebu bull may represent the herd's leader who protects them, or it may represent a sacrificial animal. It featured the motif of a majestic zebu bull with wide curving horns. The zebu bull may represent the herd's leader who protects them, or it may represent a sacrificial animal.

1.4 Conclusion

The Harappan seal is possibly the most recognizable artifact of the Harappan or Indus Valley civilization. Seals, made of the stone steatite, frequently contain animal motifs and signs from an untranslated script. However, we can learn a lot about the lives of the people who lived in the region based on what they left behind–their houses, pots, ornaments, tools, and seals–in other words, archaeological evidence.

2. Indus Valley Civilisation

2.1 Introduction

- Indus Valley Civilization was the first major civilization in South Asia, which spread across a vast area of land in present-day India and Pakistan (around 12 lakh sq.km).

- The time period of the mature Indus Valley Civilization is estimated between BC. 2700- BC.1900 i.e., for 800 years. But early Indus Valley Civilization had existed even before BC.2700.

2.2 Indus Valley Sites

HARAPPA

- Seals out of stones
- Citadel outside on banks of river Ravi
- MOHENJODARO
- Great Bath, Great Granary, Dancing Girl, Man with Beard, Cotton, Assembly hall
- The term means " Mount of the dead"
- On the bank of river Indus
- Believed to have been destructed by flood or invasion(Destruction was not gradual).

CHANHUDARO

- Bank of Indus river. – discovered by Gopal Majumdar and Mackey (1931)
- Pre-Harappan culture – Jhangar Culture and Jhukar Culture
- Only cite without citadel.

KALIBANGAN

- At Rajasthan on the banks of river Ghaggar, discovered by A. Ghosh (1953)
- Fire Altars
- Bones of camel
- Evidence of furrows
- Horse remains (even though Indus valley people didn't use horses).
- Known as the third capital of the Indus Empire.

LOTHAL

- At Gujarat near Bhogava river, discovered by S.R. Rao (1957)
- Fire Altars
- Besides the tributary of Sabarmati
- Storehouse
- Dockyard and earliest port
- double burial
- Rice husk
- House had a front entrance (exception).

ROPAR

- Punjab, on the banks of river Sutlej. Discovered by Y.D. Sharma (1955)
- Dog buried with humans.

BANAWALI

- Haryana
- On banks of lost river Saraswathi
- Barley Cultivation.

DHOLAVIRA

- The biggest site in India, until the discovery of Rakhigarhi.
- Located in Khadir Beyt, Rann of Kutch, Gujarat. Discovered by J.P Joshi/Rabindra Singh (1990)
- 3 parts + large open area for ceremonies
- Large letters of the Harappan script (signboards).

2.3 Indus Valley Society and Culture

- The systematic method of weights and measures (16 and its multiples).
- Pictographic Script, Boustrophedon script – Deciphering efforts by I. Mahadevan
- Equal status to men and women
- Economic Inequality, not an egalitarian society
- Textiles – Spinning and weaving
- 3 types – burial, cremation and post-cremation were there, though burial was common.
- Majority of people Proto-Australoids and Mediterranean (Dravidians), though Mongoloids, Nordics etc were present in the city culture. Read more on the races of India.

2.4 Reasons for Decline of Indus Valley Civilization

Though there are various theories, the exact reason is still unknown.

As per a recent study by IIT Kharagpur and the Archaeological Survey of India, a weaker monsoon might have been the cause of the decline of the Indus Valley Civilization.

Environmental changes, coupled with a loss of power of rulers (central administration) of Indus valley to sustain the city life might be the cause (Fariservis Theory).

There might be a resource shortage to sustain the population, and then people moved towards south India.

Another theory by Dr Gwen Robbins Schug states that inter-personal violence, infectious diseases and climate change had played a major role in the demise of the Indus Valley Civilization.

Other theories

- Aryan Invasion: Mortimer Wheeler
- Tectonic Movements/ Flood – Robert Raikes
- Change of the course of river Indus – Lambrick.

3. Mahajanapadas

3.1 Janapadas

- The word janapada literally means the land where the jana[people] set its foot, and settled down.
- Excavations of janapadas, settlements, were found at Purana Qila in Delhi, Hastinapur near Meerut, and Atranjikhera, near Etah (the last two are in Uttar Pradesh).
- The people lived in huts, and kept cattle as well as other animals.
- They also grew a variety of crops — rice, wheat, barley, pulses, sugarcane, sesame and mustard.
- Special type of pottery found at these sites is known as Painted Grey Ware of simple lines and geometric patterns.

3.2 Mahajanpadas

- 2500 years ago, some janapadas became more important than others – mahajanapadas.
- Most had a capital city, many of these were fortified.
- The new rajas now began maintaining armies.
- Soldiers were paid regular salaries.
- Changes in agriculture around this time were seen.
- One was growing use of iron ploughshares. Here more grain could be produced than with wooden plough.
- Second, people began transplanting paddy. This meant that instead of scattering seed on the ground, saplings were grown and then planted in the fields.

3.3 Magadha

- Magadha enjoyed an advantageous geographical position in the age of iron, because the richest iron deposits were situated not far away from Rajgir, the early capital of Magadha.
- Bimbisara and Ajatasatru, the two powerful rulers who used all means to conquer other janapadas.
- Mahapadma Nanda, extended his control up to the north-west part of subcontinent.
- Magadha's capital was shifted from Rajagriha (present Rajgir) to Pataliputra (present Patna)

- Alexander of Macedonia reached upto the banks of river Beas in light of conquering Magadha, but his soldiers refused due to fear of Magadha's elephant and chariot armies.

4. Buddhism and Jainism

4.1 New Ideas

- Due to Mahajanapadas, cities were flourishing and lifestyles were changing in villages.
- Now here, many thinkers were trying to understand these changes in society. They want to know true meaning of life

4.2 Buddhism

- Buddha belonged to a small gana known as the Sakya gana, and was a kshatriya.
- He finally decided to find his own path to realisation, and meditated for days under a peepal tree at Bodh Gaya in Bihar, where he attained enlightenment. After that, he was known as the Buddha or the Wise One.
- Sarnath, near Varanasi, where he taught for the first time.
- He passed away at Kusinara.
- The Buddha taught that life is full of suffering and unhappiness. This is caused because we have cravings and desires.
- The Buddha described this as thirst or tanha. He taught that this constant craving could be removed by following moderation in everything.
- He also taught people to be kind, and to respect the lives of others, including animals.
- He believed that the results of our actions (called karma), whether good or bad, affect us both in this life and the next.
- Taught in the language of the ordinary people, Prakrit.
- He also encouraged people to think for themselves.
- After the death of Buddha, different Buddhist Councils were conveyed to discuss Buddhist doctrines.

4.3 Jainism

- Most famous thinker of the Jainas, Vardhamana Mahavira was a contemporary of Buddha.
- He was a kshatriya prince of the Lichchhavis, a group that was part of the Vajji sangha.
- He taught a simple doctrine: men and women who wished to know the truth must leave their homes.
- They must follow very strictly the rules of ahimsa, which means not hurting or killing living beings.

- It was very difficult for most men and women to follow these strict rules like remain nude or maintaining celibacy eg: farmers find it difficult to follow because they can't weed out insects.
- Ordinary people could understand the teachings because in Prakrit language.
- Jainism was supported mainly by traders.

4.4 Upanishads

- Same time or perhaps earlier than Buddha, other thinkers also tried to find answers to difficult questions like "life after death", performing of "ritual sacrifices" etc.
- There were something permanent that last even after death. They named it atman or the individual soul and the brahman or universal soul.
- They believed that ultimately, both the atman and the brahman were one.
- Many of their ideas were recorded in the Upanishads. These were part of the later Vedic texts.
- Recorded texts contain conversation between teachers and students, through simple dialogues.

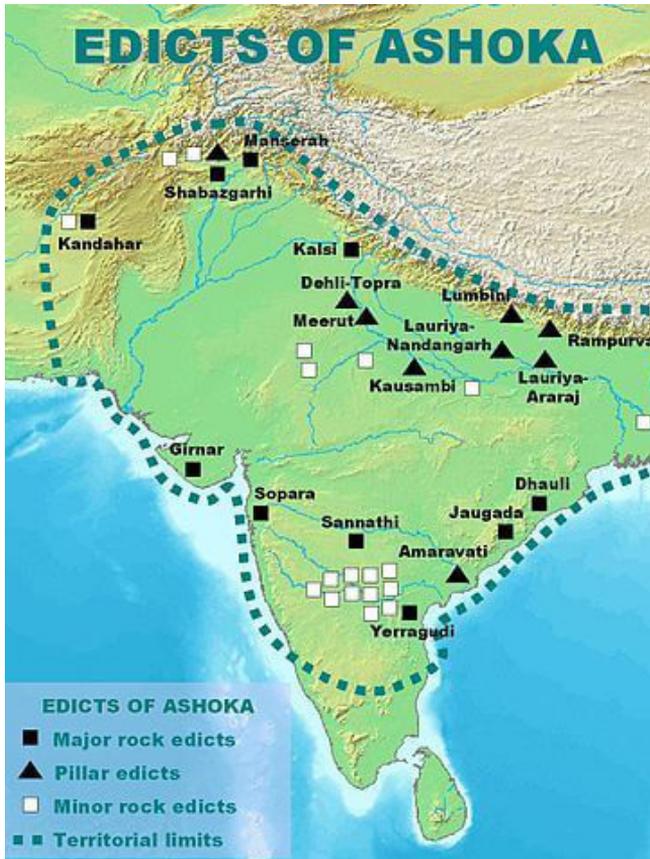# 5. Mauryan Empire

5.1 Mauryan Dynasty

- The Mauryas were a dynasty, more than 2300 years ago, with three important rulers — Chandragupta (founder), his son Bindusara, and Bindusara's son, Ashoka.

- Chandragupta was supported by a wise man named Chanakya or Kautilya. Many of Chanakya's ideas were written down in a book titled Arthashastra.

- Megasthenes was an ambassador who was sent to the court of Chandragupta by the Greek ruler of West Asia named Seleucus Nicator.

- Ashoka was one of the greatest rulers known to history and on his instructions inscriptions were carved on pillars, as well as on rock surfaces.

- Most of Ashoka's inscriptions were in Prakrit and were written in the Brahmi script.

- People in different parts of the empire spoke different languages.

5.2 Ruling the empire

- As the empire was so large, different parts were ruled differently.

- The area around Pataliputra was under the direct control of the emperor. This meant that officials were appointed to collect taxes.

- Spies were kept a watch on the officials.

- Other areas or provinces was ruled from a provincial capital such as Taxila or Ujjain.

- Here Royal Princes were often send as governors, local customs and rules were followed.

5.3 Ashoka's Dhamma

- After Kalinga war, he gave up war.

- He started to execute Dhamma

- Ashoka's dhamma did not involve worship of a god, or performance of a sacrifice. He felt it his duty to instruct his subjects through teachings of Budhha.

- He appointed officials, known as the dhamma mahamatta who went from place to place teaching people about dhamma.

- Besides, Ashoka got his messages inscribed on rocks and pillars, instructing his officials to read his message to those who could not read it themselves.

- Also sent messengers to spread ideas about dhamma to other lands, such as Syria, Egypt, Greece and Sri Lanka.

6. Gupta Empire

6.1 Guptas

- Information about their history through inscriptions and coins.

- Changragupta was followed by Samudragupta.

- Samudragupta, Gupta ruler (1700 years ago, ie AD 300). Harisena was his court poet.

- Chandragupta, his father, was the first ruler of the Gupta dynasty to adopt the grand title of maharaj- adhiraja, a title that Samudragupta also used.

- "Prashasti" = inscription 'in praise of'. Prashasti about Samudragupta was inscribed on the Asokan piller at Allahabad (Prayag).

- Four different kinds of rulers in different parts of India/Nepal/ Srilanka either surrendered to him or made alliances. (Eg: Aryavartha, Dakshinapatha, gana sanghas etc).

- Main centers of Guptas: Prayag (Allahabad, UP), Ujjain (Avanti, MP) and Pataliputra (Patna, Bihar).

- Samudragupta's son = Chandragupta II. Kalidasa and Aryabhata adorned his court. He overcame the last Sakas.

7. Post-Guptas

7.1 Harshavardhana

- Harshvardhana belonged to Pushyabhuti Dynasty which emerged when Gupta dynasty was fading.

- His court poet, Banabhatta, wrote his biography, the Harshacharita, in Sanskrit.

- Xuan Zang, spent a lot of time at Harsha's court and left a detailed account of what he saw.

- Harsha took over the kingdom of Kanauj, and then led an army against the ruler of Bengal.

- Although he was successful in the east, and conquered both Magadha and Bengal, he was not as successful elsewhere.

- He tried to cross the Narmada to march into the Deccan, but was stopped by a ruler belonging to the Chalukya dynasty, Pulakeshin II.

7.2 Pallavas, Chalukyas and Pulakeshin

- The Pallavas and Chalukyas were the most important ruling dynasties in south India during this period.

- The kingdom of the Pallavas around their capital, Kanchipuram, to the Kaveri delta, while that of the Chalukyas (Aihole, the capital) was centred around the Raichur Doab, between the rivers Krishna and Tungabhadra.

- The Pallavas and Chalukyas frequently raided one another's lands which were prosperous ones.

- The best-known Chalukya ruler was Pulakeshin II. We know about him from a prashasti, composed by his court poet Ravikirti.

- Ultimately, both the Pallavas and the Chalukyas gave way to new rulers belonging to the Rashtrakuta and Chola dynasties.

- Land revenue remained important for these rulers, and the village remained the basic unit of administration

- There were military leaders who provided the king with troops whenever he needed them. These men were known as samantas.

- The inscriptions of the Pallavas mention a number of local assemblies. These included the sabha, which was an assembly of brahmin land owners.

- And the nagaram was an organisation of merchants.

Chapter 7: Medieval History

1. Tripartite Struggle

- During the 8th century AD, a struggle for control over the Kannauj took place among three major empires of India namely the Palas, the Pratiharas and the Rastrakutas. The Palas ruled the eastern parts of India while the Pratiharas controlled the western India (Avanti-Jalaor region). The Rastrakutas ruled over the Deccan region of India. The struggle for control over Kannuj among these three dynasties is known as the *tripartite struggle in Indian history.*

- Both Dharmpala, the Pala king and Pratihara king, Vatsaraja clashed against each other for Kannauj. The latter emerged victorious but was defeated by Rashtrakuta King Dhruva I. However, the moment the Rashtrakuta King returned to his kingdom in south, Pala king Dharmapala took the advantage of the situation and captured Kannuj. But his control over Kannauj was temporary.

- The tripartite struggle thus started, lasted for two centuries and made all three dynasties weak in the long run. This resulted into the political disintegration of the country.

2. The Cholas

- Vijayalaya, who belonged to the ancient chiefly family of the Cholas from Uraiyur, captured the delta from the Muttaraiyar in the middle of the ninth century. He built the town of Thanjavur and a temple for goddess Nishumbhasudini there.

- The successors of Vijayalaya conquered neighbouring regions and the kingdom grew.

- Rajaraja I, considered the most powerful Chola ruler, became king in AD 985 and expanded the control.

- Rajaraja's son Rajendra I continued his policies and even raided the Ganga valley, Sri Lanka and countries of Southeast Asia, developing a navy for these expeditions.

- The big temples of Thanjavur and Gangaikonda- cholapuram, built by Rajaraja and Rajendra.

- Chola temples often became the nuclei of settlements which grew around them. And these temples were not only places of worship; they were the hub of economic, social and cultural life as well.

- Many of the achievements of the Cholas were made possible through new developments in agriculture.

- Settlements of peasants, known as *ur*, became prosperous with the spread of irrigation agriculture. Groups of such villages formed larger units called *nadu*.

- The village council and the nadu had several administrative functions including dispensing justice and collecting taxes.

- Rich peasants of the *Vellala* caste exercised considerable control over the affairs of the nadu under the supervision of the central Chola government.

3. Delhi Sultanate

The Delhi Sultanate was an Islamic empire based in Delhi that stretched over large parts of the Indian subcontinent for 320 years (1206–1526). Five dynasties ruled over the Delhi Sultanate sequentially: the Mamluk dynasty (1206–1290), the Khalji dynasty (1290–1320), the Tughlaq dynasty (1320–1414), the Sayyid dynasty (1414–1451), and the Lodi dynasty (1451–1526). It covered large swathes of territory in modern-day India, Pakistan, Bangladesh as well as some parts of southern Nepal

3.1 Slave Dynasty

Qutb-ud-din Aibak(1206-1210):

- Aibak was slave of Mohammedd Ghori. In Arabic language slave means Mumluk. Hence dynasty established by Qutbuddin Aibak is called slave dynasty or mumluk dynasty.

- He tried for internal consolidation only. His rule was for only four years.

- He constructed **Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque** in Delhi in commeroation of Islam's victory in India.

- He constructed **Adhai din ka-Jhompra mosque** in Ajmer.

- He started the construction of **Qutub minar**, dedicated to sufi saint Khwaja Qutbuddin Bhaktiyar kaki.

Iltutmish (1210-1236):

- His original name was Samshuddin Iliyas.

- He was son in law of Qutbuddin Aibak.

- His mongol policy saved India from attack of Chengis Khan.

- He shifted his capital from **Lahore to Delhi**.

- He completed the construction of the **Quwwat-ul-Islam** mosque and the Qutb Minar.

- He started feudalistic system *Iqtha/ iqthadari*

- He created pact of fourty muslim nobels as

- He started coinage system of Delhi Sultanate

- Tanka- silver coin

- Biranz- bronze coin

- Jittal- copper coin

- He nominated his daughter Raziya as his successor

Razia Sultana (1236-40):

- Raziya ascended the throne of Delhi by removing her brother Ruknuddin Feroz.
- First muslim women ruler in Indian history.
- She appointed an African(absynnian) slave **Yakuth as incharge of cavalary**.
- Her rule created differences with Chahalgani(40 nobels)
- She married Altuniya (governor of Bhatinda).
- Later both Razia and Altuniya were killed by coup of Chalghani.

3.2 Khilji Dynasty

Jalaluddinn Khalji (1290-96) :

- Jalaluddin khalji was Turk , but settled in Afghanistan.
- Jalal-ud-din won many battles and even in old age he marched out against the Mongol hordes and successfully halted their entry into India (1292).
- He gave his second daughter to Mongol leader Ulugh khan in marriage.
- Alauddin Khalji was son in law (also nephew) of Jalaluddin. Alauddin was governor of Kara.
- Alauddin invaded Devagiri kingdom and procured lot of wealth.
- Devagiri was first south Indian state to receive Islamic invasion.
- Later Alauddin murdered his uncle Jalaluddin and ascended the throne.

Alauddin Khalji (1296-1316):

- He defeated Waghela karnadeva of Gujrat and married his wife Kamaladevi.
- For the sake of Rani Padmini Alauddin attacked Chittore.
- Chittore was captured but Padmini committed Jauhar.
- Alauddin's Chittore campaign was described in the book *Padmavath* written by **Malik Muhammed Jayasi**.
- He framed regulations to control the nobles.
- **Malik Kafur**, basically an eununch became chief commander of
- Malik kafur started south Indian campaign. He defeated
   — Ramachandradeva- Devagiri
   — Prathaprudradeva- Kakatiya
   — Veera Bhallala 3 – Hoysala
   — Veera and Sundara – Pandya

3.2 Tughlaq Dynasty

Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq (1320-25) :

- Ghiyasuddin Tughlak founded Thuglaq dynasty in 1320
- He added Tughlaqabad city to Delhi.
- He replaced men with horses in courier system.
- He started Dawk chowkies.
- His son prince Jaunakhan defeated Prataparudradeva of Kakatiyas and annexed the kingdom in 1323.
- Ghiyasuddin died accidently in 1325AD.
- Jauna ascended the throne and took the title Muhammad bin Tughlaq.

Muhammad bin Tughlaq (1325-51):

- Muhammad bin Tughlalq was the most controversial personality in medieval Indian history.
- He was a learned, cultured and talented prince but gained a reputation of being merciless, cruel and unjust.
- He was very tolerant in religious matters.
- His innovative reforms brought him bad name, as they were not executed properly.
- During the time of Muhammad bin Tughlaq **Vijaynagar (1336**) and **Bahamani (1347**) emerged.
- **Ibn Batuta**, a Morocan traveller visited Tughlaq. He recorded his observation in his book *Qitab-ul-Rihla.* Later he was sent to china as ambassador of Tughlaq.
- He added **jahanpanah city** to Delhi.

Firoz shah Tughlaq (1351-89) :

- Born in 1309 and ascended the throne of Delhi after the demise of his cousin Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.
- He started the imposition of *Jaziy*
- He destructed Jwalamukhi temple.
- He protected sanskrit scriptures and started their translation into persian.
- He was the first to link rivers and provide irrigation with the help of four canals.
- He imposed water cess *haq-i-shrib*.
- He established the *Diwan-i-Khairat* — office for charity.

- He established the *Diwan-i-Bundagan* — department of slave

- He established Sarais (rest house) for the benefits of merchants and other travellers

- He adopted the **Iqtadar**i framework.

- During rule of Muhammad shah Timur invaded and ruined Delhi. (1398)

3.4 Sayyid Dynasty

- Sayyids (1414-1451) AD:

- Timur appointed **Khizr Khan** as governor of Multan. He captured Delhi and founded the Sayyid dynasty in 1414.

- Kzhir Khan is succeeded by Mubarak shah and Muhammad Shah.

- Muhammad Shah is succeeded by Allam Shah.

- **Allam Shah** was philosopher. He voluntarily abducted throne to Bahalul Lodi and led peaceful life in small town outside Delhi.

- **Bahalul Lodi** started Lodi dynastic rule.

3.5 Lodhi Dynasty

- Lodi Dynasty (1451-1526)AD:

- Bahalul Lodi was founder of Lodi dynasty.

- Lodis were originally from Afghanasitan.

- Bahalul Lodi is succeeded by **Sikandar Lodi (1489-1517)**.

- He constructed Agra city and shifted the capital from Delhi to Agra in 1504.

- He destroyed many Hindu temples and imposed many restrictions on the Hindus.

- Sikandar Lodi was succeeded by his son **Ibrahim Lodi**.

- His close relatives **Allam khan Lodi and Daulat Khan Lodi invited Babar to invade India.**

- Krishnadevraya was emperor of Vijayanagara in southern India during this time.

- Babar defeated and killed Ibrahim Lodi in the **first battle of Panipat in 1526 AD.**

- Babar started Mughal rule in India from 1526 AD

4. Vijayanagar Empire

In 1336, Vijayanagar kingdom was established by **Harihara and Bukka**, who were two brothers and served in the army of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq. **They broke away from the Delhi Sultanate** and established an independent state in Karnataka and established the capital city Vijayanagar on the banks of river Tungabhadra in 1336.

4.1 Krishnadevaraya (1509-1529)

- **Krishnadevaraya** was the greatest ruler of Vijayanagar empire.

- He was a great commander and an efficient administrator. He fought a series of war with the independent kingdoms that came on the ruins of the Bahamani kingdom, maintained law and order and dealt with the Portuguese influence in the Deccan.

- He completely shattered the Adil Shahi forces of Bijapur first and attacked Gulbarga and set free three Bahamani princes who were imprisoned there. He helped them in recovering the throne of Gulbarga and Krishna Deva himself took the title of *Yavanarajya sthapanacharya*.

- He started his eastern campaign in 1513AD.

- Udayagiri was the first fort to be captured by Krishnadevaraya.

- He defeated Prataparudra Gajapati of Orissa.

- He married Gajapati princess Tukkadevi or Annapurnadevi.

- Raichur campaign in 1520 was his last campaign. He defeated Ismail Adil shah.

- Portugese governor Alfanso de Alburque concluded treaty with Krishnadevaraya.

- In 1510 Portugese captured Goa from Bijapur Sultan.

- He was a great patron of literature and art and he was known as **Andhra Bhoja**

- Eight eminent scholars known as **Ashtadiggaja**s were at his royal court.

- Due the death of his son, Krishnadevaraya received nervous breakdown and passed away **in 1529.**

- After his death, Achyutadeva and Sadashivraya succeeded the throne.

- During the reign of Rama Raya, the **Bahaman confederacy** (combined forces of Bijapur, Ahmadnagar, Golkonda and Bidar) defeated him (Ramaraya) at the **Battle of Talaikote** in 1565.

- Rama Raya was imprisoned and executed. The city of Vijayanagar

was destroyed. This battle was generally considered to mark the end of the Vijayanagar Empire.

- However, the Vijayanagar kingdom existed under **the Aravidu dynasty** for about another century.

5. Mughal Empire

The Mughals were descendants of two great lineages of rulers. **Babur: founder of the Mughal Empire in India** was related to Timur from his father's side and to Chengiz Khan through his mother**.** Babur succeeded his father as the ruler of Farghana (Uzbekistan), but soon lost his kingdom. Financial difficulties, apprehension of Uzbek attack on Kabul and invitation of Daulat Khan Lodi to invade India forced Babur to look towards India.

5.1 Babur (1526-1530 AD)

- In 1526, Babur's forces defeated Ibrahim Lodi in the First Battle of Panipat.

- The forces of Babur and Rana Sanga met at **Khanwa**, a place near Fatehpur Sikri. Rana Sanga was defeated in **1527** and once again the superior military tactics of Babur succeeded. With the defeat of Rana the biggest challenge in north India was shattered. (**Battle of Khanwa 1527**).

- Though the Mewar Rajputs received great shock at Khanwa, **Medini Rai** at Malwa was still threatening to challenge the authority of Babur.

- In the neat year Babur defeated Medini Rai in Chanderi. (**Battle of Chanderi 1528**).

- In the subsequent year Babur encountered Afghans (Ibrahim Lodi's brother Mohammad Lodi) , and defeated them in **Battle of Ghagra 1529**.

- Babur died in the year 1530AD.

5.2 Humayun (1530-40, 1555-56)

- After the death of Babur in 1530, his son Humayun succeeded him.

- Humayun means "fortune" but he remained the most unfortunate ruler of the Mughal Empire.

- Humayun, a cultured and learned person, was not a soldier like his father.

- He was faced with the problems of a weak financial system and the predatory Afghans.

- The growth of Afghan power in the regions around Bihar and Uttar Pradesh under the leadership of **Sher Khan (later Sher Shah)** made Humayun to initiate action. Defeating the Afghans at Daurah in 1532 Humayun besieged the powerful fort of Chunar.

- However in 1539 Sher Shah Suri defeated Humayun in **Battle of Chausa.** Somehow Humayaun managed to escape from battle ground.
- In the next year Sher Shah Suri confronted Humayun in Kannauj and defeated him completely**. (Battle of Kannauj 1540)**
- Sher Shah started his independent rule.
- In 1555, Humayun defeated the Afghans and recovered the Mughal throne. After six months, he died in 1556 due to his fall from the staircase of his library.

5.3 Akbar (1556-1605)

- Akbar was only thirteen years old at the time of Humayun's death. When his father died, Akbar was at Kalanaur in Punjab and therefore his coronation took place in Kalanaur itself in 1556.
- It was his tutor and Humayun's favourite and confidant **Bairam Khan**, who served as the regent of the Mughal emperor from 1556 to 1560.
- As a conqueror Akbar triumphed all over North India. The first four years of Akbar's rule saw the expansion of the Mughal empire from Kabul to Jaunpur, including Gwalior and Ajmer, under his regent Bairam Khan.
- One of the major achievements of his regency period was the defeat of Hemu and the Afghan forces in the **second battle of Panipat in 1556,** who were posing a serious threat to the Mughal Empire.
- He abolished the pilgrim tax and jiziya
- In 1575, he ordered for the construction of **Ibadat Khana** (House of worship) at his new capital Fatepur Sikri.
- Akbar invited learned scholars from all religions like Hinduism, Jainism, Christianity and Zoroastrianism.
- In 1582, he promulgated a new religion called **Din Ilahi** or Divine Faith. It believes in one God. It contained good points of all religions.
- He propagated a philosophy of **Sulh-i-Kul** (peace to all).
- In 1582, he discontinued the debates in the Ibadat Khana as it led to bitterness among different religions
- Badauni, a contemporary author, was bitter critic of Akbar's religious experiment.
- Sheikh Mubarak was religious guru of Akbar.
- Akbar's new religious policy was drafted by Abul Faizi.

5.4 Jehangir (1605-1627)

- Akbar was succeeded by his son Salim with the title Nur-ud-din Jahangir.

- He was Akbar's son by a Rajput wife.

- His ascension was challenged by his eldest son Prince Khusrau who staged a revolt with the blessings of Sikh Guru Arjun Dev.

- Prince Khusrau was defeated, captured and blinded, while Guru Arjun Dev was executed.

- In 1608 Ahmad Nagar in the Deccan had declared independence under Malik Ambar.

- During the reign of Jahangir there was no addition to the Mughal territory in Deccan.

- Jahangir's reign witnessed the visit of two Englishmen – **William Hawkins** and **Sir Tomas Roe**. While the former could not get the consent of the Emperor for establishing an English factory in India, the latter, sent as ambassador by King James I, succeeded in securing permission to establish a British factory at Surat.

- In 1611, Jahangir married Mehrunnisa who was known as **Nur Jahan** (Light of World).

- Nur Jahan dominated the royal household and set new fashions based on Persian traditions. She encouraged Persian art and culture in the court.

- Nur jahan became the real power behind the throne.

- The political intrigues that prevailed because of Nur-Jahan, led Prince Khurram (Shah Jahan) to rebel against his father.

- Nur-Jahan, who ruled the empire for ten years, lost her power and influence after Jahangir's death.

- Jahangir died near Lahore (on the way from Kashmir to Lahore). He was buried in Lahore.

5.5 Shah Jahan (1627-1658)

- After Jahangir's death in 1627, Shah Jahan reached Agra with the support of the nobles and the army and ascended the throne.

- Shah Jahan launched a prolonged campaign in the northwest frontier to recover **Kandahar** and other ancestral lands. But was unable to control Kandhar.

- His **Deccan policy was more successful**. He defeated the forces of Ahmadnagar and annexed it. Both Bijapur and Golkonda signed a treaty with the emperor.

- Shah jahan defeated Shivaji's father shahji Bhonsle.
- In 1631 Shah Jahan's wife Mumtaz mahal passed away at Burhanpur. In memory of her Shah jahan started constructing Musoleum at Agra (Taj mahal).
- In his reign the famous Peacock Throne was made for the King.
- Europeans like **Bernie**r (French physician and traveller), **Tavernier** (French gem merchant and traveller), **Mandelslo** (German adventurer and traveller), Peter Mundy (English Trader) and **Manucc**i (Italian writer and traveller) visited India during the reign of Shah Jahan and left behind detailed accounts of India.
- During the last days of Shah Jahan, there was a contest for the throne amongst his four sons.

5.6 Aurangzeb (1658-1707)

- He assumed the title Alamgir, World Conqueror.
- His military campaigns in his first ten years of reign were a great success. He suppressed the minor revolts. But he faced serious difficulties in the latter part of his reign
- The Jats and Satnamis and also the Sikhs revolted against him. These revolts were induced by his harsh religious policy.
- Aurangazeb was basicallu puritan (religious) in nature. He imposed jijiya on Hindus.
- He was influenced by Nakshabandi sufi order.
- Prince Akbar rebelled against his father Aurangazeb, in this connection ninth Guru of Sikhs Guru Tegbahadur was executed by Aurangazeb.
- Deccan policy: The Deccan policy of Aurangzeb was motivated by the policy of containing the growing influence of the Marathas, the rebellious attitude of the Shia kingdoms of Deccan like Golkonda and Bijapur and to curtail the rebellious activities of his son Akbar who had taken refuge in the Deccan. Aurangzeb came to the Deccan in 1682 and remained in the Deccan till his death in 1707.
- Aurangazeb was severely tested by the Marathas till his death in 1707 as the sons of Shivaji continued the rebellion.
- The **death of Aurangzeb in 1707** marked a watershed in Indian history as the Mughal empire virtually came to end even though the weak successors of Aurangzeb held the throne the next 150 years.

Chapter 8: Introduction to Art and Culture

1. Visual Arts

Visual Art is an umbrella term used for various artistic disciplines that generate emotions through skills. Painting, drawing, printmaking, sculpture, pottery, photography, video, filmmaking, design, crafts, and architecture are examples of visual arts. Many creative fields, such as performing arts, conceptual art, and textile arts, include elements of visual and other genres of art. India has a rich heritage of visual arts including architecture, sculpture, painting, carvings, etc which date back to the dawn of human civilization.

1.1 What are Visual Arts?

- These are the arts that are visually appealing and elicit an emotional response through the use of talent and imagination.
- They encompass the oldest forms, such as painting and drawing, as well as the arts that arose as a result of technological advancements, such as sculpture, printing, photography, and installation art.

1.2 Classification of Visual Arts

Drawing

- Drawing is the process of creating an image, illustration, or graphic utilizing a number of online and offline tools and techniques.
- Line drawing, hatching, cross-hatching, random hatching, shading, scribbling, stippling, and blending are the most common drawing methods.
- Drawing and painting have been practiced for many thousands of years. Figured art from the Upper Paleolithic period dates from around 40,000 to 35,000 years ago.
- Even older are non-figurative cave paintings made out of hand stencils and basic geometric forms. Animal depictions in Paleolithic caves have been discovered in places including Lascaux, France, and Altamira, Spain in Europe, Maros, Sulawesi in Asia, and Gabarnmung, Australia.
- Ink drawings on papyrus, frequently portraying humans, were utilized

as models for painting and sculpting in ancient Egypt. Drawings on Greek vases, which were initially geometric, evolved into the human form with the introduction of black-figure pottery in the 7th century BC.

Painting

- The technique of putting pigment suspended in a carrier (or medium) and a binding agent (a glue) to a surface (support) such as paper, canvas, or a wall is referred to as painting.

- When used in an artistic sense, however, it refers to the employment of this action in conjunction with the drawing, composition, or other aesthetic concerns to communicate the practitioner's expressive and conceptual aim.

- Painting may also be used to represent spiritual motifs and ideals, with examples ranging from legendary figures depicted on pottery to the human body itself.

- Prehistoric cave paintings may be seen in several of the Bhimbetka rock shelters, with the oldest dating back 10,000 years.

- Animals, early indications of dancing, and hunting are among the subjects shown in these cave paintings.

Printmaking

- Printmaking is the process of generating an image on a matrix for aesthetic purposes, which is subsequently transferred to a two-dimensional (flat) surface using ink (or another form of pigmentation).

- Unless it's a monotype, the same matrix can be used to make several copies of the print. Woodcut, line engraving, etching, lithography, and screen printing (serigraphy, silk screening) are the most common techniques (also known as media) used historically, although there are many others, including current digital processes.

- Typically, the print is produced on paper, although other mediums like cloth and vellum, as well as more contemporary materials, have been used.

- Photography

- Photography is the art of capturing images via the use of light.

- A timed exposure records the light patterns reflected or emitted by objects on a sensitive media or storage chip.

- Mechanical shutters or electronically timed photon exposure into chemical processes or digitizing equipment called cameras are used in the process.

Architecture

- The process and result of planning, designing, and constructing buildings or other structures are known as architecture.
- Architectural works, in the form of structures, are frequently regarded as cultural emblems and works of art. The architectural achievements of historical civilizations are frequently associated with them.
- The Great Bath of Mohenjo-Daro is an example of Harappan Architecture architecture which dates back to several thousand years.

Filmmaking

- Filmmaking is the process of creating a motion picture, from initial conception and research to scriptwriting, shooting and recording, animation or other special effects, editing, sound, and music work, and finally distribution to an audience.
- It encompasses documentary, theatre, and literature in film, poetic or experimental practices, and is frequently used to refer to video-based processes as well.

Computer Art

- Traditional visual arts mediums are no longer the only medium available to visual artists. Since the 1960s, computers have been an increasingly frequent instrument in the visual arts.
- Capturing or producing pictures and shapes, altering those images and forms (including exploring different compositions), and final rendering or printing are all examples of uses (including 3D printing).
- Any work of art in which computers were used in the creation or exhibition is known as computer art.
- An image, music, animation, video, CD-ROM, DVD, video game, website, algorithm, performance, or gallery installation can all be examples of such art.

Sculpture

- The sculpture is a three-dimensional work of art made by shaping or mixing hard or plastic material, sound, or text, and or light, most typically stone (rock or marble), clay, metal, glass, or wood.
- Some sculptures are found or carved directly; others are welded, moulded, or cast after being constructed, erected, and fired. Paintings are frequently used on sculptures.
- The Dancing Girl from MohenJo-Daro dating back to 2500 BC and Ashoka Pillar at Sarnath dating back to the 3rd Century B.C. are famous sculptures from ancient India.

1.3 Significance

Cultural Preservation

- Visual works of art convey a narrative and represent the changing human experience, from prehistoric cave paintings to current street art. It captures a moment in time that the artist wants to remember.
- Visual artists provide a window into history and society that can't be conveyed any other way.
- For present and future generations, artists conserve the rich legacy, traditions, beliefs, norms, practices, and conventions of different civilizations.
- Art history gives a window into the growth and collapse of societies, as well as insight into what lessons may be gained from the past.

Inspiration and Expression

- Artistic expression, rather than language, can be a more powerful and global way of communication.
- When youngsters experience the thrill of using crayons, watercolors, finger paint, and clay at a young age, they realize the value of visual arts.
- Creativity, originality, and imagination are crucial for innovation, societal advancements, and scientific breakthroughs, and they are all fostered by making art.
- Visual artists lead the way by creating new and intriguing art forms, techniques, and imagery that may please, shock, or offend the audience.

Social and Political Activism

- In our culture, an artist's responsibilities include speaking out against social injustice and fighting for long-term reform.

Historical Interpretation

- According to Cornell University, "the relevance of visual arts extends beyond comprehending, celebrating, and documenting history via the production of artworks such as the "Coronation of Napoleon."
- Paintings inspired by the Bible that represent real or metaphorical incidents are known as history paintings.

1.4 Conclusion

Visual art is an important part of the human experience since it reflects the world and the moment we live in. Art has the power to help us comprehend our history, culture, lives, and the experiences of others in ways that no other medium can.

2. Indian Architecture

Indian Architecture is deep-rooted in its history, culture, and religion. From the Indus Valley Civilization to the modern era, architecture, sculpture, and pottery have been subjected to changes. Here we will discuss in detail Indian Architecture, which will be useful for UPSC IAS Exam preparation.

2.1 Architecture

The word 'architecture' comes from the Latin word 'tekton,' which literally means "builder." The study of architecture originated when early man began to construct his shelter to dwell in.

2.2 Indian Architecture

- The evolution of Indian art and architecture is fascinating. The structures and sculptures have their own story to tell, from the ancient Indus Valley Civilisation through British authority.

- The growth of Indian architecture and art reflects the rise and fall of large empires, the invasion of foreign rulers who gradually became indigenous, the fusion of many cultures and styles, and so on.

2.3 Harappan Architecture

- The architecture of the Harrapans is seen to be ahead of its time.

- **Mohenjo-Daro and Harappa** were well-planned grid towns with wide main roadways and smaller planes intersecting at right angles.

During the Indus Valley Civilization, brick grid patterns, a well-defined city plan, immaculate drainage systems, lofty city walls, and multi-story dwellings were all common architectural elements.

- Every piece of the building served a definite purpose, and the city as a whole was more useful than attractive.

2.4 Mauryan and Post Mauryan Architecture

- Structures, sculptures, and buildings that were carved out of a single solid natural rock, exactly where it stood, are known as rock-cut architecture.

- India is most recognized for its rock-cut architecture, which has over 1500 documented constructions of international significance. The Barabar Caves in Bihar, which were found in the 3rd century BC (Mauryan Period), are the earliest of them.

- The **Ellora Caves, the Ajanta Caves**, and numerous of the **Mahabalipuram sculptures** are also world-famous rock-cut sculptures.

- In the post-Mauryan period, temple architecture also flourished in different parts of India.

2.5 Temple Architecture

- One of the most essential components of Indian architecture is temple building. The Nagara, or Northern style, the Dravida, or Southern-style, and the Vesara, or mixed style, are the three main types of ancient Indian temple building.

- The ornamentation is a key aspect or motif that runs through all temple buildings. The complex intricacies of figurative sculptures and architectural components in ancient Indian temples were primarily focused on ornamentation.

- Even though all three genres were distinct in their way, they shared several characteristics.

- Every temple, for example, featured a garbha-griha or sanctum sanctorum that housed the temple's god. Each garbha-griha was surrounded by a circumambulation route. Gopuras, sikharas, and gates were among the other characteristics.

2.6 Indo-Islamic Architecture

- India's architecture saw numerous alterations during the medieval period. Many architectural ideas and methods were merged into existing buildings with the entrance of Muslims in India, giving rise to Indo-Islamic architecture.

- **Mughal architecture and Architecture of the Delhi Sultanate or Imperial Style** are two distinct styles that merged Hindu and Islamic architecture.

- The Mughal architecture combines Central Asian, Islamic, Persian, Arabic, and Turkish architectural traditions in a unique way. Huge bulbous shaped domes, enormous halls, gigantic entrances, and elegant minarets distinguish it.

- The Imperial Style, on the other hand, is distinguished by its ornately carved arches and domes. Floral designs were popular, as were Hindu themes such as lotuses and swastikas contrasted with Quran passages.

2.7 British Indo-Saracenic Architecture

- The British adopted Indo-Saracenic architecture in India in the second part of the nineteenth century.

- This architectural style can be seen in public and government buildings. It was inspired by Indo-Islamic architecture in India as well as worldwide influences such as gothic revival and neo-classical forms.

- This architecture may be seen at the Madras High Court in Chennai and the Victoria Terminus in Mumbai.

2.8 Shift from Ancient to Modern Architecture

- Massive housing requirements have arisen as a result of the rising economy and population.
- Indian architecture has changed as a result of globalization and exposure to the outside world. Glass and designer shapes and designs now make up the majority of constructions.
- With each new project, architects and designers push the boundaries of style in an attempt to express their originality.
- The luxury home sector in India is now one of the fastest expanding divisions of the Indian economy. Luxury, on the other hand, is subjective.
- Luxury living is more about how well you use your space and the quality of design than it is about size or substance.

2.9 Difference between Architecture and Sculpture

Point of Difference	Architecture	Sculpture
Size and Scope	The design and construction of a building are referred to as architecture.	Sculptures are three-dimensional works of art that are relatively tiny.
Materials Used	Materials used include stone, wood, glass, metal, sand, and a variety of other materials.	A single type of material is generally used to create a single piece of sculpture.
Principle	Engineering and engineering mathematics are studied. It needs precise and comprehensive measurements.	It requires creativity and imagination, and it may not be as reliant on precise measurements.
Example	Taj Mahal, Red Fort, etc.	Bearded Priest, Dancing Girl, etc.

2.10   Conclusion

Indian art dates back to the dawn of civilization. Several buildings have now become well-known tourist sites. India has long been known for its unique patterns and art. On the Indian subcontinent, several historical relics have been discovered. As a result, the environment is said to be ideal for conserving historical relics.

3. Indian Sculpture

Indian Sculptures were the favored medium of artistic expression in the country. The subject matter of Indian sculpture was almost invariably abstracted human forms that were used to instruct people in the truths of the Hindu, Buddhist, or Jain religions. Here we will discuss in detail the Indian Sculpture, which will be helpful for UPSC IAS Exam preparation.

3.1 Indian Sculpture

- Sculpture on the Indian subcontinent mostly consists of stone, metal, or terracotta sculpture, partially due to the Indian subcontinent's climate, which makes long-term survival of organic materials problematic.

- There was clearly a lot of painting and sculpting in wood and ivory throughout these times, but only a few pieces have survived.

- By the beginning of the Common Era, all of the major Indian faiths had evolved the use of religious sculpture, after a shaky start, and the use of stone was becoming more common.

3.2 Bronze Age Sculpture

- The Indus Valley civilization (3300–1700 BCE) produced the first documented sculpture in the Indian subcontinent. Among them is the well-known tiny bronze **Dancing Girl.**

- Bronze and stone figures, on the other hand, are uncommon, outnumbered by ceramic figurines and stone seals, which typically portray animals or deities in exquisite detail.

3.3 Pre-Mauryan Sculpture

- The art of the Indus Valley Civilisation appears to contain some very early portrayals of deities, but the millennium after that, overlapping with the Vedic period saw several Tirthankara artifacts.

- It has been hypothesized that early Vedic religion was only concerned with the worship of "elementary forces of nature" through complex sacrifices, which did not lend themselves well to anthropomorphological depictions.

3.4 Mauryan Period Sculpture

- Sculpture dominates the Mauryan Empire's surviving art, which reigned, at least in principle, over most of the Indian subcontinent from 322 and 185 BCE.

- There was imperial court-sponsored art that the emperors, particularly

Ashoka, admired, and then there was a "popular" style made by everyone else.

- The remains of the royal palace and the city of Pataliputra, a monolithic rail at Sarnath, the Bodhimandala or the altar resting on four pillars at Bodhgaya, the rock-cut chaitya-halls in the **Barabar Caves near Gaya**, the non-edict bearing and edict bearing pillars, the animal sculptures crowning the pillars with animal and botanical reliefs decorating the abaci of the capitals.

3.5 Satavahana Sculptures

- Between the 2nd century BCE until the 2nd century CE, the Satavahana dynasty dominated much of the Deccan and occasionally adjacent provinces, notably Maharashtra.

- They were a Buddhist dynasty, and the Sanchi and Amaravati Stupas, as well as several rock-cut structures, are the most notable examples of their sculptural patronage.

- Several Buddhist cave temples arose along with Maharashtra's coastal areas between the 2nd century BCE and the 2nd century CE under the Satavahanas, and these cave temples were decorated with Satavahana era sculptures, providing not only some of the earliest art depictions but also evidence of ancient Indian architecture.

- The Amaravati school of Buddhist art thrived under the Satavahanas, and many limestone sculptures and tablets that were formerly plastered Buddhist stupas give a fascinating look into one of the three major Buddhist sculpture centers, along with Mathura and Gandhara.

3.6 Early South Indian Sculptures

- The stone sculpture arrived far later in South India than in the north, and the oldest period is only represented by a **Lingam in Gudimallam,** in the southern point of Andhra Pradesh, with a standing image of Shiva.

Kushana Sculptures

- The advent of substantial Buddhist arts in the form of Mathura, Gandhara, and Amaravathi schools of art highlights Kushan art.

- **Mathura art** flourished in the ancient city of Mathura, with Buddhist and Jain sculptures primarily made of red sandstone.

- **Gandhara art** is an artistic manifestation of Greco-Buddhism, a cultural syncretism between Classical Greek culture and Buddhism that developed in Central Asia over nearly 1000 years, between Alexander the Great's conquests in the 4th century BCE and the Islamic conquests in the 7th century CE.

Gupta Sculptures

- Gupta art is a type of art that flourished under the Gupta Empire, which governed most of northern India from 300 to 480 CE, and which survived in a greatly diminished form until around 550 CE.

- For all major religious groups, the Gupta period is recognized as a classic pinnacle and golden age of North Indian art.

- Even though the painting was apparently ubiquitous, the majority of the surviving works are religious sculptures.

- During this time, Hindu art saw the birth of the iconic carved stone deity, while Buddha-figure and Jain tirthankara figure manufacturing continued to increase, the latter on a vast scale.

3.7 Other Pre - Medieval Age Sculptures

- The Chandela dynasty built the Khajuraho temples, a complex of Hindu and Jain temples, during the 9th and 11th centuries.

- They are regarded as one of India's finest examples of art and architecture. The temples have a large number of elaborately carved statues on exhibit. Despite its reputation for sensual sculptures, sexual themes account for less than a tenth of the temple's sculpture.

- The Pallava dynasty, which governed most of south-east India, was the first dynasty in southern India to leave stone sculpture on a vast scale after the Gudimallam lingam. A handful of important Hindu temples with great sculptural ornamentation have survived. Most of the **Group of Monuments at Mahabalipuram** (7th and 8th centuries), possibly the best-known examples of Pallava art and architecture, are rock-cut at first.

- Many of them make use of natural rock outcroppings, which are cut away on all sides until just a structure remains. Others, like the **Shore Temple,** are built traditionally.

- The **Descent of the Ganges at Mahabalipuram** is "India's largest and most ornate sculptural composition," a relief carved on a near-vertical rock wall with hundreds of figures, including a life-size elephant (late 7th century).

3.8 Medieval Age Sculptures

- The time was ruled by Islamic monarchs, who not only did not make figurative sculptures themselves but also had their forces destroy enormous volumes of previous religious sculptures, particularly during the early conquests, discouraging the creation of new figures.

- Despite this, religious sculpture continued to flourish, particularly in the far south, where the bigger temples competed for space.

- Towering gopuram gates, a late medieval southern invention, were adorned with huge statues, mainly in vividly painted plaster in recent centuries.
- For the vast numbers of visitors to temples, very large halls were built, sometimes filled with amazing sculptures, such as the famed row of life-size rearing horses at **Srirangam's Ranganathaswamy Temple** from the 17th century.

3.9 British Colonial period Sculptures

- European-style sculptures were constructed in city squares as memorials to the British Empire's strength during this time.
- There were **statues of Queen Victoria, George V**, and numerous Indian Governor-Generals constructed.
- Following independence, many sculptures were taken from public spaces and placed in museums. Some, such as the Bangalore Statue of Queen Victoria, remain in their original locations.

3.10 Post-Independence Period Sculptures

- **D.P Roy Choudhury, Ramkinkar Baij, Sankho Chaudhuri, and Chintamoni Kar** are contemporary Indian sculptors.
- A substantial collection of modern Indian sculptures may be seen at the National Gallery of Modern Art.

3.11 Conclusion

One of the numerous functions of art was to disseminate information about the king and laud his accomplishments. In ancient India, good art was a sign of affluence for many empires. The majority of the artwork was created in order to encourage religious activity.

4. Indian Pottery

Pottery has a long history on the Indian subcontinent and is one of the most palpable and iconic parts of Indian art. Pottery has been discovered in early Lahuradewa towns and later in the Indus Valley Civilization. It is a cultural art form that is still widely practised in the Indian subcontinent today In India, pottery is still a popular art form. Here we will discuss the Indian Pottery in detail, which will be helpful for UPSC IAS Exam preparation.

4.1 Indian Pottery

- Pottery has been discovered in the early villages of **Mehrgarh** dating back to the Indus Valley Civilization (3300 BCE- 1500 BCE).

- It is a cultural art form that is still widely practiced in India today. Pottery is significant in the study of culture and the reconstruction of the past.

- The style of pottery has evolved over time in response to different cultures. It represents the social, economic, and environmental conditions in which civilizations flourished, aiding archaeologists and historians in comprehending our history.

- It is useful for deciphering cultures where there's no script or where the script hasn't been decoded.

4.2 Evolution of Pottery in India

Neolithic Age (10000 BCE)

- It is the first reference of pottery in this period. It is **hand-made pottery**, but later periods also utilized a foot-wheel.

Chalcolithic Age (4500- 2000 BCE)

- The prevalence of various ceramic cultures distinguishes it.
- **Black and red-ware pottery, black-on-red ware, and ochre-colored pottery** are other examples.

Indus Valley Civilization (3300 BCE- 1500 BCE)

- **Polished Ware** was one of the pottery traditions that existed during the period.
- Pottery with a rough surface, **Harappa Burial Pottery, Ochre colored pottery (OCP), Black-grey burnished ware, Black-on-red ware, Grey-ware, and Painted grey-ware** are all examples of pottery with a rough surface.

Vedic Age (1500- 500 BCE)

- **Painted Grey-ware (PGW), Northern Black Polished ware (NBPW), and megalithic pottery unearthed in Kerala** are examples of pottery traditions that existed during the period.

Mauryan Period (321 BCE- 185 BCE)

- The **pottery wheel** became widely used.
- There are numerous different types of ceramics linked with the Mauryan period. However, the most advanced technique may be observed in a form of pottery called
- **Northern Black Polished Ware (NBP)** was popular during the previous and early Mauryan eras.

Kushana Period (1st to 4th Century AD)

- In Bengal and North India, the Kushan cultural phase ushered in a new age in ceramics.
- A distinctive **red polished ware** with stamped design, as well as a significant number of dull or strong redware, characterizes this phase's pottery.

Period of the Guptas (4th and 5th Century AD)

- Gupta pottery remnants discovered in Ahichchhatra, Rajgarh, Hastinapur, and Bashar provide exceptional evidence of ceramic expertise.
- **Redware** is the most characteristic type of pottery from this time period.

Turko-Mughal and Rajput Period (12th Century AD onwards)

- In the 13th century AD, Turkish kings encouraged potters from Persia, Central Asia, and other parts of the world to settle in what is now Northern India.
- Gujarat and Maharashtra have glazed ceramics with Persian models and Indian motifs originating from the Sultanate period.
- **Jaipur's modern-day Blue Pottery** is commonly regarded as a classic Jaipur skill.

4.3 Conclusion

Pottery is significant in the study of culture and the reconstruction of the past. The style of pottery has evolved over time in response to different cultures. It represents the social, economic, and environmental conditions in which civilization flourished, aiding archaeologists and historians in comprehending our history.

5. Harappan Art and Architecture

Harappan civilization **(3300 BCE-1500 BCE)** flourished as ancient India's first urban civilization. In terms of creative inventiveness, each of its features was distinct. Harappan Art and Architecture includes everything from the fort and structures to the ceramics and metal objects. Also in Harappan civilization, there is an established sculptural standard of exquisite beauty. Here we will discuss the Harappan Art, Art and Culture, which will be useful for UPSC IAS Exam preparation.

5.1 Harappan Art and Architecture

The Harappan art and architecture can be understood by the buildings, pottery, metal works, sculptures, etc.

5.2 Buildings

- Magnificent was the architectural style of the fort and buildings of the Harappan culture. The fort was high and looked majestic and the groupings of buildings and their decorated interiors were marvelous.

- Artistically laid out where the drawing and retiring rooms, the kitchen, and the bath. **Burnt bricks** were used in all constructions.

- Covered drains are another specialty of Harappan architecture. The Great Bath of **Mohenjo-Daro** and the **port at Lothal** still pay rich tributes to the architectural expertise of Harappan culture.

- Harappan civilization has a rich column of large pillars supporting buildings. This is another of its distinct legacies that have been passed down to future generations. The Harappan granary bears quiet witness to this.

5.3 Pottery

- Harappan clay pots and ornamental pieces were one of its main attractions, even back then, all over the world.

- The craftsmanship of the Harappan pottery is evident in trays of various sizes, cups, cooking pots, and other ceramics.

5.4 Sculpture

- Harappan culture's craftsmen and sculptors were equally skilled. Precious stones were carved into beads and strung on a necklace.

- They could create human-like images in stone as well.

- A partially damaged depiction of a **bearded human figure** unearthed

at Mohenjo-Daro also has the uncommon trait of no moustache on the upper lip, which seems to be quite smooth.

- The symmetry of the leaves carved on the top garment on the image's left shoulder is stunning.

- Because of the sculpted image's dance-posture, another damaged piece of stone sculpture from the Harappan area resembles **Natraj Shiva**.

- The Harappan sculptors were clearly brilliant and inventive, as seen by these specimens.

5.5 Metal Works

- Harappan civilization achieved remarkable heights in metalwork as well.

- They knew how to produce copper and bronze pots, flower vases, and pictures of people, animals, and birds.

- The polish and delicacy of their metal works are shown by a bronze figure of a female dancer discovered at Mohenjo-Daro.

5.6 Seals

- The seals and sealing method also hint at their creative abilities. **Images of cows, deer, rhino,** and other animals have been discovered on seals unearthed in Harappa, Mohenjo-Daro, Lothal, and other sites.

- These exhibits not only an aesthetic sensibility but also an understanding of the animal kingdom.

- The Harappan civilization mirrored every aspect of urban life in its art and architecture. Every artist demonstrated credit, expertise, and innovation in his work.

- They continue to inspire amazement and reverence in the minds of future generations.

5.7 Conclusion

Architecture, art, and utilitarian items were all rigidly uniform in the Harappan Civilization. It traded across an even greater area, obtaining raw materials and exporting completed products, traders, and some of its practices to places where its standardization regulations did not apply. It predated Mesopotamian major cultures and was contemporary with Sumerian cultures. However, it acquired a lot of ideas from Central Asia as well, and it gathered the best of ideas and technology in many ways. It is relevant and significant in that regard.

6. Architecture in Harappan Civilization

Architecture in the Harappan civilization **(3300 BCE- 1500 BCE)** was unique when compared to other contemporary civilizations. It shows the early elements of Indian architecture. Here we will discuss in detail the Architecture in the Harappan Civilization, which will be helpful for UPSC IAS Exam preparation.

6.1 Features

- The style was entirely unique, with no obvious foreign influences.

- The structures were built only for functional purposes, not for aesthetic reasons.

- The evolution of architecture and sculpture seldom occurs in isolation. The architecture of the Indus Valley, however, is an exception to this rule.

- Local cultures influenced architectural traditions, which date back thousands of years to the first farming and pastoral settlements. For example, they built their homes on massive mud-brick platforms.

- The elegance achieved with its urban planning is the crowning pearl of IV architecture. No other modern culture can match this level of complexity.

6.2 Town planning in Harappan Civilization

Utilitarian perspective: The Harappans were the first to introduce the concept of worker welfare by creating separate worker's quarters, which has since become a requirement in a welfare state.

Harappan city planning: Harappan cities did not all have the same town design. However, most cities followed the same path. Harappan city designs included the defensive wall, citadel, and lower town, as well as roadways and alleys, drainage systems, and water management systems.

- The city plan was created with the use of geometrical tools by the architects.

- In most Harappan towns, a certain pattern was followed in which the citadel was located to the west of the lower town, although in some cities it was located to the south.

- The cardinal directions of streets and lanes were also used to partition certain rural villages into blocks and sub-blocks. The residences were lined up on both sides of the streets.

Fortification wall: The fortification wall defended certain Early Harappan

towns, as well as numerous Harappan cities. The fortress wall defended Kot Diji, Rehman Dehri, Tarakai Qila, Kohtras, Buthi, Mehrgarh, Dhalewan, Bhirrana, Balu, Kalibangan, and others.

Gateways: Some Harappan cities had only one doorway, such as Lothal and Balu, while others, such as Kalibangan and Surkotada, had two or more. There were two sorts of gateways: one was a plain entry for vehicle activity, while the other had some unique significance.

Bastions: During the Harappan period, defensive walls were used to build bastions. They were used as lookout towers.

Material Used: Bricks, baked bricks, mud, stones, and other mud-based materials were employed.

Intercommunication passage: Some Harappan sites have intercommunication routes that were utilized for the kings', priests', and common people's mobility.

Citadel and Lower Town: Harappan cities were divided into walled sectors in separate portions of the settlement, which were known as citadels and lower-towns.

- The citadel was constructed on a raised plate shape, while the lower town was constructed on a lower level.
- The citadel was smaller than the lower town. While the citadel included public structures like the **Great Bath**, the lower town mainly solely had private buildings.
- Some cities, such as Harappa, Mohenjodaro, Kalibangan, Banawali, Rakhigarhi, Lothal, Dholavira, and others, had citadel and lower town settlements, but most cities did not.

Grid Pattern: By 2600 BC, the principal towns of the Indus Valley Civilization, Mohenjodaro, and Harappa, were built with blocks split by a grid of straight streets running north-south and east-west.

Disaster-proof: Harappans built their dwellings on platforms to avoid flooding. Drainage system:

Reservoirs: The Harappans were hydraulic engineering masters. They devised an effective technique.

- The drains were built with drips at regular intervals for self-cleaning.
- Small drains emptied into private drains, and big drains drained into huge drains. The enormous sewers carried the city's wastewater outdoors, where it was disposed of in open areas or in ponds of various types.
- Stones or huge bricks were used to conceal certain drains. Soakage jars, man-hole cesspools, and other drainage system components were vital.

Granaries: The granary was Mohenjodaro's greatest structure, while Harappa had roughly six granaries or storehouses. These were grain storage bins.

- **The Great Bath in Mohenjodaro** is located to the east of the granary. It is the oldest water tank ever discovered in the ancient world. The bath's floor was made up of five levels. It was so waterproof that it still holds water today. There were locker rooms. It was most likely utilized at religious events and festivities.

Houses: The houses were of various sizes. It's possible that some of them had two levels.

- The dwellings were constructed of smoldering bricks. A central courtyard, a well, a bathing place, and a kitchen were all included in most of the dwellings.

- Each home was immediately connected to an effective drainage system, indicating a well-developed municipal infrastructure.

No temples: Despite the fact that there is no evidence of temple construction or other religious sites, the people followed religion. Some religious practices have been related to the Great Bath.

No monuments to armament or battle: Military troops or weaponry for battle have not been discovered in this culture's excavations. While other civilizations' art has numerous depictions of prisoners, monuments to military triumphs, and other warfare-related activities, the Indus Valley's art does not contain a single such portrayal.

- The early river valley civilization in India was notable for having a cooperative culture without the reign of rulers, according to archaeological evidence. The focus appears to have been on peaceful trade rather than military power expansion.

Lothal's Town Planning

- Historians have discovered a distinct type of urban design at Lothal, Gujarat, on India's western coast.

- This city was split into six sectors, each with its own mud-brick platform.

- In terms of town layout, Lothal differs from other Indus Valley Civilization sites in that it has admission to the homes on the main street, whereas other sites have lateral entry.

Dockyard of Lothal

- A massive facility on the island of Lothal has been recognized as a tidal port for seagoing ships.

- There is a lot of evidence that the towns of the Indus Valley traded extensively with other civilizations throughout that time period.

- Trade with towns in this region is mentioned in Mesopotamian records, and items from the Indus region have been discovered in West Asian cities.

- When the surrounding Kutch desert was a part of the Arabian Sea, Lothal's dock—the world's oldest known—connected the city to an ancient stream of the Sabarmati river on the trade route between Harappan settlements in Sindh and the peninsula of Saurashtra.

- In ancient times, it was a significant and bustling trading center, with its commerce of beads, diamonds, and expensive decorations stretching far into West Asia and Africa.

6.3 Harappan Civilization's Urban Planning Lessons

- The Indus Valley Civilization had an exceptional urban design, particularly in the areas of sanitation and drainage.

- It can, to a large extent, give input to current urbanization. Dealing with the haphazard construction of structures has been one of the key issues of urban planning in India.

- The streets of the Harappan Civilization were laid out in **grid-like layouts**, allowing for deliberate and planned expansion.

- In contemporary times, Le Corbusier's ideas for Chandigarh included a rectangular form with a gridiron pattern, allowing for faster traffic flow and a smaller footprint.

- The town was likewise firmly divided into residential and common/public sectors in the Civilization.

- The Harappan Civilization granaries, with their strategically positioned air ducts and platforms separated into sections, are likewise an example of clever design.

- The houses were built in such a way that they didn't interfere with the road layout in any way. Instead of opening out onto the roadways, the residences had doors that opened into the lanes.

- The warehouse at Lothal is an excellent example of precise design.

- The civilization's **drains connected each and every home**, allowing residents to deposit their trash immediately.

- The drains were covered and linked to the bigger sewage outputs immediately. For maintenance purposes, there were inspection holes in the sewers and manholes in the streets.

• As a result, the Harappan Civilization's urban planning has greatly aided us in learning from it.

6.4 Conclusion

The Harappan civilization is a significant milestone in the Indian subcontinent's past. In many aspects, civilization serves as a wonderful model for the modern world. Their knowledge of urban design, water management and harvesting systems, and drainage systems are unrivaled.

7. Harappan Sculptures

Sculptures of the Harappan Civilization hold a significant role in understanding the lifestyle of the Harappan people. It also helps historians to understand the civilization further. Here, we will discuss the Sculptures of Harappan Civilization which will be helpful for UPSC Civil Service Exam preparation.

7.1 Sculptures of the Harappan Civilization

- During the second millennium, the arts of the Indus Valley civilization, one of the world's first civilizations, arose. Sculptures, seals, ceramics, gold jewelry, terracotta figurines, and other types of art have been discovered at many civilization sites.
- Their renderings of human and animal forms were extremely lifelike and the modeling of figures was done with utmost caution.
- The major materials used for sculptors were: Stone, Bronze, Terracotta, Clay, etc.

7.2 Stone Sculptures of Harappan Civilization

The handling of the 3-Dimensional volume may be seen in stone figures found in Indus valley sites. There are two major stone statues:

1.   In Mohenjo-Daro, a Bearded Man (Priest Man, Priest-King) was discovered. The main features of the figure were:

- Steatite figurine of a bearded guy.
- The figure is covered in a shawl that comes under the right arm and covers the left shoulder, indicating that it is a priest. The shawl has a trefoil design on it.
- As in contemplative concentration, the eyes are extended and partially closed.
- The nose is well-formed and of average size.
- Short beard and whiskers, as well as a short moustache.
- A basic woven fillet is carried around the head once the hair is separated in the center.
- A right-hand armlet and holes around the neck imply a necklace.
- Overall, there is a hint of the Greek style in the statues.

2. Male Torso

- Red sandstone was used to create it.

- The head and arms are attached to the neck and shoulders through socket openings. Legs have been broken.

- The shoulders are nicely browned, and the belly is a little protruding.

- It is one of the more expertly cut and polished pieces.

7.3 Bronze Sculptures of Harappan Civilization

- Bronze casting was conducted on a large scale in practically all of the civilization's main sites.

- Bronze casting was done using the Lost Wax Technique.

Lost Wax Technique

- At first, the required figure is formed of wax and coated with clay. After allowing the clay to dry, the entire assembly is heated to melt the wax within the clay. The melted wax was then drained out of the clay section through a small hole.

- The molten metal was then poured into the hollow clay mold. The clay coating was fully removed once it had cooled.

- The Bronze casting includes both human and animal representations.

- The buffalo, with its raised head, back, and sweeping horns, and the goat, among animal representations, are aesthetic assets.

- Bronze casting was popular at all locations of Indus valley culture, as evidenced by the copper dog and bird of Lothal and the Bronze figure of a bull from Kalibangan.

- Metal casting persisted until the late Harappan, Chalcolithic, and other peoples following the Indus valley civilization.

Examples of Bronze Casting are:

Dancing Girl

- Founded in Mohenjo-Daro, is one of the best-known artifacts from Indus valley.

- It depicts a girl whose long hair is tied in a bun and bangles cover her left arm.

- Cowry shell necklace is seen around her neck with her right hand on her hip and her left hand clasped in a traditional Indian dance gesture.

Bull from Mohenjo-Daro

- Mohenjo-Daro has a bronze statue of a bull.

- The bull's massiveness and the charge's wrath are vividly depicted.

- The animal is seen standing to the right with his head cocked.
- A cord is wrapped around the neck.

7.4 Terracotta Sculptures of Harappan Civilization

- In Gujarat and Kalibangan, terracotta statues are more lifelike.
- A few figures of bearded males with coiled hairs are found in terracotta, their stance firmly erect, legs slightly apart, and arms parallel to the sides of the torso. The fact that this figure appears in the same posture over and over again suggests that he was a divinity.
- There was also a clay mask of a horned god discovered.
- Terracotta was also used to create toy carts with wheels, whistles, rattles, birds and animals, gamesmen, and discs.
- Mother Goddess figurines are the most important clay figures.

The main example of a terracotta figure is:

Mother Goddess

- Mohenjo-Daro is where it was found.
- These are mainly crude standing figurines.
- Wearing a loin robe and a grid, she is adorned with jewelry dangling from her large breast.
- The mother goddess's distinctive ornamental element is her fan-shaped headpiece with a cup-like protrusion on either side.
- The figure's pellet eyes and beaked snout are exceedingly primitive (constructed in a rudimentary way).
- A tiny hole indicates the mouth.

7.5 Conclusion

The artists and craftsmen of the Indus Valley were extremely skilled in a variety of crafts—metal casting, stone carving, making and painting pottery, and making terracotta images using simplified motifs of animals, plants, and birds, making the civilization a rich one.

8. Art of Indus valley civilization

Indus Valley Civilization holds a key role in the History of India. The arts of the Indus Valley civilization, one of the world's first civilizations, evolved throughout the second millennium. Many civilization sites have yielded sculptures, seals, ceramics, gold jewellery, terracotta figurines, and other works of art. The Arts of Indus valley Civilization gives immense details about the life of people of that time. This article explains the Arts of Indus Valley Civilization, which will be helpful for UPSC IAS Exam preparation.

8.1 Art of Indus Valley Civilization

- During the second millennium, the arts of the Indus Valley civilization, one of the world's first civilizations, arose. Sculptures, seals, ceramics, gold jewelry, terracotta figurines, and other types of art have been discovered at many civilization sites.

- Their renderings of human and animal forms were extremely lifelike and the modeling of figures was done with utmost caution.

- Along the Indus River, there are two significant Indus Valley civilization sites: Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro in the north and Mohenjo-Daro in the south.

- While Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro are in Pakistan, notable sites discovered in India include Lothal, Surkotada, Dholavira in Gujarat, Rakhigarh, and Banwali in Haryana, and Ropar in Punjab.

- The major materials used for artistic works were: Stone, Bronze, Terracotta, Clay, etc.

8.2 Stone Sculptures

- The handling of the 3D volume may be seen in stone figures found in Indus valley sites. There are two major stone statues:

- In Mohenjo-Daro, a Bearded Man (Priest Man, Priest-King) was discovered. The main features of the figure were:

- Steatite figurine of a bearded guy.

- The figure is covered in a shawl that comes under the right arm and covers the left shoulder, indicating that it is a priest. The shawl has a trefoil design on it.

- As in contemplative concentration, the eyes are extended and partially closed.

- The nose is well-formed and of average size.

- Short beard and whiskers, as well as a short moustache.

- A basic woven fillet is carried around the head once the hair is separated in the center.
- A right-hand armlet and holes around the neck imply a necklace.
- Overall, there is a hint of the Greek style in the statues.

Male Torso

- Red sandstone was used to create it.
- The head and arms are attached to the neck and shoulders through socket openings. Legs have been broken.
- The shoulders are nicely browned, and the belly is a little protruding.
- It is one of the more expertly cut and polished pieces.

8.3 Bronze Casting

Bronze casting was conducted on a large scale in practically all of the civilization's main sites.

Bronze casting was done using the Lost Wax Technique.

Lost Wax Technique

- At first, the required figure is formed of wax and coated with clay. After allowing the clay to dry, the entire assembly is heated to melt the wax within the clay. The melted wax was then drained out of the clay section through a small hole.
- The molten metal was then poured into the hollow clay mould. The clay coating was fully removed once it had cooled.
- The Bronze casting includes both human and animal representations.
- The buffalo, with its raised head, back, and sweeping horns, and the goat, among animal representations, are aesthetic assets.
- Bronze casting was popular at all locations of Indus valley culture, as evidenced by the copper dog and bird of Lothal and the Bronze figure of a bull from Kalibangan.
- Metal casting persisted until the late Harappan, Chalcolithic, and other peoples following the Indus valley civilization.

Examples of Bronze Casting are:

Dancing Girl

- Founded in Mohenjo-Daro, it is one of the best-known artifacts from the Indus valley.
- It depicts a girl whose long hair is tied in the bun and bangles cover her left arm.

- Cowry shell necklace is seen around her neck with her right hand on her hip and her left hand clasped in a traditional Indian dance gesture.

Bull from Mohenjo-Daro

- Mohenjo-Daro has a bronze statue of a bull.
- The bull's massiveness and the charge's wrath are vividly depicted.
- The animal is seen standing to the right with his head cocked.
- A cord is wrapped around the neck.

8.4 Terracotta

- In Gujarat and Kalibangan, terracotta statues are more lifelike.
- A few figures of bearded males with coiled hairs are found in terracotta, their stance firmly erect, legs slightly apart, and arms parallel to the sides of the torso.
- The fact that this figure appears in the same posture over and over again suggests that he was a divinity.
- There was also a clay mask of a horned god discovered.
- Terracotta was also used to create toy carts with wheels, whistles, rattles, birds and animals, gamesmen, and discs.
- Mother Goddess figurines are the most important clay figures.

Mother Goddess

- Mohenjo-Daro is where it was found.
- These are mainly crude standing figurines.
- Wearing a loin robe and a grid, she is adorned with jewellery dangling from her large breast.
- The mother goddess's distinctive ornamental element is her fan-shaped headpiece with a cup-like protrusion on either side.
- The figure's pellet eyes and beaked snout are exceedingly primitive (constructed in a rudimentary way).
- A tiny hole indicates the mouth.

8.5 Seals

Thousands of seals, mostly made of steatite but also agate, chert, copper, faience, and terracotta, were discovered at the sites, with exquisite representations of animals such as unicorn bulls, rhinoceros, tiger, elephant, bison, goat, buffalo, and others.

- The major purpose was to create wealth.

- They were also carried on the person of their owners as amulets, maybe like modern-day identity cards.
- Harappan seals were 2 x 2 square inches in size.
- Every seal has a pictographic script on it that has yet to be understood.
- Seals have also been discovered in Gold and Ivory.

Pashupati Seal

A cross-legged human figure shown on the seal is found at MohenJo Daro.

A tiger and an elephant are represented on the right side of the image, while a rhinoceros and a buffalo are depicted on the left.

Below the seat are two antelopes (deer) (near his feet). The figure's head bears three horns.

8.6 Pottery

- The pottery of the Indus Valley is mostly manufactured on the wheel, with only a few exceptions.
- Painted ceramics are much less prevalent than plain pottery. The most common type of plain pottery is red clay with or without a fine red or grey slip.
- The geometric and animal images are painted in glossy black paint on the black painted ware, which has a fine covering of red slip.

Painted Earthen Jar

It is made on Potter's wheel, found at Mohenjo Daro.

8.7 Beads, Ornaments, and Cosmetics

- Harappan men and women adorned themselves with a wide range of jewelry made from a wide range of materials, including precious metals, jewels, bone, and baked clay.
- Both men and women wore white necklaces, fillets, armlets, and finger rings.
- Necklaces made of gold and semi-precious metal stones, copper bracelets and beads, gold earrings, and head decorations have all been discovered in Mohenjo-Daro and Lothal.
- At Farmona in Harappa, a cemetery was discovered where deceased people were buried with jewelry.
- Chanhu Daro and Lothal both have well-developed bead factories.
- Some beads were produced by cementing two or more stones together.

- Animal figures, particularly monkeys and squirrels, were also created and utilized as pinheads and beads.
- Cotton and wool spinning were quite popular (both rich and poor practiced spinning).
- Men and women wore different outfits that looked like a dhoti and shawl.
- Shawl went below right arm and covered left shoulder.
- They were fashion-conscious. Various hairstyles were fashionable, and beards were popular.
- Cinnabar was used as a cosmetic, and they were familiar with face paint, lipstick, and collyrium (eyeliner).

8.8 Conclusion

The artists and craftsmen of the Indus Valley were extremely skilled in a variety of crafts—metal casting, stone carving, making and painting pottery, and making terracotta images using simplified motifs of animals, plants, and birds, making the civilization a rich one.

Chapter 9: Mauryan and Post-Mauryan Art

1. Mauryan Art and Architecture

Mauryan art is an art created between the **4th and 2nd Century BC** under the Mauryan Empire, which was the first empire to control much of the Indian subcontinent. It marked a significant shift in Indian art from the use of wood to stone. It was a royal art that Mauryan rulers, particularly Ashoka, supported. The most notable survivors include pillars, stupas, and caverns. Here we will discuss the major features of Mauryan Art and Architecture, which will be useful for the UPSC Civil Service preparation.

1.1 Mauryan Art and Architecture

- Around the 6th century BCE, religions of the Shramana tradition, such as Jainism and Buddhism, arose.

- In the 4th century BCE, the Mauryas had established themselves as a powerful force, and by the 3rd century, they had vast swaths of India under their authority.

- There were various religious activities at the period, including the worship of Yakshas and mother-goddesses. Despite this, Buddhism became the most popular religion.

- Only during the Mauryan period, after the Harappan civilization, did colossal stone sculpture and building development.

- Pillars, sculptures, rock-cut architecture, and structures like stupas, viharas, and chaityas served a variety of purposes. They are superb in terms of aesthetic quality as well as design and execution.

1.2 Mauryan Pillars and Sculptures

- This time saw a creative and stunning leap ahead in Indian stone sculpture; much of the prior work was likely made of wood and has now vanished.

- The best-known and greatest works of Ashoka are the artistically carved animal capitals that survive from several of his Pillars, particularly the **Lion Capital of Sarnath**, which is now India's National Emblem.

- The pillars and capitals reflect court art, while some stone pieces and numerous smaller terracotta works represent surviving popular art.

1.3 Terracottas

- Popular terracotta pieces of all sizes have been discovered at Mauryan sites and abroad, and are the most abundant Mauryan works of art.
- They are more abundant between Pataliputra and Taxila.
- Many have stylized shapes and are technically more proficient, with a well-defined outline and distinct decoration. Although some look to be cast from moulds, there is minimal repetition.
- Deity figurines, votive reliefs with deities, toys, dice, decorations, and beads are among the terracotta from Taxila. Round medallions, comparable to the bullae worn by Roman youths, were among the jewellery.
- The earthy beauty of terracotta representations of folk gods and goddesses is common (some of them are perhaps dolls). Many of the animal figures are most likely children's toys.

1.4 Mauryan Paintings

- Megasthenes indicates that the Mauryans possessed some fine paintings, but no examples have remained.
- The paintings of the Ajanta Caves, the earliest notable corpus of Indian art, reveal that there existed a well-developed tradition that may possibly date back to Mauryan periods several years later.

1.5 Mauryan Pottery

- There are numerous different types of ceramics linked with the Mauryan period. However, the most advanced technique may be observed in a form of pottery called **Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW)**, which was popular during the previous and early Mauryan eras.
- It features a highly polished glaze coating that ranges in color from jet black to deep grey or metallic steel blue.
- On occasion, there are little red-brown areas visible on the surface. It has a unique sheen and brightness that sets it apart from other polished or graphite-coated red products.

1.6 Mauryan Architecture

- While the time saw a second shift to the use of brick and stone, wood remained the preferred material.

- In the Arthashastra, Kautilya recommends the use of brick and stone because of their endurance. Nonetheless, he devotes a substantial section to precautions to be taken against fires in timber structures, demonstrating their popularity.

- The **capital city of Pataliputra** was encompassed by a large timber-palisade, punctured by holes or slits through which archers might shoot, according to the Greek envoy Megasthenes.

- Spooner and Waddell excavated at **Bulandi Bagh in Pataliputra** and discovered the ruins of massive timber palisades. The ruins of one of the structures, an 80-pillared hall at **Kumrahar**, are especially noteworthy.

- During Ashoka's rule, several stupas, including those at Sanchi, Sarnath, and most likely Amaravati, were created as brick and masonry mounds. Unfortunately, they have been remodeled several times, leaving us with little resemblance to the original constructions.

1.7 Coins

- The Mauryans minted largely silver and a few copper coins in a variety of forms, sizes, and weights, each with one or more symbols punched on them.

- The elephant, the tree in the fence sign, and the mountain are the most popular emblems.

- The metal was cut first, then the device was punched, which was the standard method of making such coins.

1.8 Conclusion

Mauryan Art and Architecture have an important role in the historical development of Ancient India. Since the empire extended to a vast area, the Art of the Mauryan empire traveled long distances and got major recognition.

2. Mauryan Pillars

Mauryan Pillars (4th and 2nd Century BC) are one of the crucial architectural belongings of Ancient India. These pillars give details about the major incidents of those times, rulers, wars, etc. Thus, they are major sources of information for Historians. Here we will discuss the Mauryan Pillars, which will be helpful for UPSC Civil Service Art and Culture preparation.

2.1 Mauryan Pillars

- Despite the fact that creating pillars is an ancient practice, Mauryan pillars vary from pillars in other regions of the globe (such as Achaemenian pillars) in that they are rock-cut pillars, demonstrating the carver's talent.

- Two kinds of stone were used to chisel these pillars. Some are made of **white sandstone** from the Mathura region, while others are made of **buff-colored fine-grained hard sandstone** mined in Chunar near Varanasi.

- The pillar capitals' similarity in style implies that they were carved by workers from the same location.

- Capital is the topmost element of a pillar or column. Figures such as a bull, lion, elephant, and others were carved onto the upper half of the pillar. The capital figures (typically animals) are all carved standing on a square or circular abacus and are all forceful.

- **Abacuses** have stylized lotuses on them.

- The **Lion Capital,** a Mauryan pillar capital unearthed at **Sarnath**, is the best specimen of Mauryan sculpting tradition.

- **King Ashoka** erected many pillars across his territory.

2.2 Pillar Edicts and Inscriptions

The seven pillar edicts of Ashoka have been discovered in Topra (Delhi), Meerut, Kausambhi, Rampurva, Champaran, and Mehrauli:

- Asoka's **idea of people protection** is enshrined in **Pillar Edict I.**

- **Pillar Edict II:** Defines **Dhamma** as having the least sins, the greatest number of virtues, compassion, liberality, honesty, and purity.

- **Pillar Edict III**: Removes sins such as harshness, cruelty, rage, and pride, among others.

- **Pillar Edict IV**: Addresses the responsibilities of Rajukas.

- **Pillar Edict V**: A list of animals and birds that should not be

slaughtered on certain days, as well as a separate list of species that should not be killed at all.

- Dhamma policy is the **sixth pillar edict.**
- Asoka's work towards Dhamma policy is documented in **Pillar Edict VII.**

2.3 Minor Pillar Inscriptions

- Inscription on the **Rummindei Pillar:** Asoka's visit to Lumbini and the exemption of Lumbini from taxation.
- Inscription on the **Nigalisagar Pillar in Nepal:** Asoka extended the height of Buddha Konakamana's stupa to twice its original size.

2.4 Major Pillar Inscriptions

- Sarnath Lion Capital was erected by Ashoka in Varanasi to commemorate Dhammachakrapravartana or Buddha's first discourse.
- Single lion on Vaishali Pillar in Bihar, with no inscription.
- Uttar Pradesh's Sankissa Pillar
- Champaran, Bihar: Lauriya-Nandangarth.
- Champaran, Bihar: Lauriya-Araraj
- Uttar Pradesh's Allahabad pillar.

2.5 Lion Capital, Sarnath

- Sarnath Lion Capital is the name given to the lion capital unearthed more than a century ago at Sarnath, near Varanasi.
- It was created by **Ashoka** in memory of '**Dhammachakrapravartana**,' or Buddha's first discourse, and is one of the best specimens of Mauryan sculpture.

It was originally made up of five parts:

1. The **shaft** of the pillar.
2. The **lotus bell,** also known as the base.
3. A clockwise rotation of four animals on a drum on the bell base (**abacus**).
4. Four magnificent addorsed (back to back) lions.

- Dharamchakra/Dharmachakra, is the highest crowning element.
- Four Asiatic lions are placed back to back in the capital, with very powerful facial muscularity, symbolizing strength, courage, pride, and confidence.

- The sculpture's surface is highly polished, as is typical of the Mauryan era.

- A chakra (wheel) is shown in all four directions on the abacus (drum on the bell base), with a **bull, a horse, an elephant, and a lion** between each chakra. There are 24 spokes in each chakra. The **Indian National Flag** has this 24-spoke chakra.

- An inverted lotus capital supports the circular abacus. The National Emblem of Independent India is the capital without the shaft, the lotus bell, and the crowning wheel.

- Only three Lions are visible in Madhav Sawhey's insignia, with the fourth obscured from view.

2.6 Conclusion

Mauryan pillars are remnants of the glorious past of India. These pillars detail key historical events, kings, and conflicts, among other things. As a result, they are important sources of data for historians.

3. Mauryan Sculpture

The Maurya period between the **4th and 2nd Century BC** is highlighted by significant advancements in Indian sculpture. The Lion Capital of Sarnath, Yaksha, and Yakshini figures are famous examples of Mauryan Sculptures. Here we will discuss the Mauryan Sculpture, which is an important part of Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC IAS Exam.

3.1 Mauryan Sculpture

- Local sculptors' work exemplifies the Mauryan Period's popular art. This included sculpture that was most likely not commissioned by the Emperor.

- The local governors were supporters of popular art. Dr. Ananda Coomarswamy divides Mauryan sculptures into two categories: **Court art and Popular art.**

- The pillars and their capitals are considered Court art, while the works of sculptors such as the Yakshas and Yakshinis are considered popular art.

- Popular art includes the Yaksha picture from Parkam and the Yakshini figure from Besnagar.

3.2 Influence of Religions on Mauryan Sculptures

- Religious activities in ancient days had numerous aspects and were not limited to a single method of worship.

- During the Maurya period, Buddhism became the most prominent social and religious movement.

- Yaksha worship was immensely prevalent both before and after Buddhism, and it was extensively incorporated into both Buddhism and Jainism. As a result, throughout the Mauryan Empire, the notion of sacred sculpture was prevalent.

3.3 Influence of Foreign Countries on Maurya Sculpture

- It is generally known that the first three Mauryan emperors, Chandragupta, Bindusara, and Asoka, had cordial connections with the Hellenic West, notably with the court of the great Seleucid rulers, who may be considered heirs of Alexander the Great and the Achaemenids of Iran.

- This might point to the origins of foreign influences, and an adaptation of Achaemenid models has been found in the Edicts of Asoka and the ruins of the Mauryan palace at Pataliputra's imperial capital.

- The Mauryan pillars, on the other hand, are not the same as the Achaemenid pillars. The Mauryan pillars are rock-cut, demonstrating the carver's expertise, but the Achaemenid pillars are pieced together by a mason.

3.4 Mauryan Court Art

- Excellent stone sculpture emerged in its entirety during the Maurya dynasty. The stone was now utilized for sculpture and building throughout the country.
- During the Maurya dynasty, the stone surface was also given a dazzling polish. Mauryan art is known for its dazzling mirror-like gloss and wide range of compositions.
- Stone pillars, railings, parasols, capitals, animal and human sculptures, and a variety of other themes are all examples of this art.
- Throughout the Mauryan Empire, stone pillars were built with inscriptions carved on them.
- The pillar's top was carved with capital figures such as a bull, a lion, an elephant, and so on. A square or circular abacus supports each capital figure. The abacuses are embellished with stylized lotuses.
- Basarah-Bakhira, Lauriya- Nandangarh, Rampurva, Sankisa, and Sarnath are some of the notable sites where the pillars have been discovered.

3.5 Mauryan Popular Art

- **Yakshas and Yakshinis** are depicted in popular art throughout the Maurya period. Yaksha refers to friendly nature spirits, commonly known as fertility spirits.
- The female Yakshini is the male Yaksha's equivalent. Yaksha is also the name of one of Ancient India's Exotic Tribes.
- Natural riches are cared for by Yakshas and Yakshinis. They occupy a major role in Hindu, Jain, and Buddhist literature, as well as being depicted in Buddhist and Jain sacred monuments.
- Large sculptures of Yakshas and Yakhinis have been discovered in India, primarily in standing positions, in areas like Patna, Vidisha, and Mathura.
- The smooth surface and clear physiognomic characteristics are the most prevalent elements in these photographs.

3.6 Yakshini of Didarganj

- The Yakshi figure from Didarganj, Patna, is one of the greatest specimens of popular Maurya art.

- This free-standing sculpture in sandstone with a polished surface is tall, well-built, and balanced, displaying the complexity in the treatment of form and medium.

- Yakshini's right hand is holding a chauri (flywhisk), while her left hand is shattered. The sculptor's sensitivity to the round strong female human form may be seen in this photograph. Muscle folds are represented correctly.

- The illusion of a protruding belly is created by tightening the fabric around the belly. The bottom garment has been meticulously crafted.

- Protruding lines adhere to the legs, creating a slightly translucent impression, exposing every fold of the garment on the legs. The large breasts and impressive back indicate thoracic heaviness.

3.7 Elephant sculpture at Dhauli

- The Elephant Rock Cut Sculpture at Dhauli, Odisha, shows the fore-part of an elephant carved over the **Edicts of Asoka**, including the two expressly intended for Kalinga.

- A tone and sentiment distinct from those expressed in the animal forms surmounting the pillar capitals may be detected in the modeling and execution of this elephant sculpture.

- It depicts a good delineation of bulky volume and live flesh, as is innate to that animal, as well as a dignified movement and linear rhythm that is only matched by the elephant image in relief on the Sarnath capital's abacus.

3.8 Facades of Lomus Rishi Cave

- The Lomus Rishi cave is a rock-cut cave located in the Barabar hills near Gaya, Bihar.

- The cave's front is adorned with a semicircular chaitya arch that serves as the entrance.

- For the Ajivika sect, Ashoka patronized the cave. The cave of Lomus Rishi is a unique specimen of this time period.

3.9 Conclusion

Mauryan art is art created between 322 and 185 BCE under the Mauryan Empire, which was the first empire to control much of the Indian subcontinent. It marked a significant shift in Indian art from the use of wood to stone. It was a royal art that Mauryan rulers, particularly Ashoka, supported.

4. Mauryan Rock - Cut Architecture

A style of Rock Art in which a structure is carved out of solid natural rock is known as rock-cut architecture. Many cave temples and monasteries may be found across India. We will go through the intricacies of Mauryan Rock-Cut Architecture in this article, which will help you prepare for the UPSC IAS Exam.

4.1 Mauryan Rock-Cut Architecture

During their reign, the Mauryans were also patrons of several rock-cut architectures. The majority of these were Buddhist in nature. The rock-cut cave in the **Barabar Hills is** an excellent example of Mauryan rock-cut construction.

The two important features of the caves of the Mauryan period were:

• Polishing inside the cave

• Creation of artistic gateway.

4.2 Lomus Rishi Cave, Barabar Hills

• It is a rock-cut cave in the Barabar Hills near Gaya, Bihar.

• The semicircular Chaitya (worship place) arch, which serves as the cave's entrance, is carved into the cave's face.

• On the chaitya, there is an elephant frieze carved in great relief. The cave's inner hall is rectangular in shape, with a circular chamber at the back. The entrance is positioned on the hall's sidewall.

• It was patronized by Asoka for the Ajeevika Sect.

4.3 Stupas, Chaityas and Viharas

• **Chaityas were meeting places** for the purpose of debate, whereas **Viharas were for living**. Early Chaityas and Viharas were made of wood, but later stone-cut Chaityas and Viharas were built.

• A stupa is a **Buddhist memorial structure** that generally houses precious relics linked with the Buddha or other saints.

• We have various inscriptional evidence from the second century B.C. onwards naming benefactors for building the Stupas, Chaityas and Viharas and, in some cases, their profession.

• Sponsorship had followed a largely communal structure, with relatively few examples of royal patronage.

• Gahapatis (householders, regular farmers, etc.) and monarchs are among the patrons. The guild's contributions are also acknowledged in various places.

- The names of artists such as Kanha at Pitalkhora and his student Balaka at Kondane caves are only mentioned in a few inscriptions.

- Stone carvers, goldsmiths, carpenters, and other types of artisans are listed in the inscriptions. Traders kept track of their donations and where they came from.

- Stupas were extensively created in the next century (mostly the 2nd century B.C.) with various improvements such as the enclosure of the circulatory route with railings and sculptural ornamentation.

- A cylindrical drum and a circular and with a **harmika and chhatra** on top made up the stupa, which remained stable throughout with minimal alterations in shape and size. Later times saw the addition of gateways.

4.4 Depiction of Buddha in Chaityas

- Buddha is symbolically symbolized in the early era with footprints, stupas, lotus throne, chakra, and other symbols. The narrative gradually became an element of the process.

- On the railings and torans of the stupas, incidents from Buddha's life, the **Jataka tales**, and so on were painted. Birth, renunciation, enlightenment, dharmachakrapravartana (first sermon), and mahaparinirvana were the major episodes in the Buddha's life that were commonly represented (death).

- **Chhadanta Jataka, Ruru Jataka, Sibi Jataka, Vidur Jataka, Vessantara Jataka, and Shama Jataka** are among the Jataka stories that are widely presented.

4.5 Conclusion

In addition to Pillars, Sculptures, etc, the Maurya artists began building tunnels out of rocks for monks to reside in. Later, western and southern India adopted this style of cave building.

5. Stupas

The Sanskrit term stupa refers to a heap. It began as a small semi-circular earthen mound known as Anda. With the passage of time and the inclusion of artwork, it gradually evolved into a more sophisticated structure. Stupas were constructed in sacred locations. These places were considered sacred because they were associated with Buddha's life. The art of writing flourished throughout Ashoka's reign. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the Stupas which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

5.1 What are Stupas?

- A stupa is a relic-filled mound-like or hemispheric structure used for meditation.

- From the **Vedic time** onwards, stupas were used as **burial mounds in India.**

- It's a traditional depiction of a burial cumulus, where the dead's relics and ashes are maintained.

- The art of stupas reached its pinnacle during the **era of Ashoka**. During his reign, around 84000 stupas were built.

- Before the period of Ashoka, the stupa was common throughout India. The stupas became objects of **cult worship** from the moment **Ashoka** broke up the Buddha's existing body relics and created monuments to enshrine them.

- According to **Buddhist tradition,** the nine stupas were originally built following Buddha's death, eight over the relics and one over the vessel in which the relics were first put.

- At **Rajagriha, Vaishali, Kapilvastu, Allakapa, Ramagrama, Vethadipa, Pava, Kushinagar**, and **Pippalvina,** stupas were built over Buddha relics.

- The stupa is made up of a **cylindrical drum** and a circular anda with a **harmika and chhatra** on top, which are mostly the same with minor variations in shape and size.

5.2 Historical background

- The **Great Stupa** was built by the **Mauryan emperor Ashoka** in the 3rd century BCE and is thought to store the Buddha's remains. During the second century BCE, the modest building was ruined.

- It was eventually repaired and enlarged, with new features added, and

it was finally completed in the **first century BCE**. The structure has a width of 120 feet (37 meters) and a height of 54 feet (17 meters).

- Stupas were elaborately created in the early century, with features such as the enclosing of the circumambulatory path with railings and sculptural embellishment.

- Sanchi was abandoned after the **12th century CE**, and its monuments fell into decay. The location was discovered in 1**818 by British General Henry Taylor**, who reported his findings.

- Under the supervision of **Sir John Hubert Marshall,** director-general of the Indian Archaeological Survey, restoration work began in 1881 and was finished in 1919.

5.3 Features

- The stupa's core was composed of **unburnt brick**, with a burnt brick outer face covered in a thick coating of plaster.

- The stupa was capped by a wooden railing that encircled a **pradakshina walkway** (circumambulatory path).

- It is a magnificent stupa with a circumambulatory route and a circular mound. During the **time of Ashoka**, the big stupa at **Sanchi** was erected with bricks, then covered with stone and many further additions were made.

- **Gateways** were added in addition to the circumambulatory circuit. With the elaborations in stupa design, architects and sculptors had plenty of room to plan elaborations and carve out images.

- **Wooden sculptures** were used to embellish the **medhi and toran**. As a form of worship, devotees walk around the pradakshina patha, or open ambulatory pathway.

- Sculptures were largely utilized to decorate stupas, the **torana,** and the **medhi,** as well as a form of religious expression.

- The **three chhatra** on the stupas symbolize the **Buddhist triratnas**: **Buddha** (the enlightened), **Dhamma** (doctrine), and **Sangh** (community).

- Gateways were added in addition to the **circumambulatory circuit**. With the elaborations in stupa design, architects and sculptors had plenty of room to plan elaborations and carve out images.

- **Bairat in Rajasthan** has one of the outstanding examples of a stupa building from the third century BCE.

- **Sanchi Stupa in Madhya Pradesh,** for example, is the most well-known Ashokan stupa. The oldest is the **Piprahwa stupa** in Uttar Pradesh.

- Rajagriha, Vaishali, Kapilavastu, Allakappa, Ramagrama, Vethapida, Pava, Kushinagar, and Pippalivana are the nine stupas built following Buddha's death.

5.4 Some Important stupas

Stupas	*Location*	*Significance*
Sanchi Stupa	Madhya Pradesh	• It was constructed in the 3rd century BCE by Ashoka. • Bricks were used to construct the original construction. It was afterward covered with stone, vedica, and torana (gateway). • The stupa has four entrances, with the southern one being the first to be completed. Others were added subsequently. The gateways are ornately carved and ornamented with statues. • Since 1989, Sanchi Stupa has been a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
Sarnath, Dhamek Stupa.	Uttar Pradesh	• Dhamek Stupa is a huge stupa in Sarnath, Uttar Pradesh, • It was built in 500 CE to replace an earlier structure, together with numerous other monuments, commissioned by Ashoka in 249 BCE to commemorate the Buddha's activities in this region. • The Dhamek Stupa is supposed to be built on the site of Rishipattana, where after obtaining enlightenment, Buddha gave his first sermon to his first five Brahmin students, "revealing his Eightfold Path leading to nirvana."
Amaravati Stupa	Andhra Pradesh	• The Amravati Stupa, also known as the Great Stupa of Amravati, is a damaged Buddhist monument. • It was probably built in phases between the third century BCE and about 250 CE. • The Archaeological Survey of India is in charge of safeguarding the site. • The site's notable sculptures are now housed at a number of museums in India and overseas, many of which are severely damaged.
Bharhut Stupa	Madhya Pradesh	• The Sungas adapted the Bharhut stupa, which was originally erected by Asoka. • Unlike the Mauryas' imperial art, the reliefs and figures in Bharhut stupa were provided by laypeople, monks, and nuns, according to inscriptions on the railings. • As a result, it is considered one of the earliest instances of Maurya's popular art.

Nagarjuna-konda	Andhra pradesh	• Nagarjunakonda is an ancient town that is now an island at Nagarjuna Sagar, west of the Amaravati Stupa, another notable historic landmark. • Nagarjunakonda is home to the remnants of various Mahayana Buddhist and Hindu sanctuaries. • It is one of India's most important Buddhist sites, but it is currently nearly fully submerged beneath the Nagarjunasagar Dam.
Piprahwa	Uttar Pradesh	• Piprahwa is most known for its archaeological site and excavations, which imply that it was the site of the Buddha's ashes being handed to his own Sakya clan. • The site contains a massive stupa, as well as the ruins of many monasteries and a museum. • At the nearby Ganwaria mound, ancient residential complexes and temples were discovered.
Soneri Stupa	Madhya Pradesh	• Sonari is the ancient monastic complex of Buddhist stupas' archaeological site. • Sonari, like Sanchi, is a Buddhist stupa complex with two major and five minor stupas. • Alexander Cunningham uncovered two boxes carrying relics while excavating the stupas around 1850.

5.5 Conclusion

During the post-Mauryan period, stupas grew larger and more beautiful. Wood and brick were being phased out in favor of stone. The idea of torans as artistically painted gates to stupas was established by the Shunga dynasty. The torans were carved with elaborate designs and patterns, indicating **Hellenistic influence.**

6. Sanchi Stupa

Early Indian sculpture that adorned the 1st-century BC entrances of the Buddhist relic mound known as the **Great Stupa at Sanchi,** Madhya Pradesh, which is considered one of the most spectacular monuments of its time. From the 3rd century BC to the 11th century AD, the territory of Sanchi, like the great centers of Sarnath and Mathura, had a continuous artistic history. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Sanchi Stupa** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

6.1 Sanchi Stupa

- The **Sanchi Stupa** is one of India's most important **Buddhist landmarks**, and it houses some of the country's earliest stone buildings.
- Also, It is an important monument of Indian architecture and one of India's oldest stone constructions.
- It was commissioned in the third century BCE by **Mauryan ruler Ashok**a the Great. It began with a basic hemispheric brick edifice erected over the **Buddha's relics.**
- Sanchi, a historical city nestled in the Vindhya Range 46 kilometers from Madhya Pradesh's capital Bhopal, also has 50 additional sites, including temples and monasteries.
- The beautiful carvings and inscriptions show Indian architecture from the **Mauryan era** (3rd century BCE) through its downfall in the later medieval age (around 11th century CE).
- The **Mahastupa (Great Stupa)**, the **Ashokan pillar (with its inscriptions),** and the beautiful torans are all noteworthy features of the Sanchi complex (gateways).
- Since 1989, Sanchi Stupa has been a **UNESCO World Heritage Site**. Madhya Pradesh is home to Sanchi.
- It is possibly India's best-preserved Buddhist monument complex.

6.2 Historical background

- Sanchi's monuments currently consist of a collection of **Buddhist monuments** that date from the **Mauryan Empire (3rd century BCE),** continue through the **Gupta Empire (5th century CE),** and conclude around the 12th century CE.
- The Great Stupa, also known as Stupa No. 1, is the oldest and greatest monument.
- It was created under the Mauryans and is ornamented with one of Ashoka's Pillars.

- The **Great Stupa** was enlarged and ornamented with gates and railings in the succeeding centuries, particularly during the **Shungas and Satavahanas,** and minor stupas, including **Stupa No. 2 and Stupa No. 3,** were also built in the vicinity.
- According to **Ashokavadana,** the stupa was vandalized sometime during the 2nd century BCE, an incident that some have linked to the ascension of the Shunga monarch **Pushyamitra Shunga**, who overthrew the **Mauryan Empire** as an army officer.
- The first stupa may have been demolished by Pushyamitra, and his son **Agnimitra** rebuilt it, according to legend.
- During the Shunga period, the original brick stupa was covered with stone.
- In 1819, British captain **Edward Fell** wrote one of the first accounts of the Sanchi Stupa.
- It took another 93 years for John Marshall to 'rediscover' the site, and another seven years for it to be restored to its current state.

6.3 Features

- The **Mahastupa (Great Stupa)**, the Ashokan pillar (with its inscriptions), and the beautiful torans are all noteworthy features of the Sanchi complex (gateways).
- The **torans and fencing** are reported to be modeled after the bamboo crafts of the surrounding areas.
- The design of the stupa's fencing, as well as the torans' design, are reminiscent of bamboo craft and knotted bamboo.
- Bricks were used to construct the original construction. It was afterward covered with stone, **vedica**, and **torana (gateway).**
- The stupa has four entrances, with the southern one being the first to be completed. Others were added subsequently.
- The gateways are ornately carved and ornamented with statues. Two vertical pillars and three horizontal bars make up each **torana.** On the front and back of the bars are **magnificent sculptures.**
- They feature depictions of **shalabhanjika,** or women grasping a tree branch.
- Here are carved stories from the **Jataka tales.**
- A lower and upper pradakshina patha, or circumambulatory walk, runs around the structure. This stupa's upper pradakshina patha is unusual.
- The **Ashokan Lion Capital pillar,** which has inscriptions on it, may be seen on the southern side of the stupa.

- The **Anda** refers to the stupa's hemispheric dome. It is where the Buddha's relics are kept.

- On top of the dome/mound lies the **harmika,** which is a square railing.

- On top of the **harmika,** the **chhatra** is an umbrella. The location contains a sandstone pillar inscribed with **Ashoka's Schism Edict**.

- During the rule of the **Shunga dynasty**, the original brick dome was doubled in size, with stone slabs covering the previous dome.

6.4 Connection with Buddhism

- Surprisingly, **Buddha never came to Sanchi.**

- Foreign travelers like **Hiuen Tsang,** who documented the famous Buddhist circuit in India but didn't mention Sanchi in his books, didn't know either.

- Sanchi was not as revered as other Buddhist pilgrimage sites in India, according to Marshall's The Monuments of Sanchi (1938).

- The **iconic images of Buddh**a (like the Bodhi tree, a riderless horse, an empty throne, etc.) at Sanchi, according to scholars like Alfred A Foucher, are the result of **Graeco-Buddhist architectural** interaction.

6.5 Conclusion

The **Sanchi Stupa's** significance on our national psyche, however, extends beyond the lion capital; it influenced the design of various modern structures, the most notable of which being the current-day **Rashtrapati Bhavan.** Lord Charles Hardinge wanted architect Edwin Lutyens to incorporate emblems of India's architectural past into the building, and the colonnade was designed to carry a Sanchi-style dome and balustrade railing. The dome of Kolkata's Birla Planetarium was built in 1963 to match the one in Sanchi.

7. Chaityas

In Indian religions, **a chaitya, chaitya hall, or chaitya-griha is a shrine**, sanctuary, temple, or **prayer hall.** In Buddhism, the phrase refers to a **space with a stupa** and a **rounded apse** opposite the entrance, as well as a high **roof with a rounded profile**. The chaitya is the stupa itself, and the Indian structures are chaitya halls, but this distinction is sometimes overlooked. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Chaityas** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

7.1 What are Chaityas?

- In Indian religions, a **chaitya, chaitya hall, or chaitya-griha** is a shrine, sanctuary, temple, or **prayer hall.**

- The term is most commonly used in **Buddhism** to describe a space with a stupa and a rounded apse at the entrance, as well as a high roof with a rounded profile.

- Outside of India, **Buddhists** use the phrase to describe local kinds of miniature stupa-like monuments in **Nepal, Cambodia, Indonesia**, and other countries.

- Chaitya refers to a temple, sanctuary, or any sacred monument in **Jainism** and Hinduism's ancient scriptures, especially those dealing with buildings.

- The eastern parts of Andhra Pradesh are home to the ruins of a considerable number of structural **Buddhist Chaityas.**

- Ruins dating from the **3rd century BC** and later have been discovered in the districts of Srikakulam, Visakhapatnam, West Godavari, Krishna at Vijayawada, Guntur at Nagarjunakonda, and Amaravati. At Guntupalli, the largest brick Chaitya hall was unearthed.

7.2 Historical background

- The first comparable spaces to the chaitya hall date from the third century BCE.

- The rock-cut Barabar Caves (Lomas Rishi Cave and Sudama Cave) were excavated by or for the **Ajivikas,** a non-Buddhist religious and philosophical organization of the time, during **Ashoka's reign.**

- Many academics believe that they became "the pattern for Buddhist caves in the western Deccan," particularly the chaitya halls unearthed during the **2nd century CE.**

- Built in the second century BCE, the chaitya in **Bhaja Caves** is possibly the earliest surviving chaitya hall.

- The columns slant inwards to resemble wooden columns, which would have been structurally necessary to protect the roof from collapsing. The barrel-vaulted ceiling has antique wooden ribs put within it. The walls have a Mauryan gloss to them. It was once surrounded by a massive wooden front that has since vanished.

- India's influence has been felt throughout **Europe** as well. Buddhist Stupas and **Christian Basilicas** have a lot in common. Their mosaics appear to have taken inspiration from Buddhist chaityas.

7.3 Features

- The function of the **Chaitya was to pray.**

- It was a rectangular prayer hall with a stupa in the center. The Chaitya was divided into three sections and featured an **apsidal (semicircular)** back end.

- Two rows of pillars separated the central part of the hall (also known as the nave) from the two aisles.

- The chaityas also had polished inside walls, semicircular roofs, and **Chaitya windows**, which were horse-shoe-shaped windows.

- The eastern parts of Andhra Pradesh are home to the ruins of a considerable number of structural **Buddhist Chaityas.**

- **Wood** was employed in the roofing and entry arches of several of the **Chaityas.**

- **Bhaja's Chaitya** is the oldest remaining **Chaitya hall.** It's a long hall with an apse at the end, measuring 16.75 meters long and 8 meters wide.

- The hall is divided into a central nave and two aisles surrounded by two rows of pillars on either side.

- The ceiling is vaulted. A wooden **harmika crowns** the rock-cut stupa in the apse. The **Chaitya** has a wide arched toran and an arched portico at the entrance.

- The magnificent **Chaitya at Karle** represents the pinnacle of **Hinayana** rock construction. The lower half of this Chaitya has three doors and has a double-story facade. It has an upper gallery with the typical arch above it.

- The **Mahayana Buddhis**t creed defines the second era of Buddhist architecture. It may be seen in some of the outstanding rock-cut Chaityas at Ajanta in Maharashtra's Aurangabad area, excavated between the 5th and 9th centuries AD during the **Vakataka, Gupta, and Rashtrakuta dynasties.**

- Ruins dating from the 3rd century BC and later have been discovered

in the districts of **Srikakulam, Visakhapatnam, West Godavari, Krishna at Vijayawada**, Guntur at Nagarjunakonda, and Amaravati. At Guntupalli, the largest brick Chaitya hall was unearthed.

• **Ajanta, Ellora, Bhaja, Karle, Bagh, Nasik**, and Kanheri are some of the most spectacular rock-cut caves in the world.

• Some of **Bhaja's rock-cut Chaityas** are made of **chunar sandstone.**

• Early excavations pertaining to the first phase or **Hinayana creed of Buddhism** may be found in Maharashtra at **Kondane, Karle, and Ajanta.**

7.4 Conclusion

A chaitya, chaitya hall, or chaitya-griha is a shrine, sanctuary, temple, or prayer hall in Indian faiths. In Buddhism, the phrase refers to a place that has a stupa and a rounded apse at the entrance, as well as a high roof with a rounded profile. The chaitya is the stupa, and the Indian constructions are chaitya halls, however, this distinction is occasionally lost. Chaitya refers to a temple, sanctuary, or any sacred monument in Jainism and Hinduism's historical scriptures, especially those referring to architecture.

8. Viharas

A monastery for **Buddhist renunciates** is known as a **Vihara**. The concept is ancient, and it denoted any arrangement of space or amenities for habitation in early **Sanskrit and Pali** texts. In Buddhism, the phrase has evolved into an architectural notion that refers to monks' living quarters with an open communal space or courtyard. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Viharas** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

8.1 What are Viharas exactly?

- Vihara is a **Sanskrit word** having context-sensitive meanings that appears in various Vedic texts. It refers to a "**distribution, transposition, separation**, or **arrangement**" of words, sacred fires, or sacrificial land in general.

- Its post-Vedic connotation is more explicitly a type of rest house, temple, or monastery in Indian ascetic traditions, especially for a community of monks.

- Vihara is the name for a **Buddhist renunciate monastery**. In early Sanskrit and Pali writings, the word meant any arrangement of space or amenities for dwelling.

- In Indian architecture, particularly ancient Indian rock-cut architecture, vihara or vihara hall has a more specific significance.

- It refers to a central hall with little cells connected to it, sometimes with stone-carved beds. Some have a shrine cell set back from the back wall, with a stupa in early specimens or a Buddha-figure later.

- **Ajanta Caves, Aurangabad Caves, Karli Caves, and Kanheri Caves** are examples of huge sites with multiple viharas. An adjacent chaitya or worship hall was mentioned by others.

- The vihara was built to provide a rainy-day **shelter for Monks.**

- The term has become an architectural concept in **Buddhism,** referring to monks' dwelling quarters with an open public space or courtyard.

8.2 Historical background

- The origins of viharas are unknown. For **Ajivikas, Buddhists, and Jainas**, monasteries in the shape of caves date back to centuries before the Common Era.

- The Maurya Empire influenced the rock-cut architecture found in cave viharas from the 2nd century BCE.

- **Ellora's viharas**, which date from 400 AD to the 7th century AD, are the largest of their kind, with three stories. They are both **Hinayana** and **Mahayana Buddhist** in origin and contain sculpted figures.

8.3 Significance

- Viharas were monasteries that were built to house monks.

- Viharas began as temporary shelters for wandering monks during the rainy season, but because of gifts from affluent lay Buddhists, they soon blossomed into centers of scholarship and **Buddhist architecture**.

- Many Viharas, such as **Nalanda,** became globally famous, and their Buddhist teachings were spread throughout Asia, especially China and Tibet, where Buddhism thrived.

- The majority of viharas were built out of **brick or cut out of rock**.

- Viharas usually follow a predetermined layout, with a hall dedicated to communal prayer on three sides and a pillared verandah in front, or an open courtyard encircled by a row of cells and a pillared verandah in front.

- The **Hinayana viharas** located in these locations have several distinguishing characteristics that set them apart from **Mahayana viharas** in the same areas.

- There are one or more entrances to these halls. Each of the little compartments has one or two stone platforms that serve as beds.

- Large rectangular courtyards with **stone-paved central halls** have been discovered during vihara excavations at **Nagarjunakonda**. The row of tiny and large cells that surround the courtyard reflects monks' quarters and dining halls.

- **Viharas** are the greatest of monasteries, and twenty-five of **Ajanta's rock-cut caves** are viharas.

- It features a **well-decorated exterior**. The portico is supported by pillars with intricate carvings. Dwarf figures and ornately carved brackets and capitals adorn the square bases of the columns.

- A square abacus with elaborately carved makara designs sits beneath the capital. The cave's walls and ceilings are covered in **artwork.**

- The monks used these cells as their living quarters. These brick monastery buildings were self-contained entities with a **Chaitya hall or Chaitya mandir** linked to the main object of worship, the stupa.

- **Ajanta and Ellora** are two of the most important Buddhist viharas. Nasik, Karle, Kanheri, Bagh, and Badami are some of the cities in Nasik.

8.4 Conclusion

Local kings constructed monasteries as Buddhism expanded throughout **Southeast Asia**. The name vihara is still used to refer to monasteries/temples, sometimes known as wat, but it has taken on a narrower connotation in Thailand, referring to certain structures within the temple complex. Aside from the main ubosot (ordination hall), the wihan is a structure that houses a Buddha image. The wihan is a lecture hall or an assembly hall in various temples where rites such as the kathina are held. Many of these **Theravada viharas** contain a sacred Buddha image that has been solemnly dedicated by the monks.

9. Post Mauryan Art

India after the Mauryas was not a particularly remarkable time in terms of political unity, but it did see a significant **development of Indian art and culture.** After Ashoka's successors failed to maintain the empire, several tiny kingdoms arose across the Indian subcontinent. The **Sunga dynasty** quickly supplanted the Mauryan Dynasty. **Brahmanical sects** such as the Shaivas and the Vaishnavas arose during this time. This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Post-Mauryan Art** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

9.1 Post Mauryan Art

- In India, there are various sites that date back to the **second century BCE.**
- Vidisha, Bharhut (Madhya Pradesh), Bodhgaya (Bihar), Jaggayyapeta (Andhra Pradesh), Mathura (Uttar Pradesh), Khandagiri-Udayagiri (Odisha), Bhaja near Pune, and Pavaninear Nagpur are some of the most renowned examples of the greatest sculpture.

9.2 Bharhut

- **Bharhut** stupas are towering, like the Mauryan depictions of **Yaksha and Yakshini.**
- The sculptural volume is modeled in low relief to ensure linearity.
- Narratives depict relief panels, and selecting major events improves the clarity of the narratives.
- Narrative panels begin with fewer characters, but as time goes on, others, in addition to the main character in the story, have begun to appear **in the picture space.**
- At Bharhut, narrative reliefs demonstrate how artists effectively communicated stories using pictorial language.
- One such story is **Queen Mahamaya**/(Siddhartha Mayadevi's Gautama's mother) dream.
- The queen is reclining on the bed, with an elephant on the top of the bed moving towards Mayadevi's womb.
- The portrayal of a **Jataka story,** on the other hand, is quite basic - it is recounted by grouping events according to the geographical area of the story, such as the **Ruru Jataka picture**, which shows a Bodhisattva deer rescuing a man on his back.
- Such **Jataka stories** were used to decorate stupas.

- As the number of stupas built in different sections of the country increased, regional artistic differences emerged.

9.3 Sanchi

- In terms of stylistic advancement, the next phase of cultural growth at Sanchi **stupa-1**, Mathura, and Vengi in Andhra Pradesh is remarkable.

- **Sanchi's Stupa-1** contains both an upper and lower pradakshina patha or circumambulatory walk.

- The sculptures on the entrances of **Stupa-1** make it the best example of stupa building **(torans).**

- It began as a tiny brick structure that grew over time and was eventually covered in stone, **vedika (fence), and torans**.

- It includes four ornately decorated **Torans (Gateways)** portraying scenes from Buddha's life and **Jataka stories.**

- Figure compositions have a lot of relief and take up a lot of room.

- The stance is depicted in a **naturalistic manner,** with no stiffness in the body.

- The story becomes more detailed, and the carving methods appear to be more sophisticated than **Barhut's.**

- Symbols continued to depict Buddhas or Buddhas from the past (according to the textual tradition there are **24 Buddhas,** but only the first one, Dipankar, and the last six are pictorially represented).

- Despite the fact that the **narrative becomes more complex**, the portrayal of the dream episodes stays simple (the dream of **queen Mayadevi**).

- **Stupa-2** houses the relics of ten lesser-known **Arhats** from three generations. (An Arhat is a perfected person who has gained Nirvana in **Theravada Buddhism.**)

- In some **Buddhist traditions,** the phrase refers to persons who have made significant progress on the path to Enlightenment but have not yet attained full Buddhishood.

- The relics of **Sariputta** and **Mahamoggallana/Mahamouglayan** can be found in **Stupa-3** (disciples of Gautama Buddha).

- The top **pradakshina patha** is likewise peculiar to this location (i.e., totally two pradakshina patha).

- The four doorways are adorned with statues in abundance.

- An empty throne, feet, chhatra, stupas, and other symbols are used to represent Buddha.

- **Torans** can be built in any of the four directions.
- Despite the fact that stupa-1 is the earliest stupa, the carvings on stupa-2's vedika are older than those on stupa-1.
- The **Jataka stories** became an important component of the stories as well.
- Sanchi's figures, despite their small size, are extremely realistic.
- On sculptors, there are guardian images, and **salabhanjika sculptures** are notable for their quantity (salabhanjika sculptures are sculptures of ladies holding a branch of a tree/plate, etc.).
- The representations of **salabhanjika** support the elongation of the lowermost horizontal bar from below.

9.4 Mathura, Sarnath, Amaravati, and Gandhara Schools

- **Gandhara** (now Pakistan), **Mathura** in Uttar Pradesh, and **Vengi** in Andhra Pradesh all became prominent centres of art from the first century CE onwards.
- In Mathura and Gandhara, Buddha's symbolic form was transformed into a human form.
- In Gandhara, the sculptural tradition merged Bacteria, Parthia (both **Indo-Greeks**), and the native **Gandhara heritage**.
- Mathura's **indigenous sculptural** culture grew to such prominence that it extended throughout northern India. The stupa sculpture located in Sanghol, Punjab, is the best example.
- The Buddha picture at Mathura is based on earlier **Yaksha images,** whereas it includes Hellenistic characteristics in Gandhara.
- **Vishnu and Shiva** are seen with their respective Ayudhas (weapons).
- The characteristics of the several architectural schools are described here, along with an appropriate example from each.
- **Sultanganj Buddha** is a good illustration of this (7.5ft in height).

9.5 Seated Buddha, Katra mount

- **Mathura** has a vast number of images dating back to the Kushan period.
- The second-century CE figure of Buddha from Katra Mount.seated Buddha sculpture from Katra Mount
- It depicts the **Buddha with two Bodhisattvas** as his companions.
- The Buddha is sitting in **Padmasana** with his right hand in Abhaya Mudra.

- The Buddha's face is round, with chubby cheeks.
- With a vertical elevated projection, the **Ushnisha** (hair knot) is depicted.
- This period's Mathura sculptures are produced with a light volume and a **fleshy form.**
- Only one shoulder is covered by the **sanghati (garment)**.
- The representations of Padmapani and Vajrapani Bodhisattvas, one holding a lotus and the other a Vajra, are recognised as the attendant figures (Thunderbolt).
- The huge **halo** that surrounds Buddha's head is adorned with simple geometric designs.
- Two flying figures are positioned diagonally above the halo.

9.6 Seated Buddha at Sarnath

- The **late fifth-century CE** figure of Buddha from Sarnath is fashioned of chunar sandstone.
- Padmasana depicts the Buddha seated on a throne.
- Sarnath's seated Buddha image
- As the figures on the throne show, it signifies Dharmachakrapravartana (first sermon).
- **A Chakra (wheel)** is depicted in the centre of the panel below the throne, with a deer on either side and his students.
- As a result, it is a portrayal of the historic occurrence of Dharmachakrapravartana, or dhamma preaching.
- It is the best example of sculpture from the **Sarnath School.**
- In comparison to earlier images from the Kushana period at Mathura, the face is round, the eyes are half closed, the lower lip protrudes, and the roundness of the cheeks has decreased.
- **Dhamma Chakra Pravartana Mudra** is presented on the hands.
- The hair on the **Ushnisha** is curled in a round pattern.
- The goal of ancient Indian sculptures was to depict the Buddha as a wonderful human being who had attained **Nibbana (**cessation of anger and hate).

9.7 Buddha Head- Gandhara

- The Buddha head from Taxila in Pakistan's Gandhara region dates from the second century CE and is from the **Kushan period.**
- It demonstrates the development of a hybridised pictorial convention during the Gandhara period.

- It has **Greek and Roman influences.**
- The Buddha Head features aspects that are typical of **Hellenistic art.**
- **Buddha's curly** hair is thick, with a covered layer of shape and linear strokes all over his head.
- The frontal plane is large, with bulging eyeballs, half-closed eyes, and a round face and cheeks, unlike representations from other parts of India.
- The earlobes, in particular, are extended.
- The figures from the Gandhara region have a certain element of heft to them.
- **Head of the Buddha** from Taxila
- The form is treated with linearity, and the contours are sharp.
- The artwork is **highly expressive** and the surface is nice.
- The centre of attraction is the manifestation of tranquility.
- Face modelling improves naturalism and three-dimensionality.
- Gandhara style is characterised by the incorporation of **Acamenian, Parthian,** and **Bactrian elements** into local tradition.
- The origins of Buddha representations, as well as other imagery, can be traced back to the country's unique **geopolitical circumstances.**
- It's also worth noting that the northwestern section of India, which is now Pakistan, has always been inhabited since prehistoric times. It was also present during the historical period.

9.8 Amaravati stupa

- Many stupas can be found in **Vengi, Andhra Pradesh**, including Jagayyapetta, Amaravati, Bhattiprolu, Nagarjunakonda, and others.
- There is a **Mahachaitya** in Amaravati, as well as several statues.
- Amaravati stupa, like Sanchi stupa, has a pradakshina patha encased within a vedika depicting several narrative sculptures.
- The relief stupa sculpture slab that covers the domical stupa structure is a distinctive feature.
- The **Amaravati stupa's torana** has vanished over time.
- The early phase, like Sanchi, is devoid of Buddha images, but in the later phase (2nd and 3rd CE), Buddha images are carved on the drum slabs and in a variety of other places.
- In this area, the sculptural form is marked by strong emotions.
- The sculpture composition is more intricate than Sanchi, and the bodies are represented with three bends (**Tribanga**).

- **Queen Mayadevi's** Dream is also represented here.
- Amaravati, Nagarjunakonda, and Guntapalle all have their own Buddha images.
- Guntapalle is a rock-cut cave in Andhra Pradesh near Eluru.
- **Sannati is the largest stupa ever dug in Karnataka.**
- Other Buddhist pictures of Bodhisattvas, such as Avalokiteswara, Padmapani, Vajrapani, Amitabha, and Maitreya Buddha, began to be sculpted alongside Buddha statues.

9.9 Cave tradition in western India

- Many Buddhist caves dating back to the second century BCE have been discovered in western India.
- Chaitya hall with the apsidal vaulted roof (found at **Ajanta, Pitalkhora, Bhaja**)
- Apsidal vaulted vaulted vaulted vaulted vaulted vaulted vaulted vaulted vaulted vault (found at **Thana-Nadsur**)
- A quadrangular hall with a circular chamber at the back and a flat roof (found at Kondivite)
- A stupa is found in the back of all **chaitya caves**.
- **Karla**, Maharashtra, has the world's largest rock-cut chaitya hall.
- **Viharas** have been discovered in all of the caverns.
- The vihara's layout consists of a veranda, a hall, and cells surrounding the hall's walls.
- Interior decorative themes such as **chaitya** arches and **vedika** decorations over the cave's cell entrances can be found in many early vihara caves.
- Later on, a stupa was erected to the back of the vihara, and it was renamed **Chaitya-Vihara.**
- **Junnar (Maharashtra)** has the most cave excavations, with more than 200 caves around the town's hills, whereas **Kanheri (Mumbai)** has 138 caves explored.
- The caves were previously thought to belong to the **orthodox Buddhist** faith, Theravadins, due to the lack of Buddha pictures.
- However, the discovery of a **Konkan Maurya** inscription stating the Saka era 322 (400CE) has now proven conclusively that cave activity in western India existed.
- Many caverns have been turned into modern Hindu sanctuaries and have become popular worship locations.

9.10   Ajanta caves

- **Ajanta** is a well-known cave location in western India.

- It is situated in Maharashtra's Aurangabad district.

- There are 29 caverns in total, including four chaitya caves.

- It is home to the enormous **Chaitya-Vihara,** which is adorned with sculptures and paintings (murals).

- Ajanta is the only surviving example of first-century BCE and fifth-century BCE painting.

- Some of the vihara caverns are still under construction.

- Varahadeva, the Prime Minister of **Vakataka king Harisena**; Upendragupta, the native king of the region and Harisena's feudatory; Buddhabadra, and Mathurasena were all prominent patrons of Ajanta.

- Figures in the **paintings** are hefty, reminiscent of western Indian sculpture.

- Cave excavation and painting took place at the same time, and the paintings were dated after the cave excavation.

- The paintings' various skin tones symbolize a **multi-colored civilization.**

- The paintings depict episodes from Buddha's life, as well as the Jatakas and **Avadanas.**

- The locations of events in the bush and events in the palace are distinguishable.

- In Ajanta, images of **Padmapani and Vajrapani** are quite prevalent.

9.11   Ellora caves

- Ellora is another notable cave site in **Aurangabad.**

- It is 100 kilometers from Ajanta.

- There are 32 caves in total, including **Buddhist, Brahmanical, and Jain caves.**

- It is a one-of-a-kind art historic landmark in the country since it contains monasteries affiliated with all three religions that date from the fifth to eleventh centuries CE.

- There are 12 Buddhist caves with several Vajrayana Buddhist pictures.

- Buddhist caves are large, with single, double, and triple stories.

- Pillar patterns originate in Buddhist caves, and when they reach Jain caves (9th century CE), they become exceedingly ornate, with strong protrusion of the decorative elements.

- **Shaivism** is practiced in the majority of Brahmanical caves.
- Vishnu's various avatars are also shown here.
- **Kailas Leni/Kailasa Temple** is the name given to Cave No.16.
- It is a rock-cut temple carved from a single piece of rock.
- It was constructed in the eighth century CE.
- **Ravana striving** to move Mount Kailash with all his power is a masterpiece of Indian sculpture.

9.12 Elephanta caves

- The Elephanta Caves, which are located on **Elephanta Island in Mumbai,** were once a Buddhist site that was eventually taken over by the Shaivite faith.
- It's from the same era as Ellora.
- **Bagh,** near Indore, MP, is another significant cave location.
- The **Bagh cave** also has murals, including one depicting a group of dancers that resembles the North Indian **Garba Dance (originated in Gujarat).**
- The tradition of **rock-cut caves** continued in the Deccan, with examples finding not only in Maharashtra but also in Karnataka, primarily at **Badami and Aihole,** and in Andhra Pradesh in the Vijayawada area, and in Tamil Nadu, primarily at Mahabalipuram, under the patronage of the Pallavas.
- When the country's early history was based on collective public patronage, the post-sixth-century CE era was based more on political patronage.
- This is where **Maheshmurti's sculpture** (Shiva in the center, Bhairava, and Uma on either side) may be found.

9.13 Cave tradition in Eastern India

- **Buddhist caves** have been discovered in eastern India, primarily in the coastal districts of Andhra Pradesh and Odisha, similar to those found in western India.
- Guntapalle in the Eluru district is one of the most important places in Andhra Pradesh.
- Guntapalle is one of the few locations where structural stupas, viharas, and caverns have all been unearthed in one location.
- **Rampa Yerrampalem**, in addition to **Guntapalle**, is an important location.

- A massive rock-cut stupa was carved out of the **hillock in Anakapalli,** near Visakhapatnam, during the 4th-5th century CE.
- It is a remarkable location since it contains the country's largest rock-cut stupas.
- The **Udayagiri-Khandagiri** caves in Odisha are another notable cave location.
- These caverns are distributed around the area and contain inscriptions from the Kaharvela Kings.
- The caves were intended for Jain monks, according to the inscription.
- Numerous single-cell excavations can be seen here.
- The upper half of the cell is embellished with a succession of **Chaitya arches** and legends that are still told in the region's folklore.

9.14 Early Temples

- While stupa construction continued, **Brahmanical temples** and images of gods began to be built.
- Myths mentioned in the Puranas were incorporated into narrative expression.
- Each temple housed a primary picture of a god.
- The temple's shrines were divided into three types:
- **Sandhara type:** with pradakshina patha
- **Nirandara type:** does not have pradakshina patha.
- **Sarvatobhadra type:** accessible from all sides.
- Some major temple sites from this time period include Deogarh (UP), Eran, Nacha-kuthara, and Udayagiri near Vidisha in MP, among others.
- These temples are basic structures that include a veranda, a hall, and a shrine in the back.

9.15 Deogarh temple

- Deogarh is a notable example, dating from the early **sixth century CE.**
- The main shrine is erected on a **rectangular pedestal,** with four smaller subsidiary shrines at the four corners, in the panchayatana style of architecture (making it a total number of five shrines, hence the name, panchayatana).
- This curving latina or **rekha-prasada** kind of shikhara further indicates that this is an early example of a traditional **nagara temple style.**
- The temple **displays Vishnu** in many forms, it was assumed that the

four ancillary shrines must have likewise held Vishnu's avatars, and the temple was identified as a **dashavatara temple.**

9.16 Conclusion

Gandhara, Mathura, Amaravati, and other post-Mauryan schools of art and architecture, as well as cave traditions that flourished at the time. This article also covers some of the most important architectural sites, including Sanchi, Ajanta, and Ellora. Various monarchs established authority over the large Mauryan Empire from the second century BCE onwards. The great Brahmanical sects, such as the Vaishnavas and Shaivas, rose to prominence during this time.

10. Bharhut Stupa - Post Mauryan Art and Architecture

Bharhut stupas are tall, like the Mauryan depictions of Yaksha and Yakshini, and the sculptural volume is modeled in low relief to ensure linearity. A large stupa was built in **100 B.C. in Bharhut,** which is now part of modern-day Madhya Prade in Satna District). The Sungas adapted the Bharhut stupa, which was originally erected by Asoka. This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Bharhut stupa** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

10.1 Bharhut stupa

*   Bharhut sculptures are tall, like the **Mauryan depictions** of **Yaksha and Yakshini,** and the sculptural volume is modelled in low relief to ensure linearity.

*   The illusion of **three-dimensionality** is conveyed with slanted perspective in the relief panels displaying storytelling. The **narrative's clarity** is improved by focusing on key occurrences.

*   At Bharhut, narrative panels are exhibited with fewer characters, but as time passes, other characters begin to appear in the picture area, in addition to the main character in the story.

*   Occasionally, more than one event in a single geographic location is shown in the pictorial space, or only one major event is depicted in the pictorial area.

*   At Bharhut, narrative reliefs demonstrate how artisans employed **pictorial language** to effectively transmit stories.

10.2 Historical background

*   A large stupa was built in **100 B.C. in Bharhut**
*   **The Sungas adapted the Bharhut stupa, which was originally erected by Asoka.**

10.3 Architectural Significance

*   Unlike the Mauryas' imperial art, the reliefs and figures in **Bharhut stupa** were provided by **lay people, monks, and nuns,** according to inscriptions on the railings. As a result, it is considered one of the earliest instances of Maurya popular art.

*   The Buddha's previous incarnations' birth stories, known as **Jataka tales**, are depicted on the railings.

- The **aniconic phase** of Buddhist art is represented by the Bharhut stupa. Buddha has been shown as a series of symbols.

- Except for one foreigner, presumed to be an **Indo-Greek soldier,** who is represented wearing the Indian dhoti with **Buddhist iconography,** the style is mainly flat, with low bass relief, and all figures are depicted wearing the Indian dhoti.

- The Bharhut stupa railings feature several depictions of **yakshas and yakshis,** who have long been a part of Indian society.

- The earliest depictions of the **Yakshas and Yakshis**, which later became part of later art, may be seen at Bharhut. These represent the spirit of nature and help to remind us of the divinity that lurks beneath all we see.

- The **Yakshas and Yakshis** represent nature's protection and plenty, which ensures the continuation of life.

- **Kubera,** whom the Yaksha and Yakshis attend, is depicted on the north gateway of the **Vedika at Bharhut.**

- The photos of Yakhsi Chandra and Krishika, who are seen entangled with a tree, can be found. Another Yakshi, Ashok Dohada, holds an Ashoka Tree leaf in her palm as well as a kid in her womb (two hearts) and weaves her way through the tree like a creeper, symbolizing fertility.

- One of the sculptures depicts **Laksmi** on the Bharhut's railing, which is the earliest representation of the goddess.

- The sculptures on the Bharhut railings are in low relief and do not have the depth of later **Indic art.**

- A **Greek warrior** is depicted on a pillar of the vedika. He has short hair and a headband and is dressed in boots and a tunic.

- **A Nagaraja,** the serpent king, is shown on another fence, dressed in human form but wearing a **serpent hood**. **Naga deities**, like yakshas and yakshis, serve to remind us of the power, protection, and fertility of nature.

- The railing of the Bharhut "stupa" depicts **Queen Maya's dream,** which occurred before the Buddha's birth.

- The figure of the Buddha was never depicted in early Buddhist art. Instead, symbols of him were there, including a seat, footprints, the **Bodhi tree,** the wheel, and the "stupa." The railings' sculptural reliefs are a veritable collection of early **Buddhist iconographic elements.**

10.4 Conclusion

As the number of stupas built in different sections of the country increased, regional artistic differences began to appear. The knotted headpiece is a common feature in all-male images from the first to second centuries BCE. It is quite constant in numerous sculptures. The Indian Museum in Kolkata houses some of the sculptures discovered at Bharhut.

11. Schools of Art in Ancient India

Buddhism flourished significantly throughout the early Christian era (1st and 2nd centuries) and sparked a revitalized artistic fervor to represent Buddha's message, resulting in the formation of three primary schools of sculpture in India, each with its styles and characteristics. The **Gandhara, Mathura, and Amaravati** schools of art were named for the cities where they flourished. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Mathura, Gandhara, Amaravati Schools** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

11.1 Mathura School of Art

- Initially, a complicated kind of **symbolism** was prevalent in the **Gandhara style,** but **Mathura style** broke from it by developing the custom of translating Buddhist symbols into human form in accordance with **Kanishka's rule.**

- An indigenous form of sculpture evolved in Mathura, which mostly used **red sandstone.**

- The representations of **Vaishnava and Shaiva faiths**, as well as Buddhist images, are prevalent in the Mathura style, which is known for its **assimilative quality.**

- The pictures of Siva and Vishnu, as well as their consorts Parvathi and Lakshmi, were carved out in the Mathura school, and the female forms of yakshinis and apsaras were also carved out magnificently.

- It's worth noting that the images of Shiva and Vishnu were created by their respective ayudhas (weapons).

- The **Jain Tirthankaras'** records can also be found in **Mathura Style.**

- **Sarnath and Kausambi** arose as key centres of art creation in the Mathura School of art, which is known for its vibrancy and assimilationist nature, although Mathura remained the principal art production location.

- The Mathura Buddha images continue to depict **folds in the drapery** and the **halo around the head is lavishly adorned.**

- More emphasis was placed on **internal beauty** and **face sentiments** in Mathura style than on bodily gestures.

- The big pictures were carved with audacity since the earliest Mathura image-makers never intended to construct an anatomically **realistic human Buddha.**

11.2 Gandhara School of art

- During the rule of **Indo-Greek monarchs** in Northwest India, the Gandhara School of art flourished near Peshawar (now Pakistan), although the **Sakas and Kushanas**, particularly Kanishka, were the true supporters of the Gandhara school of art.

- Following the **Greek invasions,** many painters from West Asia settled in the north-west of India, and they were heavily affected by Graeco-Roman art throughout the Kushana period.

- The Kushana kings, particularly Kanishka, encouraged **Gandhara artisans** to carve themes from Buddha's life and the jatakas, resulting in a huge number of Buddha and Bodhisattva representations.

- The **Gandhara School of Art** is also known as the **Graeco-Buddhist School of Art** because it applied Greek art techniques to Buddhist subjects (beautiful pictures of the Buddha and Bodhisattvas).

- Gandhara style acquired almost all **foreign influences,** including Greek, Roman, Persian, Saka, and Kushan.

- The reliefs of the Gandhara Sculpture show **Buddha's birth, renunciation,** and preaching, with the best examples dating from the first and second centuries A.D.

- The drapery was thick, with **broad and bold fold lines,** and the **human form** was cast in a **realistic manner**, with physical details like a **moustache, muscles, and curly hai**r given minute attention.

- The main sites where artworks of the Gandhara School have been found are Jalalabad, Begram, Hadda, Bamaran, and Taxila, with the Bamiyan Buddha of Afghanistan considered an example of the Gandhara School.

11.3 Amaravati school of art

- The **Amaravati School** evolved on the banks of the **Krishna River** in southern India, under the patronage of the **Satavahana monarchs.**

- The **Amaravati School of Art** thrived in the Andhra Pradesh region between the lower basins of the rivers Krishna and Godavari.

- The 'narrative art' is a prominent feature of the **Amaravati school.**

- The medallions were carved in such a way that they depict a natural incidence.

- One medallion, for example, depicts the entire account of the **Buddha's taming of an elephant.**

- The **Amravati stupas** are made of striking white marble.

- In human, animal, and floral forms, Amaravati sculptures have a sense of movement and vitality, as well as profound and serene naturalism.

- **Amravati, Nagarjunikonda, Goli, Ghantasala, and Vengi** are notable locales where this style evolved.

- There is a symbolic picture of **Buddha's life,** but he is also personified in two or three places.

- The **Amaravati Stupa, like the Sanchi Stupa,** contains pradakshina patha encased within a vedika on which various narrative stories from the life of Buddha and bodhisattva prevail, but its structural anatomy is more intricate.

- This style included both **religious and secular images.**

- This style was later influenced by **Pallava and Chola architecture.**

11.4 Major differences between Mathura-Gandhara-Amaravati school of art

Mathura	*Gandhara*	*Amaravati*
• The Mathura School flourished on the banks of the river Yamuna in the period between 1st and 3rd centuries B.C.	• Between 50 B.C. and 500 A.D., the Gandhara School flourished in two periods.	• From 200-100 BCE, a different type of art style arose and flourished at Amaravati for about six centuries.
• Patronised by Kushana rulers.	• Patronised by Kushana rulers.	• Patronised by Satavahana rulers.
• Developed in the North West Frontier, in the modern-day Kandahar region.	• Developed in and around Mathura, Sonkh, and Kankalitala. • Kankalitila was well-known for its Jain sculptures.	• Developed in the lower Krishna-Godavari valley, in and around Amaravati and Nagarjunakonda
• It was created by indigenous peoples without the influence of outside cultures. • The narrative and imagery of all three religions of the time, Buddhism, Hinduism, and Jainism	• It is also known as Indo- Greek art because of the heavy influence of Greek or Hellenistic sculpture.	• It was created by indigenous peoples and was not affected by outside cultures.
• Spotted red sandstone was utilized in the construction of this school.	• Early Gandhara School buildings used bluish-grey sandstone, whereas later used mud and stucco.	• White marbles were used to create the sculptures at Amaravati School.

• The Mathura Buddha images continue to depict folds in the drapery and the halo around the head is lavishly adorned. • More emphasis was placed on internal beauty and face sentiments in Mathura style than on bodily gestures.	• The reliefs of the Gandhara Sculpture show Buddha's birth, renunciation, and preaching, with the best examples dating from the first and second centuries A.D. • The drapery was thick, with broad and bold fold lines, and the human form was cast in a realistic manner, with physical details like a mustache, muscles, and curly hair given minute attention.	• Since the sculptures are often part of narrative art, there is less attention on Buddha's particular traits. • The sculptures often depict Buddha's life stories and the Jataka tales, i.e., former lives of Buddha in both human and animal form.
• At Mathura, pictures of the Vaishnava and Shaiva faiths can also be seen, but Buddhist ones predominate.	• The main sites where artworks of the Gandhara School have been found are Jalalabad, Begram, Hadda, Bamaran, and Taxila	• Amravati, Nagarjunikonda, Goli, Ghantasala, and Vengi are notable locales where this style evolved. • There is a symbolic picture of Buddha's life, but he is also personified in two or three places.

11.5 Sarnath school of Art

- The Sarnath School of Sculpture arose around Sarnath.

- It was distinguished by its use of **cream-colored sandstone and metal.** This school's sculptures were meticulously dressed and devoid of any type of nakedness.

- Many Buddha pictures in Sarnath have **plain translucent drapery** covering both shoulders and a sparsely ornamented **halo around the head**, whereas the **Mathura Buddha** images retain the folds of the drapery and the halo around the head is lavishly embellished.

- **Sultanganj Buddha** is a notable example (7.5ft in height).

11.6 Conclusion

India's art is a one-of-a-kind chapter in the history of human endeavor. It reveals the human mind's darkest recesses and serves as a mirror for the Indian spirit. In the many beautiful achievements, India's creative brilliance has found complete and perfect expression in its spiritual and religious dimensions.

12. Gandhara School of Art

The Gandhara school of art was one of ancient India's most important schools of art which was evolved during the reign of Kushana emperor Kanishka. The Gandhara School of art arose from the fusion of these Greco-Roman and Indian ideas, as well as the influence of other foreign traditions such as those from China and Iran. The main theme of the Gandhara School of art was Lord Buddha and the Bodhisattvas because it was closely associated with Mahayana Buddhism. As a result, it is possible to speculate that this style was Indian in concept but foreign in execution. The Bamiyan Buddha statues are an example of Gandhara style art. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Gandhara School of Art** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

12.1 Historical background

*   The Gandhara school of Art arose in **modern-day Peshawar** and Afghanistan on Punjab's western boundaries.
*   The Greek invaders brought the traditions of **Greek and Roman sculptor**s with them, which affected the region's native traditions.
*   As a result, the Gandhara School became known as the Greco-Indian School of Art.
*   Between **50 B.C. and 500 A.D.**, the Gandhara School flourished in two periods. While the former school's sculptures were made of bluish-grey sandstone, the latter school's were made of mud and plaster.
*   The **Buddha and Bodhisattvas** iconography was based on the Greco-Roman pantheon and resembled Apollo's.

12.2 Major Centres

Jalalabad, Hadda, Bamaran, Begram & Taxila were the main centers where art pieces of Gandhara School have been found.

12.3 Major Features

*   The Gandhara sculptures have been discovered in the **Taxila ruins** as well as other ancient sites in **Afghanistan and Pakistan.**
*   They generally consist of **Buddha images** and relief sculptures depicting scenes from **Buddhist literature.**
*   Several Bodhisattva figures were cut out of the rock. The first preaching in the deer park and the Buddha's death is depicted in a **Gandhara figure.**

- The predominant focus of this type of painting was Lord Buddha and **Bodhisattvas**, as it was intimately tied with **Mahayana Buddhism**. As a result, it's possible that this style was Indian in thought and conception but alien in execution.

- The **Bamiyan Buddha sculptures** are an example of Gandhara style art.

- It thrived primarily in Afghanistan and present-day **North-Western India.**

- **Taxila**, **Peshawar, Begram, and Bamiyan** were among the most prominent sites. From the first century BCE through the fourth century CE, the Gandhara School of art flourished.

Themes

- The **Buddhist themes** were largely represented in Gandhara art. The Buddha's mother resembles an **Anthenian matron.**

- A Buddhist scene was created with an **Apollo-like face**. The image of Athena of Rome in Lahore is perhaps one of the most beautiful Gandhara sculptures depicting a western topic.

- It was created in order to express **Buddhist ideas and practices.**

- The specimens do not include any **Greek art motif**, with a few exceptions. The hand of the Gandhara artist was Greek, but his heart was Indian.

Patrons

Gandhara School was fostered by the Shakas and the Kushanas. The first sculptural portrayals of the Buddha in human form are attributed to the Gandhara school.

Features of sculpture

- The human body is sculpted in a **realistic manner** in these sculptures, with considerable attention to realism and physical details, particularly in the depiction of **muscles, mustaches,** and other **facial features.**

- The portrayal of the broad bold fold lines is a unique trait that sets it apart from what has been discovered elsewhere in India.

The Various Mudras of Buddha in Gandhara Art

In all the Buddha depicted in the Gandhara Art is shown making four types of hand gestures and this is a remarkable feature in this art. The gestures are as follows:

- Abahayamudra : Don't fear

- Dhyanamudra : meditation
- Dharmachakramudra: a preaching mudra
- Bhumisparshamudra: Touching the earth.

Other features

The existence of pictures of Mother Goddess is another telling aspect, as worship of this goddess remains an important religious expression for ordinary people. Buddhism, like other popular religious cults, became intertwined with fertility cults.

Greek influences on Gandhara School of art

- **Greek god as protector:** In many images of Buddha in Gandhara; he is seen under the protection of Greek god Hercules.
- **Vajrapani:** Vajrapani found in the right hand of future Buddha is told as a transformed symbol of Hercules who is seen as the protector of Buddha.
- **Greek architectural influence:** Some images of Buddha in Gandhara are presented in the Greek architectural environment bearing the affinity of Corinthian.
- **Artistic beauty:** The Apollo-like face of Buddha; natural realism; wavy hair as seen in images of Buddha in Gandhara resembles Hellenistic tradition.
- **Intellectual affinity:** The hello and bun of Gandhara Buddha signify intellectual imbitions of Buddha from Greek.
- Despite the fact that Gandharan sculpture's iconography was predominantly Indian, it also included elements and methods from Classical Roman art.
- Vine scrolls, cherubs with garlands, tritons, and centaurs are examples of Classical Roman art found in Gandharan sculptures.
- Additionally, the Gandharan artists drew on the Roman religion's anthropomorphic traditions.
- Gandharan art depictions of Buddha are evocative of statues of a youthful Apollo.
- The drapery on Buddha's garments was also eerily similar to that on Roman imperial monuments.

12.4 Conclusion

Kanishka was a generous patron of architecture and sculpture in combination. The Gandhara school of painting was popular during this time

period. With varying degrees of success, Greek art forms were adapted to Buddhist issues. Images of the Buddha in the shape of **Apollo and Yaksha Kubera** in the likeness of **Zeus** the Greek appeared. The drapery is based on Hellenistic designs. Through Chinese Turkistan, this particular style was later transported to the Far East.

13. Amaravati School of Art

The **Amaravati school of art** developed between the lower valleys of the Krishna and Godavari rivers in Andhra Pradesh. A distinct type of art originated and flourished at Amaravati for around six centuries between 200 and 100 BCE. The **'narrative art'** is a prominent feature of the Amaravati school. One medallion, for example, displays an entire story about the Buddha taming an elephant. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Amaravati school of art** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

13.1 Historical Background

- The Amaravati style of art developed and flourished in India for approximately six centuries, from **200 to 100 BC**, with no outside influences.
- This school of sculpture flourished in the **second century BC**, especially in the second half.
- Images of a more secular nature were also created. These take the shape of female images, trees, animals, and birds, among other things. **Satavahanas were the first patrons of this school.**

13.2 Major Features

- The **'narrative art'** is a prominent feature of the Amaravati school
- The **medallions** were carved in such a way that they depicted a natural occurrence.
- One medallion, for example, displays an entire story about the **Buddha taming an elephant.**
- The Amravati stupas are made of striking **white marble.**
- In human, animal, and floral forms, Amaravati sculptures have a sense of movement and vitality, as well as profound and serene naturalism.
- Amravati, Nagarjunikonda, Goli, Ghantasala, and Vengi are notable locales where this style flourished.
- There is a symbolic picture of Buddha's life, yet he is also personified in two or three places.
- The Amaravati Stupa, like the Sanchi Stupa, has a pradakshina patha contained by a vedika on which various narrative stories from the life of
- Buddha and bodhisattva predominate, but its structural anatomy is more intricate.

- This style included both religious and secular images.
- Pallava and Chola buildings evolved from this style later.

13.3 Significance

- **Influence - Indigenous, with no foreign influence**
- **Patrons -** The **Satavahanas** were the first to patronize it, followed by the **Ikshvakus** and other groups (feudatories, administrators, and merchants).
- The Amaravati School of Art developed between the lower valleys of the **Krishna and Godavari rivers in Andhra Pradesh.**
- **Theme -** In human, animal, and floral forms, **Amaravati sculptures** have a sense of movement and vitality, as well as profound and serene naturalism.
- This style included both religious and secular images.
- Pallava and Chola buildings evolved from this style later.
- **Features of the sculpture -** The 'narrative art' is a prominent feature of the Amaravati school.
- The medallions were carved in such a way that they depicted a natural occurrence.
- One medallion, for example, displays an entire story about the **Buddha taming an elephant.**
- **Type of sandstone -** The Amravati stupas are made of striking **white marble.**
- Amravati, Nagarjunikonda, Goli, Ghantasala, and Vengi are notable locales where this style flourished.
- There is a **symbolic picture** of Buddha's life, yet he is also personified in two or three places.
- **Other features -** The Amaravati Stupa, like the Sanchi Stupa, has a **pradakshina patha** contained by a vedika on which various narrative stories from the life of **Buddha and bodhisattva** predominate, but its structural anatomy is more intricate.

13.4 Conclusion

The Amaravati School's artists concentrated on depicting famine beauty, creating a huge variety of female representations in diverse postures and moods, such as sitting, dancing, bending, and flying. Amaravati School's **Yaksha and Yakshini** symbolize love, grace, and beauty. In the pictures of the Amaravati School, even birds and animals, men and plants have been portrayed with the utmost grace. Amaravati School's photos were transported to Sri Lanka, Myanmar, Java, and Sumatra, Cambodia.

14. Gandhara and Mathura School of Art

The **Gandhara school** of Art arose in modern-day Peshawar and Afghanistan on Punjab's western boundaries. Between the **1st and 3rd centuries B.C**, the **Mathura School** thrived on the banks of the **Yamuna River**. Despite the fact that both schools of art appear to have emerged under the Kushanas' rule, they are located in distinct places on the Northwest Frontier and in Mathura. This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Gandhara and Mathura School of Art - Major Differences** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

14.1 Gandhara School of Art

- **Gandhara art flourished in India during the reign of the Kushan Empire.**
- Kanishka, the greatest of the Kushanas, was a well-known patron of the arts and building. During his reign, the **Gandhara School** of painting flourished.
- **Greek techniques** had a big effect on Gandhara School.
- The Greek invaders brought the traditions of Greek and Roman sculptors with them, which affected the region's native traditions.
- As a result, the Gandhara School became known as the **Greco-Indian School of Art.**

14.2 Mathura School of Art

- **Indianism** had a huge influence on the Mathura School of Art. The sculptures **lacked spirituality.**
- Sculptures and statues were typically made out of **spotted red sandstone**. The Buddha and the Bodhisattva are shown in the beginning as joyful, plump creatures with little spirituality.
- The **Mathura School of Arts** was known for its Buddha representations, as well as statues of many gods and goddesses, including Jain Tirthankaras.
- The narrative and imagery of all three religions of the time – **Buddhism, Hinduism, and Jainism** – were impacted by the Mathura School's sculptures.
- The images were based on Yaksha images discovered during the **Mauryan period.**

14.3 Major Differences between Gandhara and Mathura School of Art

Differences	*Gandhara school*	*Mathura school*
Time of development	• Between 50 B.C. and 500 A.D., the Gandhara School flourished in two periods.	• The Mathura School flourished on the banks of the river Yamuna in the period between 1st and 3rd centuries B.C.
Patronage	• Kushan dynasty	• Kushan dynasty
Area of development	• Developed in the modern-day Kandahar region of the northwest Frontier.	• Mathura, Sonkh, and Kankalitila were the sites of development. Jain sculptures were famous in Kankalitala.
Influence	• It is also known as Indo-Greek art because of the heavy influence of Greek or Hellenistic sculpture. • The Greek invaders brought the traditions of Greek and Roman sculptors with them, which affected the region's native traditions.	• It was created by indigenous peoples without the influence of outside cultures. • The narrative and imagery of all three religions of the time, Buddhism, Hinduism, and Jainism were impacted by the Mathura School's sculptures. • The images were based on Yaksha images discovered during the Mauryan period.
Religious influence	• Buddhist imagery influenced by the Greco-Roman pantheon is the most common.	• The three major religions of the time, Hinduism, Jainism, and Buddhism, all had an impact.
Materials used	• Early Gandhara School buildings used bluish-grey sandstone, whereas later used mud and stucco.	• Mathura School's sculptures used spotted red sandstone.
Features of Buddha	• With flowing hair, the Buddha is depicted in a spiritual mood. • He has fewer jewelry on and is reclining in the yogi stance. • As in meditation, the eyes are partially closed. • The Buddha's omniscience is symbolized by a protuberance on his head. • The halo is not generally decorated in Gandhara Style, and the pictures are much more expressive.	• Buddha is depicted with a happy expression on his face. • Wearing a tight dress on the body symbolizes muscularity. • The head and face have been shaved. • Buddha is seated in padmasana with many mudras and a serene expression on his face. • On the head, a similar protuberance can be seen.

Other features	• The existence of pictures of the Mother Goddess is another telling aspect, as worship of this goddess remains an important religious expression for ordinary people. • Buddhism, like other popular religious cults, became intertwined with fertility cults.	• The woman was at the center of the painting, and there are few works of Indian art that can match the gorgeous feminine figures created by the Mathura artists in terms of beauty, delicacy, and appeal.

14.4 Conclusion

Some believe that the earliest iconographers were Hellenistic artists of Gandhara, while others trace it to Mathura's sculptures. Sculptures created by the former are typically regarded as belonging to the Gandhara school, while those created by the latter are regarded as belonging to the Mathura school. Because the sculptural and iconographic elements of their works differ in crucial details, it is likely that images were created roughly simultaneously by both schools.

15. Mathura School of Art

Mathura school of art is a Buddhist visual art form that flourished in Mathura, Uttar Pradesh, as a commercial and pilgrimage centre. During the reign of **Kushan emperor Kanishka** in the first century AD, the Mathura School of Art flourished. During the **Gupta period** (6th or 7th century), this art achieved its pinnacle. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Mathura school of art** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

15.1   Mathura School of Art

- The **Mathura School of Art** flourished mostly during the reign of Kushana ruler Kanishka in the first century AD. Mathura School grew up on its own.

- Mathura was the traditional centre of output for this school, with Sarnath and Kosambi also playing key roles. **Spotted red sandstone** was utilised in the construction of this school. During the **Gupta period**, in the **6th or 7th century,** this art achieved its pinnacle.

- The representations of Buddha, Bodhisattvas, Vishnu, Shiva, Yakshas, Yakshinis, Jinas, and others found in the Mathura school depict the **city's life** and assimilation character as a result of **Brahmanism, Jainism, and Buddhism's religious fervour.**

- Mathura art was notable for its Jina image and indigenous style of Buddha's image.

- In the artwork, the Mathura School used a lot of **symbolism**. **Avayudhas** were used to depict the Hindu gods. Shiva, for example, is represented by linga and mukhalinga.

- Similarly, the halo around Buddha's **head is bigger** and adorned with geometrical patterns than in the Gandhara School. **Padmapani holds** a lotus and **Vajrapani holds a thunderbol**t, and Buddha is encircled by two **Bodhisattvas.**

15.2   Salient features of Mathura Art

- **Buddha image - Buddha was never represented in a human form at any of Sanchi, Bharhut, or Gaya prior to the founding of this school.**

- **Themes -** Only symbols, such as two footprints or a wheel, were used to represent Buddha. Mathura artists continued to depict symbols at first, but the human figure of Buddha gradually emerged as a separate school of art.

- This depiction of the human Buddha was based on **Yaksha representations.**

- Early depictions of the Buddha and Bodhisattva are plump, joyful beings with no spirituality. They have a blocky appearance and a smooth, close-fitting robe that is virtually entirely free of wrinkles.

- **Patrons -** The Mathura statues are related to earlier **yaksa** (male nature deity) figures, with a strong resemblance to the early Kushn period's massive standing Buddha representations.

- **Features of sculpture -** The overall impact of them, as well as the more traditional seated Buddhas, is one of great force. The **shoulders are broad**, the **chest expands,** and the legs are planted firmly with feet split apart.

- Images were more sensuous and flashier in the second century AD, with increasing rotundness. By the third century AD, the extreme **fleshiness** had subsided, and the surface features had become more **polished.**

- The **shaved head,** the protuberance on the top of the head indicated by a tiered spiral, a round smiling face, the right arm raised in **abhaya-mudra** (reassurance gesture), the left arm akimbo or resting on the thigh, the drapery closely moulding the body and arranged in folds over the left arm, leaving the right shoulder bare, and the presence of the lion throne rather than the lotus throne are

- **The halo around Buddha's head was lavishly adorned.**

- The Mathura school etched out both the sitting and standing postures of **Buddha and Bodhisattvas.** The Sravasti Sarnath and Kaushambi Standing Buddhas are the best examples of Buddha images under this style.

- The later evolution of Buddha's Human form was linked to human beauty and heroic values.

- **Type of sandstone - Spotted red sandstone** was utilized in the construction of this school.

- **Vaishnava and Shiva images -** At Mathura, pictures of the Vaishnava and Shaiva faiths can also be seen, but Buddhist ones predominate.

- **Women's position in Mathura's art -** The woman was at the center of the painting, and there are few works of Indian art that can match the gorgeous feminine figures created by the Mathura artists in terms of beauty, delicacy, and appeal.

15.3 Conclusion

In many aspects, the Mathura school of art was a formative art that

influenced later styles of art. Mathura is a significant turning point in Indian art history. It is here that the move from symbolism to iconographic forms, which were later embraced, can be clearly seen. In addition, Mathura was the first place where the forms of Brahmanical deities crystallised. The influence of the Mathura school's Buddha image expanded throughout India and Central Asia.

16. Sarnath School of Art

Sarnath School of Art arose near **Sarnath, Bihar**, as its name suggests. The figures are displayed in a plain, transparent drapery that covers the shoulders and has an ornamented halo behind the head. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Sarnath school of art** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

16.1 Sarnath School of Art

- The mix of **cream-colored sandstone** and **aluminum** made it stand out. The sculptures at this school were impeccably adorned and devoid of any form of nakedness.
- Many **Buddha images** in Sarnath have basic translucent drapery covering both shoulders and a minimally adorned halo around the head, but the drapery folds and the halo around the head are elaborately embellished in Mathura Buddha figures.
- **Sultanganj Buddha** is a good illustration of this (7.5 ft in height).

16.2 Historical background

- The Sarnath style primarily produced Buddhist art.
- "Sarnath Buddhas are probably the greatest single achievement of the Indian sculptor," largely establishing the representation of the Buddha that was followed in eastern India and Southeast Asia for many centuries, as well as the general **representation of the human body in India.**
- The mature style did not emerge until 450–475, according to a number of dated samples.
- Buddha images in Siam, Cambodia, and Java were created in the Sarnath style.

16.3 Significance

- **Influence** - indigenous, it is devoid of outside influences.
- **Themes -** Mostly Buddhist art was made in the Sarnath style.
- **Features of sculpture -** In contrast to the **columnar rigidity** of previous Mathura works, Sarnath brings not only a **delicacy and refinement of form,** but also a **relaxed attitude** by bending the body slightly on its own axis in the case of the standing figure, thereby adding to it a certain litheness and movement.
- The **slim physiognomy** creates an impression of mobility, the body

closely following the modelling in all its minute subtleties, even in the case of the seated figure.

- The folds have all almost vanished; the only remnants of the draperies are the faint lines on the torso that suggest the garment's boundaries.

- The folds that come apart are given a muslin-like texture once more. The body, in all its **smooth, gleaming plasticity**, is the main focus of the Sarnath artists.

- The drapery folds and the **halo** around the head are lavishly embellished in Mathura Buddha figures, whereas many Buddha statues in Sarnath have basic translucent drapery covering both shoulders and a lightly ornate halo around the head.

- **Type of sandstone -** It stood out because of the combination of cream-colored sandstone and aluminium.

- **Other features -** From Sarnath, the image of the standing Buddha is a magnificent example of Gupta art at its peak.

- The gently sculpted figure's right hand is raised in a protective posture. Unlike the **Mathura Buddha's** beautifully carved **drapery folds,** just the diaphanous robe's fringe is represented here.

- **The sublime being is genuinely deserving of the exquisite execution of the figure matched by its tranquil spiritual expression.**

16.4 Conclusion

As the name implies, this school emerged near Sarnath, Bihar. The figures are dressed in a plain, transparent drapery with an ornate halo behind the head that covers the shoulders. This painting style is characterised by its beauty, simplicity, and sublimity of form.

Chapter 10: Early Temples and Buddhist Monuments

1. Early Temples of Ancient and Medieval India

The majority of architectural remnants of India are Ancient and Medieval are religious in origin. **Temples** in different parts of the country have distinct **architectural styles** due to **geographical, cultural, and historical variances.** The country's two major temple orders are Nagara in the north and Dravida in the south. Myths mentioned in the **Puranas** become part of the Hindu religion's narrative portrayal. This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Early temples** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

1.1 Early Temples

- The majority of the architectural relics from **Ancient and Medieval** India are of a religious nature.

- **Geographical, cultural, and historical** differences resulted in varied architectural styles of temples in different sections of the country

- **Nagara in the north and Dravida** in the south are two broad orders of temples in the country.

- The **Vesara temple** style is sometimes discovered as a separate style, resulting from the selective merging of the Nagara and Dravida orders.

- More surfaces for **sculpture** were created as temples became more sophisticated, by adding more and more rhythmically protruding, **symmetrical walls** and niches without deviating from the shrine's basic form.

1.2 Historical background

- Temples in India have a **few thousand years** of history behind them. Their architecture has evolved with time.

- They **differ in size, style & construction material,** depending on geographical location and the resources available.

- In the early Vedic period there is no clear mention of temples. All worship & rituals were done before the holy fire called **'Yagna'.**

- In the later Vedic period, idol worship began and those were kept in **elementary dwellings** with simple earth mounds that were substituted later by brickwork with grass roofs.

- Later on, **technology and science** brought more sophistication and temples were made with more details and designs.

1.3 Temples

Temple	Style and Features
Mahabodhi Temple, Bihar (3rd century)	• The MahaBodhi Temple Complex is one of the four sacred locations associated with the life of the Lord Buddha, particularly his enlightenment (Bodhi). • Lumbini (Birth) in Nepal, Sarnath (Dharma-Chakra-Pravartana - 1st Sermon) in Uttar Pradesh, and Kushinagar (Mahaparinirvana-death) in Uttar Pradesh are the other three. • The Mauryan emperor Ashoka erected the original building. • It was, however, completely rebuilt in brick during the late Gupta dynasty. • The current temple was built in the fifth or sixth centuries. • The Mahabodhi Temple site contains outstanding records of the events surrounding Buddha's life and subsequent adoration.
Sanchi temple 17, Madhyapradesh (5th Century)	• Temple 17 in Sanchi is built on a low moulded bottom and is located near the north-east corner of Temple 18. • It comprises a square sanctum with a flat-roofed entrance porch supported by four pillars. • It is an outstanding example of Gupta architecture, with its structural integrity, symmetry, logical proportions, and ornamental restraint. • The portico pillars' capitals feature four lions, each with two bodies. A tree stands between the lions at the corners.
Nachna Hindu temple, Madhyapradesh. (5th Century)	• The exact date of the Nachna temples is unknown, but based on its architecture and other constructions that can be dated, they are thought to date from the 5th or 6th century Gupta Empire. • The majority of the temples in the area have fallen into disrepair. • The Parvati temple in Nachna is the best maintained and studied monument. • The temples have a square plan with a square sanctum surrounded by a circumambulation path with perforated screen stone windows and are erected on a raised and moulded plinth. • Goddess Ganga and Yamuna guard the entrance to the temple.

(contd.)

Bhitargaon temple, Uttarpradesh (5th century)	• The Bhitargaon Temple is a terracotta-paneled terraced brick structure. • Built during the Gupta period in the 5th century. Though its upper chamber was damaged in the 18th century, it is the earliest surviving brick/terracotta Hindu shrine with a roof and a towering shikhara. • The temple faces east and has a square plan with double-recessed corners. Overlooking the garbhagriha is a lofty pyramidal spire. • Terracotta panels representing aquatic monsters, Shiva and Vishnu, and other Hindu gods adorn the walls.
Bhumara temple, Madhya Pradesh (5th century)	• Bhumara Temple is a Hindu stone temple dedicated to Shiva that dates from the 5th or 6th century Gupta era. • The temple is square in shape and features a sanctuary and Mandapa. While much of it is in ruins, enough of the temple structure and artwork has remained to be studied by scholars. • The temple is remarkable as one of the earliest examples of enclosed concentric pradakshina-patha construction (circumambulation path). • It has a beautiful entry to the sanctum flanked by Ganga and Yamuna deities, as do other early Gupta era Hindu temples, as well as elaborately carved statues.
Badami temple, Karnataka (6th century)	• The Badami cave temples are a collection of Hindu and Jain cave temples in Badami, India. • The caves, which date from the 6th century, are noteworthy examples of Indian rock-cut architecture, particularly Badami Chalukya architecture. • Badami is a modern name for Vataapinagara, the early Chalukya dynasty's capital, which dominated much of Karnataka from the sixth to the eighth centuries. • Badami is located on the west bank of a man-made lake, surrounded on the north and south by forts built in later times by an earthen wall with stone steps.
Deogarh dashavatara temple, Uttarpradesh (6th century)	• Deogarh is a notable example of a late Gupta Period kind of temple, dating from the early sixth century CE. • The main shrine is erected on a rectangular pedestal, with four smaller subsidiary shrines at the four corners, in the panchayatana style of architecture (making it a total number of five shrines, hence the name, panchayatana). • This curving latina or rekha-prasada kind of shikhara further indicates that this is an early example of a traditional nagara temple style. • The temple displays Vishnu in many forms, it was assumed that the four ancillary shrines must have likewise held Vishnu's avatars, and the temple was misidentified as a dashavatara temple.

(contd.)

Pattadakal temples, Karnataka (7th century)	• Pattadakal, also known as Paadakallu or Raktapura, is a Hindu and Jain temple complex in northern Karnataka dating from the 7th and 8th centuries CE (India). • This site has been designated as a UNESCO World Heritage Site. • The Archaeological Survey of India manages the monument, which is a protected site under Indian law. • Pattadakal has been hailed by UNESCO as "a harmonic blend of architectural forms from northern and southern India" and an example of "eclectic art" at its pinnacle. • The majority of Hindu temples are dedicated to Shiva, but there are also aspects of Vaishnavism and Shaktism doctrine and stories.
Kailashnath temple at Ellora (8th century)	• The construction of the temple began during the reign of Dantidurga, a Rashtrakuta ruler (735-757 AD). • The temple was carved from the top of the mountain, but a trench was constructed around it on the sloping side of the hill afterwards. • Aside from the gopura, the main temple contains a sabha griha (hall), vestibules, and a Nandi mandap that leads to the garba griha (sanctum) with the Shivling, all of which are intricately carved and feature Dravidian shikharas (towers). • The Nandi mandap and the gopuram are connected by a bridge.
Lad Khan temple at Aihole (8th century)	• The Chalukya Shiva Temple (formerly known as Lad Khan Temple) is one of the earliest Hindu temples dedicated to Shiva. • The temple appears to be based on early timber versions, none of which have survived. This can be observed, for example, in the construction of the mandapa's roof. • The temple has a shrine (garbha griha) in front of it with a mandapa in front of it, as well as a covered road for circumambulating the sanctuary, as seen in other early temples.
Chaturmukha temple, Karnataka. (9th Century)	• The Chaturmukha temple is a 9th-century structure. These temples are examples of Hindu temple architecture in the North Indian style. • It is known as chaturmukha (four faces) basadi because it has four symmetrical faces (a term used to refer to Jain temples in South India). Images of Tirthankaras Aranath, Mallinath, and Munisuvratnath can be found in the temple.
Virupaksha temple, Karnataka (9th Century)	• Lord Shiva is honoured at the Virupaksha Temple. This temple was built with the help of Lakkana Dandesha, a general under King Deva Raya II. • Krishnadevaraya, a notable Vijayanagara King, was a temple benefactor. • It is thought that he added the main pillared hall, which is the temple's most ornate building.

(contd.)

	• Along the side of the hall is a stone tablet with inscriptions explaining his temple contributions. • There are numerous crumbling mandapams surrounding the Virupaksha temple. In front of this temple, there was a historic retail centre with mandapams. • Hampi is a temple town in South India that has been designated as a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
Kamakhya temple, Assam (8th Century)	• Dynasty of Mlechchha. Koch King Nara Narayan and Ahom kings rebuilt it. • It is situated on the Nilachal Hill, near the Brahmaputra River's banks. • Kamakhya is one of 51 Shakti peethas (holy locations) for Shakti devotees, each representing a different component of Lord Shiva's companion Sati. • Narakasura, the demon king, is said to have built the temple. However, records only date back to 1565, when Koch ruler Naranarayana had the temple restored.
Kandariya Mahadeva temple (10th Century)	• The temple, which dates back to 1050 BC and was built by the Chandela ruler Raja Dhandadeva, is one of the mediaeval wonders. • Kandariya Mahadeva temple is one of the most beautiful, tallest, and largest temples in the Khajuraho complex. • The large number of stone carvings inside the Kandariya Mahadev temple is one of the most attractive aspects of the temple. • These sculptures, which include human and animal sculptures, portray numerous aspects of our daily lives.
Lakshman temple at Khajuraho (10th Century)	• The Lakshmana Temple is a Hindu temple erected by Yashovarman in the 10th century. • It's a Panchayatana Sandharaemple. As shown in the photograph, the entire temple complex is built on a high platform (Jagati). • All of the components of Hindu temple architecture may be found in the construction. • It has an ardha-mandapa (entry porch), Mandapa, Maha-Mandapa, Antarala, and Garbhagriha.
Shiva temple of Thanjavur, Brihadeeswara temple (10th Century)	• Between 1003 and 1010 AD, Raja Raja Chola I constructed this temple. • Rajarajeswaram, also known as Peruvudaiyar Koyil, is a Shiva-dedicated Hindu temple in Thanjavur, Tamil Nadu. • It is built in the Dravidian style. • Dakshina Meru is the name given to it (Meru of south). • Along with the Chola dynasty era Gangaikonda Cholapuram temple and Airavatesvara temple, which are roughly 70 kilometres apart, the temple is a part of the UNESCO World Heritage Site known as the "Great Living Chola Temples." • The vimana tower, which stands above the sanctum and is made of granite, is one of the tallest in South India.

(contd.)

Lingaraj Temple in Bhubaneswar (11th Century)	• It is thought to have been constructed by Somvanshi King Yayati I. • The Lingaraj Temple, dedicated to Lord Shiva and established in the 11th century AD, is the city of Bhubaneswar's greatest temple (Odisha). • Garbha Griha (sanctum sanctorum), Yajna Shala (prayer hall), Bhoga Mandap (offering hall), and Natya Shala are the four divisions of the temple (hall of dance). • The Bindusagar Lake, which is located on the temple's north side, is another attraction.
Modhera Sun temple, Gujarat (11th Century)	• The Modhera Sun Temple was built in the early 11th century by King Bhima I of the Chalukya dynasty. • It is a temple dedicated to the Sun God, located on the banks of the River Pushpavati in Modhera village, Mehsana district. • The temple's magnificent architecture is in a class by itself. • According to the Konark Temple, the shrine is built in such a way that the first rays of the Sun fall on the picture of Lord Surya. • Surya Kund, located in front of the temple, is a deep tiered tank. • Lord Surya was the inspiration for the tank's name (Sun God).
Chausath Yogini temple (11th Century)	• Devapala (CE 1055 – 1075), a Kachchhapaghata ruler, erected the temple. • Chausath Yogini Temple, also known as Ekattarso Mahadeva Temple • The temple is located on a hill, with 100 stairs leading up to the entrance. It is round, with a radius of 170 feet, and contains 65 small chambers, each with an open mandapa and a facade of pilasters and pillars. • The centre shrine to Shiva has a flat roof, as does the ring of shrines; the circular courtyard is hypaethral, exposed to the sky, and has an open porch as its entry. • This temple is supposed to be the inspiration for India's parliament building.
Siddhesvara Mahadeva Temple (12th Century)	• It is regarded as an opulent example of Western Chalukyan art from the 12th century, and it is well renowned for the numerous loose sculptures of Hindu deities that can be found inside. • The temple is unique in that it faces west rather than east, as is customary in Chalukyan architecture. • Though it is currently used as a Shaiva temple devoted to God Shiva, historians are confused whether faith or sect consecrated the temple and to whose deity it was initially dedicated. • This confusion may originate from the numerous loose deity statues that exist, as well as the deterioration of key wall depictions.

(contd.)

Jagannath Temple in Puri (12th Century)	• King Anatavarman Chodaganga Deva of the Eastern Ganga Dynasty is thought to have built the temple in the 12th century. • The 'Yamanika Tirtha' of Jagannath Puri temple is where, according to Hindu beliefs, the power of 'Yama,' the god of death, has been negated in Puri due to Lord Jagannath's presence. • This shrine is part of the Char Dham pilgrimages and is known as the "White Pagoda" (Badrinath, Dwaraka, Puri, Rameswaram). • The Aruna stambha, or sun pillar, sits in front of the entryway and was originally located in the Sun Temple at Konark.
Sun Temple in Konark (13th Century)	• King Narasimhadeva I built it in the 13th century (AD 1238-1264) • The temple is built in the form of a massive chariot. • It is dedicated to the God of the Sun. It is immediately and materially tied to Brahmanism and tantric belief systems in this respect. • The Konark temple is well-known for its architectural splendour as well as the complexity and abundance of its sculptural art. • In 1984, it was designated as a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
Lakshmi narasimha temple (13th Century)	• The temple was constructed in the early 13th century during the Hoysala dynasty. • It has three shrines dedicated to Lakshmi Narasimha, Venugopalaswamy, and Purushothama, and is built in the 'Trikuta' style. • The temple's outside walls are adorned with intricate Hoysala sculptures. • Devotees use the concrete platform flooring, also known as jagati, as a pradakshina path (ambulatory passageway for circumambulation). • Hoysala temples are frequently referred to as hybrid or vesara because their unique style appears to be midway between Dravida and Nagara.

1.4 Conclusion

Along with these types and styles, there are many different forms of temple architecture in India, each with its own name based on the location. And they're made of materials that are only found in that area. Kashmir's proximity to **Gandhara monuments** is notable, while the Himalayan region contains a variety of styles, such as Kedarnath in Garhwal and Jageshwar in Kumaon. As a result, temple architecture in different places has a variety of influences, resulting in a variety of styles with only a few distinguishing characteristics.

2. Buddhist Monuments of South India

Buddhist Monuments of South India are the Amaravathi Mahachaitya stupa and protected Buddhist monument complex at Bavikonda in Andhra Pradesh, the Chudamani Vihara in Tamil Nadu, and the Namdroling Monastery of **Tibetan Buddhism** in Karnataka etc. This article will explain to you the concepts related to the **Buddhist Monuments of South India** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

2.1 Buddhist Monuments of South India

- South India used to refer to the three kingdoms of the **Chera, Chola, and Pandya,** or the territory known as the Tamil country proper, which included what is now Tamil Nadu and Kerala.

- However, in modern usage, South India refers to the states of Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Kerala, Pondicherry, and Tamil Nadu, which are home to the 13 **dravidian language** family.

- The golden age of Buddhism in South India was distinguished by the blooming of culture in all aspects of life.

- The self-sacrificing **Bhikkhus** laboured not only for their own spiritual elevation and achievement of **Nirvana,** but also for the understanding and practise of the noble **Dhamma** based on love, compassion, and equality, which they helped and directed the great mass to comprehend and practise.

- Amaravati, Nagarjunakonda, Bhattiprolu, Ghantasala, and Jaggyyapetta in Andhra Pradesh; Vanavasi in Karnataka; Vanji or Vanchi in Kerala; and Kanchi and Nagapattinam in Tamil Nadu were the most prominent Buddhist shrines in ancient South India.

2.2 Namdroling Monastery, Karnataka

- **Thekchog Namdrol Shedrub DargyeLing, also known as Namdroling Nyingmapa Monastery, is the world's largest teaching centre for the Nyingma lineage of Tibetan Buddhism.**

- Buddhist monks transmit the **Buddha's lessons** to the next generation here, ensuring that the Guru's message lives on.

- Those who wish to spend more time at the monastery can stay at the monastery.

- Namdroling Nyingmapa Monastery's first construction was a **bamboo temple** that covered a space of around 80 square feet.

- The Namdroling Nyingmapa Monastery was constructed out of the

jungle that the Indian government generously handed **Tibetan exiles,** with rampaging elephants and other tropical perils posing initial hurdles.

2.3 Karumadi Kuttan, Kerala

- **Karumadi Kuttan** is a historic shrine that may be the only spot in Kerala where you can find Buddha.
- This is a **modest temple** rather than a vast monastery.
- The presence of a black granite statue of **Lord Buddha.**
- The figure, which dates from the 11th century, is surrounded by a plethora of intriguing legends.
- It is thought to have been constructed by monks who travelled to Kerala to promote the **philosophy of love and nonviolence.**
- The structure's left hand is fractured, and an elephant is said to have torn it apart. Another local myth is that the statue has **healing powers,** and people travel from far and wide to seek relief from their ailments.

2.4 Chudamani Vihara in Nagapattinam, Tamil Nadu

- **Chudamani Vihara** was a **Buddhist monastery in Nagapattinam,** Tamil Nadu, that was built in 1006 CE.
- The current structure in town is thought to have been built in the year 1006 AD by **King Sri Vijaya Soolamani Varman** with the assistance of the **Chola dynasty**
- The vihara had persisted in a deteriorated state until 1867, and since 1856, over 350 Buddha bronzes dating from the 11th to 16th century had been discovered.

2.5 Amaravati Stupa, Andhra Pradesh

- The ruins of an **Ashokan pillar** have also been discovered during the excavations. If you come here, don't forget to see the 125-foot-tall statue of **Dhyana Buddha** in Amravati.
- From the **2nd century BCE** onwards, the region between the **Krishna and Godavari rivers** was a significant Buddhist centre.
- During the reign of Ashoka in 200 BCE, a Buddhist stupa was constructed with panels depicting Buddha's life story.
- This stupa was neglected after the **decline of Buddhism** and was buried behind rubble. The stupa was repaired according to a 14th-century inscription in Sri Lanka, and then it was forgotten.
- **Colonel Colin Mackenzie** of the British Army discovered the edifice, which had been abandoned in ruins, in 1797.

- The stupa is linked to the **Kalachakra Vajrayana teachings**, which are still taught in **Tibetan Buddhism** today.

- Since then, various excavations have been carried out in order to restore the shrine's full architectural glory.

- In 2006, the **Dalai Lama** of Tibet held a Kalachakra initiation at this place

2.6 Kanchipuram Monastery, Tamil Nadu

- Kanchipuram Monastery, formerly one of Tamil Nadu's most important Buddhist centres, has endured the test of time to display its architectural splendour to people in the **twenty-first century.**

- The shrine was constructed in the 2nd century BC and has been home to hundreds of monks for centuries. **Kanchipuram** is also thought to be the birthplace of **Bodhidharma**, a Buddhist monk who was instrumental in the spread of **Buddhism throughout Asia.**

- The shrine's grandeur represents the depths to which followers went in the worship of their gods.

2.7 Bavikonda, Andhra Pradesh

- Bavikonda is particularly well-known among Buddhists, and it is home to the **Bavikonda Monastery,** which was founded in the 3rd century BCE.

- A major Buddhist complex was also discovered at this location, yielding remarkable relics such as a chunk of bone kept in an urn (said to be Lord Buddha's remains), **inscriptions, pottery, relic caskets, moulded bricks, stuccos, and tiles.**

2.8 Bojjannakonda, Andhra Pradesh

- Between the 4th and 9th centuries, the site was constructed.

- There are 65 stairs on the western side of the slope that go up to the **two-story rock-cut cave**. Five of the cave's 16 pillars have perished over time, but the rest remain to allow visitors to observe this intriguing shrine.

- A Buddha statue can be found on the cave's upper level.

- **Lingalakonda,** which is not far from Bojjannakonda, is another hill with identical stupas and **rock-cut caves**. These two hills have yielded a plethora of antiquities, including coins, seals, and ceramic objects.

2.9 Kanaganahalli, Karnataka

- Excavations at Kanaganahalli village, Karnataka, have found ruins

of an ancient Mahastupa, votive stupas and brick buildings in the style of a **Chaityagriha,** pictures of Buddha, antiquities such as lead coins, and a sculptural portrayal of **Mauryan king Ashoka**, termed **"Rayo Asoka."**

•   The '**Jataka' legends** and the **life of Buddha are** depicted on sculpted panels near Kanaganahalli.

2.10 Bhattiprolu Andhra Pradesh

•   Bhattiprolu, in the Guntur district of Andhra Pradesh, is a significant Buddhist site notable for the **"Vikramarka kota dibba"** Buddha Stupa, which was built between the third and second centuries BC.

•   Three mounds were unearthed in 1870, and three inscribed stone relic caskets containing crystal caskets, Buddha relics, and gems were discovered in 1892.

•   A big group of destroyed votive stupas with several pictures of Buddha, a stone receptacle containing copper vessel, which in turn contained a **silver casket,** and a gold casket enclosing beads of bone and crystal were unearthed.

2.11 Salihundam Andhra Pradesh

•   Salihundam in Andhra Pradesh is known for its Buddhist relics, which include multiple Buddhist stupas and a **large monastic complex.**

•   Relic caskets, four stupas, a **Chaitya Griha,** structural temples, and countless sculptures reflecting three stages of Buddhism have been discovered during excavations at the site.

2.12 Conclusion

The Government Museum in Madras, as well as Amaravati and Nagarjunakonda in Andhra Pradesh, house the eternal forms of art and sculpture made by southern artisans. The huge number of inscriptions left behind by pious Buddhists in Amaravati, Nagarjunakonda, and other locations attest to the royal and public support given to the Buddha's faith. All of the Brahmi epigraphs in South India are associated with Buddhists, which is noteworthy.

3. Mudras of Buddha

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. Dharmachakra Mudra, Abhaya Mudra, Bhumisparsha mudra, etc are some of the important mudras in Buddhism. This article will discuss the Mudras of Buddha, which will be helpful for UPSC Civil Service Exam preparation.

3.1 What is a Mudra?

In yoga, Buddhism, Hinduism, and Jainism, a mudra is a **sacred and symbolic gesture.**

In Sanskrit, the phrase means "gesture," "mark," or "stamp."

Hands folded on the lap, which represents meditation, a palm held up facing outward, which represents teaching or reassurance, and an open palm directed downward, which represents charity, are all common mudras or images of Buddha.

3.2 Different Mudras of Buddha

Mudra
Dharmachakra Mudra   • Dharmachakra in Sanskrit means the 'Wheel of Dharma'.   • It symbolizes the first sermon of Buddha.
Bhumisparsha Mudra   • It means 'touching the earth'.   • Symbolizes the moment when Buddha attained enlightenment under the Bodhi tree
Varada mudra   • Also known as favorable mudra, it is a gesture of granting wishes or mercy
Dhyana Mudra   • It is the mudra of meditation, of concentration on the Good law, and of the attainment of spiritual perfection.
Abhaya Mudra   • It symbolizes protection, peace, and the dispelling of fear.
Vajra Mudra   • This gesture represents the five elements of air, water, fire, earth, and metal, which are represented by the blazing thunderbolt.
Vitarka Mudra   • It is used to symbolize the transmission of the dharma or the truth teachings of the Buddha.
Jnana Mudra   • Jnana mudra is a psychic gesture of knowledge.

Karana Mudra
• In Buddhism, karana mudra is believed to remove obstacles, cultivate inner peace and guide the practitioner towards enlightenment.

Uttarabodhi Mudra
• It is mostly known as the mudra for enlightenment

Anjali Mudra
• Anjali mudra is used as a posture of composure, of returning to one's heart, whether you are greeting someone or saying goodbye, initiating or completing an action.

3.3 Significance of Mudras

- Mudras, or hand gestures and finger postures, are a **non-verbal means of communication and self-expression.**

- Each of the five transcendental (Dhyani) Buddhas is allocated one of these mudras, and they are generally shown in visual arts with only that mudra.

3.4 Conclusion

Ranging from the poetic and complicated Dharmachakra mudra to the prosaic, universal prayer symbol, mudras reference anecdotes from the historical Buddha's life and convey elements of Buddhist practice like meditation and teaching. Thus, Mudras hold a key position in Buddhist arts.

4. Dharmachakra Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Dharmachakra Mudra, one of the most important mudras in Buddhism, symbolizes the first sermon of Lord Buddha. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Dharmachakra Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

4.1 Dharmachakra Mudra

- Dharmachakra means '**Wheel of Dharma**' in Sanskrit.
- It represents one of the most significant events in Buddha's life: the **first sermon** he gave to his companions in the **Deer Park at Sarnath** following his **Enlightenment**.
- As a result, it signifies the turning of the Wheel of the Dharma's teaching.

4.2 Posture

- The thumb and index finger of both hands touch at their tips to form a circle in this mudra.
- This circle depicts the Wheel of Dharma, or the combination of method and wisdom in metaphysical terms.
- The two hands' remaining three fingers are still extended. These fingers have a lot of symbolic value on their own.

4.3 Meaning of Each Finger

The three extended fingers of the right hand symbolize the Buddha's three vehicles of teachings:

- The middle finger represents the **'hearers' of the teachings.**
- The ring finger represents the **'solitary realizers'.**
- The little finger represents the **Mahayana or 'Great Vehicle.'**
- The three extended fingers of the left hand represent Buddhism's Three Jewels: **the Buddha, the Dharma, and the Sangha.**

4.4 Other Features

- **The hands are held in front of the heart** in this mudra, representing that these teachings come directly from the Buddha's heart.
- **Vairochana**, the first Dhyani Buddha, demonstrates this mudra.

- – Each of the five Dhyani Buddhas is linked with a different type of human illusion, and it is thought that they may assist mortals in conquering them.

- • As a result, Vairochana is thought to change ignorance's misconception into reality's insight. He assists adepts in making this shift by presenting the Dharmachakra mudra.

4.5 Conclusion

Dharma is the Sanskrit word for 'Divine Law,' while Chakra is the Sanskrit word for 'Wheel.' Dharmachakra means "wheel of divine law" when both phrases are combined. The essential principle of Buddhism is built on this Dharma. It is stated that one who performs this mudra connects into the universal energy since Dharma also includes cosmic rule and order. As this mudra reflects Buddha's enlightened mind, it promotes optimism and calmness to the mind.

5. Bhumisparsha Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Bhumisparsha Mudra, one of the most important mudras in Buddhism, symbolizes the Lord Buddha's enlightenment under the Bodhi tree. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Bhumisparsha Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

5.1 Bhumisparsha Mudra

- Bhumisparsha means '**touching the earth**' in Sanskrit.

- The **Buddha's enlightenment under the bodhi tree,** when he invited the earth goddess, Sthavara, to bear witness to his attainment of enlightenment, is symbolized by this mudra.

- It is formed with all five fingers of the right hand extended to touch the ground.

- The right hand, in earth-pressing mudra, is supplemented by the left hand, which is kept flat in the lap in the dhyana mudra of meditation, and represents the union of method and wisdom, samsara and nirvana, as well as realizations of conventional and ultimate truths.

- Shakyamuni overcame Mara's obstacles by meditating on Truth while in this pose.

- This mudra depicts **Akshobhya**, the second Dhyani Buddha. He is said to be able to change the misconception of rage into insight in the shape of a mirror. This is the metamorphosis that the Bhumisparsha mudra facilitates.

5.2 Conclusion

The Bhumisparsha mudra (touching the soil with the right hand) guides all bad energy to the ground, while the left palm on the lap gives birth to knowledge. This Mudra helps to alleviate tension and anxiety. This leads to a relaxing voyage through health-related issues. Thus it is a key posture in Buddhist philosophy.

6. Varada Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Varada Mudra, one of the most important mudras in Buddhism, symbolizes charity, compassion, and boon-granting. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Varada Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

6.1 Varada Mudra

- This mudra represents **charity, compassion, and boon-granting**.
- It is the mudra for realizing one's desire to devote oneself to human redemption.
- It is almost often done with the left hand, and it may be done with the arm hanging naturally at the side of the body, palm facing front, and fingers extended.

This mudra's five outstretched fingers represent the following five perfections:

- **Generosity**
- **Morality**
- **Patience**
- **Effort**
- **Meditative Concentration**
- This mudra is shown by **Ratnasambhava**, the third Dhyani Buddha. The pride misconception transforms into the wisdom of sameness under his spiritual leadership. This metamorphosis is aided by the Varada mudra.
- This mudra is frequently performed in conjunction with another created with the right hand, most often the **Abhaya mudra.**
  - **Segan Semui-in or Yogan Semui-in** is the Japanese name for this combination of Abhaya and Varada mudras.

6.2 Conclusion

The Varada Mudra is nearly always shown made with the left hand by a revered figure devoted to human salvation from greed, anger, and delusion. The Varada Mudra is extensively used in the Buddha statues of Southeast Asia.

Chapter 11: Buddhist Mudras

1. Dhyana Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Dhyana Mudra, one of the most important mudras in Buddhism, is a hand gesture that embodies the mind to go deep into meditation, to reflect and contemplate.

1.1 Dhyana Mudra

- The Dhyana mudra is a mudra used for **meditation, focusing on the Dharma, and achieving spiritual perfection.**
- This mudra is said to be derived from the one used by the Buddha before enlightenment while **meditating under the Bodhi tree.**
- Yogis have used this gesture in their meditation and concentration activities since the beginning of time.
- **Amitabha,** also known as Amitayus, the **fourth Dhyani Buddha,** uses this mudra. By concentrating on him, the misconception of attachment transforms into discernment wisdom. The Dhyana mudra facilitates this change for mortals.

1.2 Posture

- When making a single-handed gesture, the left hand is put on the lap while the right is used elsewhere.
  - In such instances, the left hand doing the Dhyana mudra represents the female left-hand principle of knowledge.
  - In the open palm of this left hand, ritual artifacts such as a book or, more popularly, an alms bowl signifying renunciation may be put.
- The hands are usually held at the level of the stomach or on the thighs when done with both hands.
  - With the palms facing upwards and fingers extended, the right hand is placed over the left. The thumbs of both hands may contact at the tips in rare situations, making a mystic triangle.
  - The esoteric religions clearly ascribe a variety of meanings to this

triangle, the most prominent of which is its association with the spiritual fire that destroys all impurities.

– This triangle is also considered to represent the **Three Jewels of Buddhism**, which are **the Buddha, the Dharma, and the Sangha**.

1.3 Conclusion

On a spiritual level, the practice of Dhyana Mudra helps students to build self-awareness, seeking for answers, go inwards, intuition, insight, etc. Dhyana Mudra has a deep impact on controlling the stress levels in the body, hence is practiced to keep anxiety and depression in control.

2. Abhaya Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Abhaya Mudra, one of the most important mudras in Buddhism, is a symbol of fearlessness and protection. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Abhaya Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

2.1 Abhaya Mudra

- In Sanskrit, the word Abhaya denotes **fearlessness.** As a result, the Abhaya mudra represents **safety, tranquility, and the removal of fear.**
- The right hand is lifted to shoulder height, the arm bent, and the palm of the hand facing outward, and the fingers are linked and erect.
- The left hand is dangling from the ceiling. the opposite side of the body.
- This mudra is popular in **Thailand and Laos,** connected with the **walking Buddha** (also called 'the Buddha placing his footprint').
- This mudra, which appears to be a natural gesture at first, was probably used as a sign of good intentions from prehistoric times - the hand raised and unarmed suggests friendship, or at the very least peace.
- It has also been a gesture asserting power, such as the Magna manus of the Roman Emperors who legislated and gave peace at the same time.

2.2 Legend of Abhaya Mudra

- Devadatta, the Buddha's cousin, caused a rift among the Buddha's students because of envy.
- As Devadatta's arrogance grew, he sought to assassinate the Buddha. One of his ideas involves releasing a raging elephant onto the path of the Buddha.
- But, when the elephant approached, Buddha made the Abhaya mudra, which instantly calmed the beast. As a result, it not only denotes the calming of the senses, but also the lack of terror.

2.3 Other Features

- This mudra was sometimes employed in Gandhara art to represent preaching activity.
- This is also true in China, where it is highly popular in Buddha representations, particularly from the Wei and Sui dynasties (fourth to seventh centuries).
- **Amoghasiddhi,** the fifth Dhyani Buddha, uses the Abhaya mudra.

- In the Buddhist pantheon, he is also known as the Lord of Karma.

- Amoghasiddhi aids in the defeat of the jealousy illusion. The fallacy of envy is changed into the insight of accomplishment by focusing on him. The basic purpose of the Abhaya mudra is hence changed.

2.4 Conclusion

Abhaya mudra is a general symbol of fearlessness and good intentions, but depending on the place and age in which it was employed, it can also have a more specific connotation. This gesture is claimed to be a way of prohibiting relatives from fighting when represented on depictions of the Buddha using just the left hand, relating to an episode in which he utilized Abhaya mudra to settle a family feud over water rights.

3. Vajra Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Vajra Mudra, one of the important mudra used in Buddhism, is a hand gesture that represents fearlessness. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Vajra Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

3.1 Vajra Mudra

- This gesture represents the **five elements of air, water, fire, earth, and metal**, which are represented by the **fiery thunderbolt.**

- It's done with the right fist and the left-hand forefinger, which is encased in the right fist with the tip of the right forefinger contacting (or wrapped around) the tip of the left forefinger.

- Vajra Mudra is a Buddhist gesture that symbolizes the unity of all Buddhist beliefs.

- This mudra is concerned with the **Vairochana Buddha** or the celestial buddha that illuminates one's insight towards the world.

3.2 Conclusion

Mudra or Mudras are hand postures that are frequently shown in Buddhist art and utilized in meditation to create a certain mental state. The most famous mudras are those seen frequently in Buddha depictions. Mudras take on esoteric importance in the Vajrayana system and are frequently paired with mantra (recitation) and tantric vision.

4. Vitarka Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Vajra Mudra, one of the most important mudras used in Buddhism, is the mudra or a gesture representing the discussion and transmission of the teachings by the Buddha. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Vitarka Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

4.1 Vitarka Mudra

- The **Vitarka mudra,** or " **mudra of discussion**," is a Buddhist teaching discussion and transmission gesture.

- That is, it is used to symbolize the **transmission of the dharma or the truth,** teachings of the Buddha.

- It is performed by linking the tips of the thumb and index fingers together while maintaining the rest of the fingers straight, similar to the Abhaya and Varada mudras, but with the thumbs touching the index fingers.

- In **Mahayana Buddhism**, there are several variations of this mudra.

4.2 Conclusion

Mudra is a Sanskrit term that refers to a symbolic hand motion that can provide joy and contentment. Mudras aid in the connection of the brain and body, the relief of pain, the stimulation of endorphins, the alteration of mood, and the increase of energy. Mudras are used in a variety of Buddhist rituals.

5. Jnana Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Jnana Mudra, one of the most important mudras used in Buddhism, symbolizes spiritual enlightenment. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Jnana Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

5.1 Jnana Mudra

- One of the most prominent mudras employed by yogis in meditation is the jnana mudra, which is a psychic **gesture of knowledge**.
- The name is derived from the Sanskrit terms jnana, which means "**knowledge**," and mudra, which means "gesture."
- **Spiritual enlightenment** is symbolized by the Jnana Mudra.
- The **index finger folds and touches the base of the thumb** in this mudra.
- In Jnana mudra, the joining of the thumb and index finger denotes the **merging of the supreme and interior truths.**
- The three remaining fingers symbolize nature's three characteristics, or gunas: sattva, raja, and tamas (balance, action, and inaction).
- This mudra may also be called **chin mudra.**

5.2 Conclusion

The term jnana means "wisdom" or "knowledge." Hence jnana mudra is an intuitive knowing gesture. Chin, on the other hand, comes from the term Chitta, which signifies 'awareness.'

6. Karana Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Karana mudra, one of the most important mudras used in Buddhism, is the mudra that expels demons and removes obstacles such as sickness or negative thoughts. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Karana Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

6.1 Karana Mudra

- The Karana mudra is a mudra that exorcises demons and eliminates impediments like disease and negative thoughts.

- **Tarjan mudra** is another name for this mudra.

- The Karana mudra is an hasta mudra, meaning it is done with the hands.

- The left hand is raised up to the heart, palm facing forward, to conduct this mudra. The tip of the thumb softly holds the ring and middle fingers in place as they fold in toward the centre of the palm. The index and little fingers have a straight upward-pointing motion.

- The Karana mudra aids in the **removal of negativity, anxiety, fear, and sadness** while also increasing emotions of happiness and satisfaction.

- It promotes the body's **Fire and Ether elements,** which are symbolized by the thumb and middle finger.

6.2 Conclusion

Mudra is a Sanskrit term that refers to a symbolic hand motion that can provide joy and contentment. Mudras aid in the connection of the brain and body, the relief of pain, the stimulation of endorphins, the alteration of mood, and the increase of energy. Mudras are used in a variety of Buddhist rituals.

7. Uttarabodhi Mudra and Anjali Mudra

Mudras are a non-verbal mode of communication and self-expression in Buddhism, consisting of hand gestures and finger- postures. The Uttarabodhi mudra, one of the most important mudras in Buddhism, denotes supreme enlightenment. And the Anjali mudra, one of the most important mudras in Buddhism, denotes welcome, prayer, and devotion motion. Here we will discuss the various aspects of Uttarabodhi Mudra, which will be helpful in preparing Art and Culture for the UPSC IAS Examination.

7.1 Uttarabodhi Mudra

- This refers to achieving **supreme enlightenment** by connecting with divine universal energy.
- It's done with both hands, which are put at the heart with the index fingers touching and pointed upwards, and the rest of the fingers entwined.

7.2 Anjali Mudra

- It is also known as **Namaskara Mudra or Hridayanjali Mudra**, and it's a **welcome, prayer, and devotion motion**.
- It is done by pressing the palms of the hands together, with the thumbs resting softly against the sternum, and the hands kept at the heart chakra.
- Anjali is a Sanskrit word that means "**salutation" or "to offer,**" and mudra means "seal" or "gesture." Therefore, Anjali mudra translates as "salutation seal" in English.

7.3 Conclusion

Uttarabodhi mudra is the gesture of perfection. It is called the best-perfection among the types of mudras. Moreover, the Uttarabodhi mudra is frequently seen in images of **Vairochana.**

Mudra is a Sanskrit term that refers to a symbolic hand motion that can provide joy and contentment. Mudras aid in the connection of the brain and body, the relief of pain, the stimulation of endorphins, the alteration of mood, and the increase of energy. Mudras are used in a variety of Buddhist rituals.

8. Cave Architecture

India's **cave architecture** is thought to have started in prehistoric times. Buddhist and Jain monks used these caverns as places of worship and residence. The caverns were discovered in western India at first. Indian **rock-cut architecture** is more diverse and abundant than any other type of rock building seen around the world (more than 1,500 rock-cut structures in India). **The Mauryans** were masters of cave architecture and are credited as being the forefathers of **rock-cut cave architecture.** This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Cave Architecture** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

8.1 Buddhist Influence

In the third to second centuries B.C, **Buddhism** became the dominant religion.

Around this time, three distinct types of Buddhist architecture emerged: the colossal **funeral mound** or **Stupa, the hall of worship or Chaitya, and the monastery or Vihara.**

Chaityas and Viharas were built along the hillside since Buddhist and Jain monks tended to stay away from cities and towns.

Chaityas - Buddhist and Jain monks used Chaitya as sites of prayer. It contained a rectangular prayer hall with a stupa in the centre.

The **entire Chaitya** was divided into three sections: a central section and two aisles. A row of pillars separated the central Chaitya from the two aisles. Chaityas' inside walls were polished, and the Chaitya's end was apsidal in shape.

Vihara - Viharas, or monasteries, were built near Chaityas to house monks during the rainy season.

Sculptors here depict numerous scenes from the Buddha's life. It's worth noting that, unlike Chaityas, Viharas lacked a stupa.

8.2 Ajanta Caves

- Ajanta is a group of rock-cut caves near **Aurangabad, Maharashtra**, amid the Sahyadri ranges on the **Waghora River.**
- There are 29 caverns in all, 25 of which were utilised as Viharas (residence caves) and 4 of which were used as Chaitya (prayer halls).
- Between **200 B.C. and 650 A.D** the caves were constructed.
- The **Buddhist monks** inscribed the Ajanta caves under the patronage of the Vakataka rulers, one of them was **Harishena.**
- The figures in these caves were painted with frescoes and exhibit a

high level of naturalism. The colours were created from local plants and minerals.

- The paintings' outlines were painted in red, and then the insides were painted. The **absence of blue** in the paintings is one of the most remarkable elements.

- The paintings are mostly on **Buddhism,** including Buddha's life and Jataka stories.

- Five of the caves were built during the Hinayana period of Buddhism, while the other 24 were built during the Mahayana period.

- The **Ajanta caves** are mentioned in the travel journals of Chinese Buddhist pilgrims **Fa Hien and Hieun Tsang.**

8.3 Ellora Caves

- Another famous cave architecture site is **Ellora Caves.**

- It is almost 100 kilometres from the Ajanta caves in Maharashtra's **Sahyadri hills.**

- It consists of **34 caves,** 17 of which are Brahmanical, 12 Buddhist, and 5 Jain.

- These caves were built by numerous guilds from Vidarbha, Karnataka, and Tamil Nadu between the **5th and 11th centuries A.D**. (they are newer than the Ajanta Caves).

- As a result, in terms of topic and architectural styles, the caverns represent a natural diversity.

- It is a **UNESCO World Heritage Site** with cave temples dedicated to Hinduism, Buddhism, and **Jainism.**

- The 17 Hindu caves (caves 13, 29, 14 and 15 are famous and are known as **Ravan Ki Khai** and **Dashavatar caves**, respectively), 12 Buddhist caves (caves 1-12), and 5 Jain caves (caves 30-34, Jaina caves include Indra Sabha and Jagannath Sabha) built in close proximity demonstrate the religious harmony prevalent during this period of Indian history.

- Cave 16 in Ellora's **Kailasa Temple** is the world's largest single monolithic excavation.

8.4 Barabar Caves

- The **Lomas Rishi and Sudama Caves,** which were excavated around 250 BC in Barabar Hills in Bihar (Jehanabad district) during the **Mauryan Perio**d and are regarded India's oldest example of **rock-cut architecture,** impacted Western Indian rock-cut cave architecture.

- There are four caves in the **Barabar Hills**, which were built during

the Mauryan Period, mainly under the reign of **Asoka** (273-232 BC) and his grandson Dasaratha.

- Originally built for the **Ajivika sect,** hundreds of rock-cut caves were eventually built for Buddhist, Jaina, and Brahmanical traditions.

- In this way, the Barabar caves were linked to all of the major theological philosophies of the time, including the **Ajivika sect, Buddhism, Jainism, and Hinduism.**

- This also exemplifies the religious tolerance policies of the two emperors (Ashoka and Dasratha), both of whom were Buddhists.

8.5 Elephanta Caves

- Elephanta cave temples (on a small island off the coast of Bombay) date from the **eighth century A.D.** and are similar to those at Ellora.

- The Elephanta Caves were initially intended to be a **Buddhist site,** but the **Shaivite faith** eventually took over.

- They are known for their sculpture (showing slenderness in the body, with stark light and dark effects), particularly the great **Trimurti figure of Shiva** (Shiva is akin to the Trimurti figure of Brahma, Vishnu, and Mahesh), as well as **Ravana shaking the Kailash, Tandav dance of Shiva, Ardh-narishwara**, and other notable sculptures.

- It was also designated as a **UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1987.**

8.6 Bagh Caves

- A set of nine Buddhist caves formed about the **6th century A.D**. on the bank of the **Bagh river** in Madhya Pradesh.

- It has a similar architectural style to the **Ajanta caves.**

8.7 Junagadh Caves

- These are Buddhist caves located in Gujarat's Junagadh region. Although there are no caves here, three separate places can be located.

- **Khapra Kodiya, Baba Pyare**, and **Uparkot** are the three sites found.

- The presence of a 30-50 ft high fortress known as **"Upar Kot"** in front of the prayer hall is a distinctive feature of the Junagadh caves.

8.8 Nasik Caves

- **"Pandav Leni"** refers to a series of 24 Buddhist caves in Nasik. They were created in the first century A.D. during the Hinayana period.

- Later, though, the **Mahayana sect's** impact may be seen in these caves.

- His presence is expressed in the hinayana sect through the usage of motifs and symbols such as the throne and footprints.

- Later on, Buddha idols were sculpted inside these caves, indicating **Mahayana Buddhism's impact.**
- The site also shows a superb water management system, as evidenced by the presence of water tanks carved out of solid rock.

8.9 Mandapeshwar Caves

- It is also known as **Montperir Caves**, located in Borivali, near Mumbai, and was built as a Brahmanical cave during the late Gupta dynasty.
- It was later transformed into a **Christian cave**, however. Sculptures of Natraja, Sada Shiva, and Ardhanarishwara can be seen among the site's ruins.
- Above the cave precincts are the church and its graveyard.

8.10 Udayagiri caves

- **Caves of Udayagiri** (not to be confused with Odisha's Udayagiri-Khandagiri Caves) It's in Madhya Pradesh's Vidisha district.
- It was built under the patronage of **Chandragupta II** in the early fifth century AD and is known for its numerous sculptures on the hill walls.
- Varaha, or **Vishnu's Boar incarnation**, is a renowned sculpture.
- One of the earliest Hindu sculptures may be found in the caverns.

8.11 Karle Caves

- The Karle caves were built around the beginning of the **Christian era,** and their pattern is similar to that of the **Bhaja caves,** although they are larger and more spectacular.
- The Chaitya at Karle is carved 124 feet deep into the rock and is located two miles north of the Bombay-Poona highway.
- **Great Chaitya** is the most well-known cave (Cave no. 8). It is India's largest **rock-cut chaitya.**

8.12 Kanheri Caves

- The Kanheri caverns are located near Bombay, and the Kanheri Chaityas follow the **Karle Chaitya design.**
- There are 109 caverns cut out of basalt rock in this area. The biggest caverns were Chaityas, but the majority were viharas.
- The **Mahayana influence** is also visible in the caves' outside walls, which depict Buddha images.

8.13 Conclusion

Rock-cut architecture is the process of constructing a structure by carving it out of natural rock. This involves removing rock that isn't part of the building until the desired structure is achieved. **Indian rock-cut architecture** is more diverse and abundant than any other type of rock building seen around the world (more than 1,500 rock-cut structures in India). Furthermore, the sacred nature of Indian rock-cut building is worth mentioning. The Mauryans were masters of cave architecture and are credited as being the forefathers of **rock-cut cave architecture.**

9. Ajanta and Ellora Caves

The **Ajanta and Ellora caves** are located near Aurangabad in Maharashtra, India, and are considered one of the best examples of ancient rock-cut caves. The **Ajanta and Ellora caves** complex contains Buddhist monasteries, **Hindu and Jain temples**, as well as exquisite sculptures, paintings, and murals. The caves of Ajanta and Ellora are **UNESCO World Heritage Sites** and are visited by tourists from all over the world. This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Ajanta and Ellora caves** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

9.1 Ajanta Caves

- **Location -** Ajanta is a group of rock-cut caves near Aurangabad, Maharashtra, amid the **Sahyadri ranges** on the **Waghora River.**

- There are 29 caverns in all, 25 of which were utilized as Viharas (residence caves) and 4 of which were used as Chaitya (prayer halls).

- **Time of development -** Between 200 B.C. and 650 A.D the caves were constructed.

9.2 Features of Ajanta Caves

- The Buddhist monks inscribed the Ajanta caves under the patronage of the **Vakataka rulers, one of them was Harishena.**

- The figures in these caves were painted with frescoes and exhibit a high level of naturalism. The colors were created from local plants and minerals.

- The paintings' outlines were **painted in red**, and then the insides were painted. The **absence of blue** in the paintings is one of the most remarkable elements.

- The paintings are mostly on Buddhism, including Buddha's life and Jataka stories.

- Five of the caves were built during the **Hinayana period of Buddhism,** while the other 24 were built during the **Mahayana period.**

- The Ajanta caves are mentioned in the travel journals of Chinese Buddhist pilgrims **Fa Hien and Hieun Tsang.**

- The **Mahaparinirvana of Buddha** in **Cave No. 26** and **Naga King and his consort in Cave.no 19** are some of the most famous sculptures in the Ajanta Caves.

9.3 Ellora Caves

- Another famous cave architecture site is Ellora Caves.

- **Location -** It is almost 100 kilometers from the Ajanta caves in Maharashtra's Sahyadri hills. It consists of 34 caverns, 17 of which are Brahmanical, 12 Buddhist, and 5 Jain.

- **Time of development -** These caves were built by numerous guilds from Vidarbha, Karnataka, and Tamil Nadu between the **5th and 11th centuries A.D.** (they are newer than the Ajanta Caves).

- It is a **UNESCO World Heritage Site** with cave temples dedicated to Hinduism, Buddhism, and Jainism.

9.4 Features of Ellora Caves

- In terms of topic and architectural styles, the caverns represent a natural diversity.

- The **17 Hindu caves** (caves 13, 29, 14, and 15 are famous and are known as **Ravan Ki Khai** and **Dashavatar caves,** respectively), **12 Buddhist caves** (caves 1 12), and **5 Jain caves** (caves 30 34, Jaina caves include Indra Sabha and Jagannath Sabha) built in close proximity demonstrate the religious harmony prevalent during this period of Indian history.

- Ellora has a number of well-known caverns, including:

  - **Vishwakarma Cave**, also known as a **carpenter's cave**, is a Buddhist Chaitya cave. Here, Buddha is seated in **Vyakhyana Mudra**, with a Bodhi tree etched behind him.

  - **Ravan ki Khai** is the theme of **Cave No. 14**.

  - **Dashavatar Temple** is located in **Cave No. 15**.

  - **Kailash temple** dedicated to Lord Shiva is located in **Cave No. 16.**

  - It was carved out of a monolith and even contains a courtyard; it was built under the patronage of **Rashtrakuta monarch Krishna I.**

  - A sculpture representing **Ravana shaking Mount Kailash** may also be found on the wall of Cave No. 16 in the Kailash temple.

  - It is regarded as one of India's greatest sculptures.

  - **Dhumal Lena is found in Cave 29.**

  - **Rameshwar temple** is found in **Cave No. 21**

  - **Indra Sabha (Cave 32)** and **Jagannath Sabha (Cave 33)** are two well-known Jain caves.

9.5 Conclusion

The caves of **Ajanta and Ellora** are among the earliest Buddhist structures. Between the 2nd century BC and the 6th century AD, the Ajanta – Ellora caves developed. Since 1983, the paintings and sculptures of the Ajanta and Ellora caves have been designated as UNESCO World Heritage Sites. They are considered masterpieces of Buddhist religious art and have had a significant impact on the development of art in India.

10. Elephanta Caves

The **Elephanta Caves** are located on **Elephanta Island** (also known as the Island of Gharapuri), which consists of two hillocks separated by a thin valley in Western India. Numerous old archaeological relics dot the little island, serving as the only witnesses to its complex cultural past. These archaeological relics show that the area was occupied as early as the **2nd century BC.** This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Elephanta caves** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

10.1 Elephanta Caves

- **Location - The Elephanta Caves** are on **Elephanta Island** (also known as Gharapuri Island), which is made up of two hillocks separated by a narrow valley in Western India.

- **Time of development - Elephanta cave temples** (on a small island off the coast of Bombay) date from the **eighth century A.D**. and are similar to those at Ellora.

- The Elephanta Caves were initially intended to be a Buddhist site, but the Shaivite faith eventually took over.

- The caves on the island are divided into two groups:

   - A collection of **five Hindu caves** with rock-cut stone sculptures. They are primarily associated with the Shaivite sect of Hinduism, and are primarily dedicated to Lord Shiva.

   - **A pair of Buddhist caves** with cisterns that run along the island's banks. Near the hill, there is a mound that resembles a Buddhist stupa.

- Between the 14th and 17th centuries, when Portuguese ships began to ply the Arabian Sea and used these caves as a base, the caves suffered extensive damage.

- They caused significant damage to the statues, which was exacerbated by water logging and dripping rainwater.

10.2 Features of Elephanta Caves

- The caves are constructed of **solid basalt rock.**

- The older sculptures have paint splatters.

- The **primary cave (Cave 1)** has a rock-cut temple complex that includes a main chamber **dedicated to Lord Shiva**, two lateral chambers, subsidiary shrines, and carvings depicting his life and

several episodes associated with his life, such as his marriage with Parvati and the river Ganga descending in his hair.

- They are known for their sculpture (showing slenderness in the body, with stark light and dark effects), particularly the great **Trimurti figure of Shiva** (Shiva is akin to the **Trimurti figure of Brahma**, **Vishnu, and Mahesh**).

- **Ravana shaking the Kailash**, **Tandav dance of Shiva**, **Ardh-narishwara**, are other notable sculptures.

- It was also designated as a **UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1987.**

- The dating of the famed Elephanta Caves is still a point of contention, with estimates ranging from the **6th to the 8th centuries.**

- The **Rashtrakuta monarchs** excavated the cave temple, which is dedicated to Lord Shiva, sometime in the **8th century.**

- The most important cave is the **Mahesa-murti cave.**

- The cave's main body is 27 metres square and is supported by six columns in each row (excluding the porticos on the three open sides and the back aisle).

- This cave has sculpted compartments with amazing depictions of Ardhanarishvara, **Nataraja Shiva, Ravana hoisting Kailasa, Kalyana-Sundara** Shiva, Andhakari-Murti, and others (slaying of Andhaka demon).

- There are also massive figures of **'dwarapalakas,'** or doorkeepers, which are rather stunning.

- The main cave is well-known for its carvings honouring Shiva, who is worshipped in a variety of shapes and acts.

- The **Sitabai Temple**, a vast prayer hall with walls covered with beautiful and detailed sculptures located near the enormous cave, is another structure that has remained quite intact in comparison to the other decaying caves.

- The overall layout of the caverns makes extensive use of Hindu spiritualistic concepts and iconography.

- One of the most notable collections for the **Shiva religion** is the fifteen massive reliefs surrounding the lingam chapel in the **main Elephanta Cave.**

- Important innovations in **rock-cut architecture** include the layout of the caves, including the pillar components, the location and partition of the caverns into separate segments, and the provision of a sanctuary or Garbhagriha of the **sarvatobhadra plan.**

10.3 Conclusion

The Elephanta Caves are situated on a small island off the coast of Western India, and are home to various old archaeological ruins that bear witness to the country's rich cultural history. Elephanta Caves' architecture and woodland region have been designated as UNESCO World Heritage Sites since 1987.

Chapter 12: Cave Architecture

1. Bhaja Caves

The **Bhaja Caves** are India's finest example of Buddhist cave building. They are in the Pune area, near Lonavala, Mumbai, in the hill village of Bhaja. The Bhaja Caves are among the oldest caves in Western India, dating back to the 2nd century BC. This article will explain to you the concepts related to Bhaja Caves which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

1.1 Bhaja Caves

- **Location -** The cave is situated on an important historical trade route that runs eastward from the Arabian Sea to the **Deccan Plateau.**
- It is a collection of 22 rock-cut caves located 400 feet above the Bhaja hamlet.
- **Time of development -** The Bhaja caverns are thought to have been formed around **200 BC, roughly 2,200 years ago.**

1.2 Features of Bhaja Caves

- The **Hinayana sect of Buddhism** is represented by the Bhaja Caves.
- The architectural design of the **Bhaja Caves** is similar to that of the Karla Caves.
- Their elaborate facades have made them famous.
- The most unique characteristic of the caves is that the beam of light of the setting sun enters the insides of the caves.
- The **stupas**, which are 14 in number and arranged in a huddle, are one of the cave's most notable characteristics.
- They are thought to contain the relics of monks who lived and died in the **Bhaja caves.**
- Two of the stupas feature a relic box on the upper side, and all of them are intricately sculpted.
- Five of the **14 stupas** are inside the smaller cave, while the other nine are outside.

- Exquisite **headdresses, garlands,** and jewelry adorn the sculptures in the **Bhaja Buddhist grotto**.

- There are several animal representations and inscriptions of Buddhist monks' names, as well as some **Buddha paintings.**

- A **Chaitya Griha**, or prayer hall, is unique to the cave. The hall is surrounded by 27 pillars, with wooden beams affixed to the ceilings.

- The ceiling beams are the original ones, which is a unique feature. With an open, **horseshoe arched** entryway, it is the most stunning huge shrine chaitya griha.

- The **chaitya griha** features wooden construction prototypes and a vaulted horseshoe ceiling. Another interesting aspect of the cave is the wooden construction.

- Simple **rock-cut Viharas** termed dwelling rooms and water Cisterns can be found throughout the **Bhaja cave Buddhist complex.**

- The **vihars** are ornamented with unique reliefs and have pillared verandahs in front.

- Bhaja's viharas are divided into two levels. There are also a few viharas with two stories. At Bhaja, there is only one vihara with sculptural embellishment.

- One of the carvings **depicts a woman playing the tabla** and another doing the dance, indicating that the **Tabla** (or Pushkara as it was then known) has been used in India for over **2000 years.**

- Near the last cave, there is a **spectacular waterfall,** the water of which flows into a little lake at the bottom during the monsoon season.

- The **Archaeological Survey of India** - ASI has designated the inscriptions and cave temple as a Monument of National Importance.

1.3 Conclusion

The Karla Caves and the Bhaja Caves have similar architectural styles. The enormous shrine-chaitya griha-with an open, horseshoe-arched entrance is the most spectacular monument; according to the Archaeological Survey of India, the chaitya griha is the most prominent component of the caverns and one of the earliest of the sort. Unique reliefs from Indian mythology adorn the chaitya.

2. Barabar Caves

The **Barabar caves,** located in the Barabar hills in **Bihar's Jehanabad district**, are India's oldest instances of **Mauryan rock-cut construction.** In Barabar, there are four caverns going back to **Asoka's rule (273-232 BC)** and his grandson **Dasaratha's reign**, which were originally built for the **Ajivika sect**. This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Barabar Caves** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

2.1 Barabar Caves

- The **Lomas Rishi Cave, Sudama Caves, Vishwakarma Caves, and Karan Chaupar Caves** are among the Barabar caves.
- The caves of Barabar Hill are the world's oldest rock-cut caves.
- These caves were carved out of a single piece of solid granite.
- **Location -** The Barabar Caves are located in a hilly location near Makhdumpur, Bihar, 25 kilometres south of J**ehanabad.**
- **Time of development -** The caverns of Barabar can be traced back to the **Mauryan Empire** in the **3rd century BC** (322 BCE -185 BCE).

2.2 Features of Barabar Caves

- **Emperor Ashoka** built the Barabar Caves for the benefit of **Ajivika ascetics**, and it is hence known as the **birthplace of the Ajivika sect.**
- The caves of Barabar Hill are **Buddhist caves**. A few Hindu and Jain sculptures can also be found.
- The **Nagarjuni Hills** (comprising three caves) are located two kilometres from the Barabar Hills Caves (which include four caves).
- They are referred to as **'Satghar'** since they are thought to be from the same time period.
- The **Baba Siddhanath Temple**, also known as the **Shiva Temple** and formerly known as Siddheshwar Nath Temple, is situated atop one of the Barabar Hills' highest peaks.
- This temple is supposed to have been constructed during the **Gupta Dynasty's reign.**
- The fascinating echo effect may be found in all of the Babrabar caves.

2.3 Lomas Rishi Caves

- The man-made **Barabar caves**, also known as the **Grotto of Lomas Rishi,** are located on the southern side of the Barabar hills.

- As a sanctuary, the **rock-cut Lomas Rishi** Cave was dug out.

- It is the earliest surviving example of the ogee-shaped Chandrashala or Chaitya Arch, which has long been a popular feature of Indian sculpture and rock-cut building.

- Lomas Rishi Cave's arch-like facade is a perfect recreation of monks' wood and thatch cottages.

- The **Lomas Rishi Cave** is divided into two rooms. After passing through a brief tunnel, there is a large rectangular hall, approached from the side, that serves as an assembly hall.

- A second, smaller hall, with an oval-shaped interior and a dome-shaped roof, is located further within.

- The chambers' interior surfaces have a spectacular glass-like gloss and are extremely beautifully finished. In the Barabar Caves, this is a common construction.

- The cave served as a model for the bigger Buddhist Chaitya halls located in Maharashtra, such as the Ajanta or Karli caves, and had a significant impact on the South **Asian rock-cut building heritage.**

- **Lomas Rishi Cave** was excavated and given to the Ajivikas monks during the time of **Mauryan ruler Ashoka.**

- The **Ajivikas** were an ancient Indian religious and philosophical sect that competed with **Jainism** and eventually died out. They pondered in caves, rejecting both the Vedas' authority and Buddhist beliefs.

- The inscription of the elephant and other symbols can be seen on the cave's wall and at the entrance of **Chaitya arch.** The Lomas Rishi Cave does not have any Ashoka inscriptions.

- Buddhists used the **Lomas Rishi Cave** after Ajivikas since the cave's door jamb contains the Bodhimula and Klesa-Kantara inscriptions.

- **Anantvarman,** a Hindu ruler of the **Maukhari dynasty,** dedicated a statue of **Krishna** to the cave, according to a Sanskrit inscription on the arch.

2.4 Sudama Caves

- **Sudama Caves** are near to the Lomas Rishi Caves on the left side of the Barabar Hills.

- Sudama cave, according to an inscription placed near its entrance, was perhaps the first cave dug in the **Barabar cave group.**

- **Emperor Ashoka** donated Sudama cave, as shown by an inscription in **Brahmi** inscribed in the cave's entrance employing his protocol name (Priyadarsin, "He who provides joy").

- A short entrance porch leads to a rectangular path at the Sudama cave's entrance.

- The **Sudama cave** has an arched roof. It has a vaulted circular room within which is a rectangular mandap.

- Sudama caverns' interior walls are an **engineering marvel.** The extremely flat and polished granite surface provides a mirror image.

- The wall between the two chambers features a central entryway and an unusual upper hemi-spherical part that is curved and bowed towards the centre, like the roof of native bamboo and thatch beehive homes.

2.5 Vishwakarma Cave

- **Vishwakarma Cave,** like other Barabar caves, is made up of two rectangular rooms. The room is completely open to the exterior, like an extended porch.

- **Vishwamitra caves** is another name for it.

- The **"Ashoka Steps"** built into the cliff provide access to this cave.

- During Ashoka's 12th year of reign, he offered Vishwakarma cave to **Ajivikas.**

- It's the only cave in the series that doesn't have any inscriptions from after the Asoka period.

- Emperor Ashoka dedicated Vishwakarma cave in **260 BC**, and 7 years later, he dedicated **Karan Chaupar cave**, which is a short distance from Vishwakarma cave.

2.6 Karan Chaupar Cave

- Karan Cahupar is located on the **Barabar Hills'** northern flank.

- It has an **Ashoka inscription** dated the 19th year of his reign on it.

- The Buddhist practice of **retiring (Vassavasa)** during the monsoons is described in an inscription found at the cave's entrance.

- The inverted **swastika** at the conclusion of the inscription shows that this cave, one of the four **Barabar Caves**, was reserved for **Buddhist monks.**

- A mound near the entrance is also covered with later Buddhist sculptures, indicating that the cave once belonged to Buddhists.

- At one end of the cave is a rock-cut seat. It is made out of a single rectangular room with gleaming surfaces.

- An inscription from the **Gupta dynasty** in the entry chamber says **"Daridra Kantara"** ("The Cave of the Beggars").

2.7 Conclusion

The **caves of Barabar** come in a variety of **shapes and sizes.** While the **Lomas Rishi Cave** features an oblong vaulted space, other caves have circular domed shrines with stone representations of timber structure. The inside of a number of the caverns have a high polish known as '**Mauryan polish**.' No other rock-cut caves in India can match their age, and others built in subsequent centuries provide testament to their craftsmen's continual improvement in technical skill and design. As a result, it can be claimed that the **Barabar caves** are the origins of India's rock-cut building history.

3. Amarnath Cave

Amarnath Cave is a Hindu temple in the Indian state of Jammu and Kashmir. The cave is located at an elevation of 3,888 meters, approximately 141 kilometers (88 miles) from Srinagar. It is accessible through a commute from Pahalgam town. The cave of Amarnath holds a unique **significance for Lord Shiva.** This article will explain to you the concepts related to **Amarnath cave** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

3.1 Amarnath Cave

- Amarnath Cave is revered as one of Hinduism's holiest shrines.
- The cave, which is located in **Lidder Valley,** is surrounded by glaciers and snow-capped mountains and is snow-covered for the majority of the year, except for a brief period in the summer when it is open to pilgrims.
- The cave of Amarnath holds a unique **significance for Lord Shiva.**
- Shiva is a deity who, according to the Rigveda, is the purifier of good and **destroyer of evil.**
- **Lord Shiva** is thought to be a living God, whose presence has been confirmed by astronomy, **Vedic mythology**, and even rituals.
- Lord Shiva was a highly respected deity in ancient India, according to findings from Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro.

3.2 Historical Background

- According to Hindu religious beliefs, this is the location where Shiva revealed to his divine consort, Parvati, the secret of life and eternity.
- **Queen Suryawati** is said to have given trishulas, banalingas, and other sacred emblems to this temple in the **11th century AD.**
- **Aryabhatta's Rajavalipataka** makes numerous references to the trip to **Amarnath Cave Temple.**
- The pilgrimage's origins are described in the Sanskrit book **"Bringesha Samhita."**

3.3 Features

- According to the **Rigvedic scriptures,** there is only one entity, despite the fact that he is addressed by numerous names by mankind and some great sages.

- **"Ekam Sat,"** which means **"there is only one truth,"** is a famous verse from the scriptures.

- The Parmeshwar is said to have taken up the world's concerns in three incarnations, known as the **Holy Trinity.** Shiva is a deity who, according to the Rigveda, is the purifier of good and destroyer of evil.

- The **Shiva Lingam** is a **stalagmite formation** found inside a 40 m (130 ft) high cave at a height of 3,888 m on the **Amarnath Mountain**, which has a summit of 5,186 m.

- The **stalagmite** is formed when water drops fall from the cave's roof onto the cave floor and freeze, causing an upward vertical development of ice.

- The stalagmites that make up the lingam, Shiva's corporeal manifestation, form a solid-dome shape here.

- As two smaller stalagmites, **Parvati and Ganesha** can also be found here.

3.4 Conclusion

The narrative of the sacred cave is told in the Puranas, although there are a number of current accounts about its recovery. Every year, thousands of worshippers walk over the south Kashmir Himalayas to Shri Amarnathji's Holy Cave Shrine, which is one of India's four major pilgrimages.

4. Badami Caves

The **Badami cave temples** are a collection of **Hindu and Jain cave temples** in Badami, a town in Karnataka's Bagalkot district in the north. The caves, which date from the **6th century**, are noteworthy examples of Indian **rock-cut architecture,** particularly Badami Chalukya architecture. This article will explain to you the historical background and features related to **Badami caves** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil Services exam.

4.1 Historical Background

- The cave temples in Badami, the capital city of the **Chalukya kingdom,** also known as Early Chalukyas are dated from the late 6th century onwards and are numbered 1 to 4 in order of their construction.
- Only **Cave 3,** which is a temple dedicated to Vishnu, has an accurate date.
- Mangalesha dedicated the sanctuary in **Saka 500** (solar calendar, 578/579 CE), according to an inscription unearthed here.
- These rock cave temples have been dated to the 6th century according to an inscription written in the old Kannada language.
- As a result, the cave is India's **earliest firmly-dated Hindu cave temple.**

4.2 Features

- **Badami** is a modern name for **Vataapinagara,** the early **Chalukya dynasty's** capital, which dominated much of Karnataka from the sixth to the eighth centuries.
- Badami is located on the west side of a **man-made lake,** flanked on the north and south by forts created in later periods by an earthen wall with stone stairs.
- In Badami, there are a total of four cave temples. All of these temples have beautiful carvings with **statues of Hindu gods.**
- The architecture of these temples is a seamless blend of **North Indian Nagara** and **South Indian Dravidian styles.**
- A sanctum, a hall, a verandah, and pillars are all included in each cave. The location of **Cave Temples** is adorned with beautiful carvings and wonderful sculptures.
- A reservoir can be seen at the cutting edge, which serves as a perfect foreground to these architectural structures.

First Cave

- The **first and most important cave** was constructed around **578 A.D.**
- The cave is accessible through a 40-step staircase. The cave, which is dedicated to Lord Shiva, houses 81 statues of Lord Shiva in the **shape of 'Nataraj,'** who has 18 arms.
- The cave, which is made of red sandstone, features an open portico, a hall with several columns, and a sanctum. Paintings of infatuated couples adorn the **ceilings and pillars.**

Second Cave

- The **second cave** is located on top of a sandstone hill.
- According to Hindu beliefs, **Lord Vishnu** is the preserver of the Universe, and this Cave Temple is devoted to him.
- **Lord Vishnu** is depicted as a **'Trivikrama' (dwarf)** in this image, with one foot commanding the Earth and the other commanding the sky.

Third Cave

- The **third Cave Temple,** perched on a hill, **dates back to 578 A.D**. The cave's front elevation is roughly 70 feet wide.
- The images of **'Ganas'** are etched into the platform. The temple's architecture goes back to the **Deccan style of building.**
- This temple exemplifies creative excellence and sculptural brilliance.
- The sculpture depicting **Lord Vishnu** with a serpent has gotten a lot of attention.
- Lord Vishnu is portrayed here as **Narsimha, Varaha, Harihara** (Shiva-Vishnu), and Trivikarma in his different incarnations.

Fourth Cave

- The **fourth Cave Temple** is known for being dedicated to **Lord Mahavira**, the **Jains' 24th Tirthankara.**
- The cave is thought to be the most recent of the four caves.
- It dates back to the **7th century,** almost 100 years after the construction of the first three caves.
- The **figure of Lord Mahavira** in a sitting posture can be found in this shrine.

4.3 Conclusion

The creative beauty and sculptural grandeur of Badami's cave temples are immediately apparent. The rich traditions of India are portrayed in these cultural

monuments. People travel from all over the world to see these architecturally stunning and religiously significant sites. The Badami Caves complex is part of the Malaprabha river valley's "Evolution of Temple Building – Aihole-Badami-Pattadakal" **UNESCO World Heritage Site** candidate, which is regarded as a cradle of temple architecture and served as a model for later Hindu temples in the region.

5. Bagh Caves

The **Bagh Caves** are a collection of nine rock-cut monuments located on the southern slopes of the **Vindhyas** near Bagh, Dhar district, Madhya Pradesh, India. They were developed around the **6th century A.D.** These are known for mural paintings by ancient Indian master artists. The term **"cave"** is a misnomer because these are not natural caves, but rather examples of **Indian rock-cut construction**. This article will explain to you the features related to **Bagh Caves** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

5.1 Bagh Caves

- **Location -** They are located on the banks of the **Baghani River** in **Madhya Pradesh's Dhar district.**

- The most beautiful paintings known to have been created by prehistoric man can be found in these rock cut caverns. Only 5 of the original 9 caverns have survived.

- **Time of development -** According to mythology, **Buddhist monk** Dataka constructed these caves. The caves were carved between the late **4th and early 6th centuries AD.**

- These caves were first discovered in **modern times in 1818.**

5.2 Features

- The **Bagh caves,** like the **Ajanta caves**, were carved out of the perpendicular sandstone rock face of a hill on the far bank of the Baghani, a seasonal stream.

- Only five of the nine caves have survived, despite their Buddhist inspiration.

- All of them are **'viharas,' or monks'** resting places, with a quadrangular design. The 'chaitya,' or prayer hall, is a tiny chamber usually found toward the back.

- **Cave 4**, also known as the **Rang Mahal,** is the most important of the five caves that still exist (Palace of Colors).

- **Mural Paintings** are well-known in **Bagh Caves**. A thick **mud plaster** of a brownish orange colour was used to cover the walls and ceilings before painting.

- **Lime-priming** was applied over the plaster, and then the paints were applied.

- The employment of a permanent fast-drying painting medium

consisting of coloured pigment mixed with a **water-soluble binder** media is referred to as tempera technique.

- In various places of India, the sophisticated form of art represented in the **Ajanta paintings** can also be seen in surviving wall paintings and mural remnants.

- **Ajanta Caves** are perhaps the only instances of Indian murals visible to the outside world.

- However, it has been established that the tradition that began at Ajanta actually began in ancient times. And it didn't stop at Ajanta; it was carried on by people of many faiths in various places of India.

- A **reddish-brown grainy** and thick mud plaster was spread out on the walls and ceilings to prepare the ground.

- Only **Caves 3 and 4** had survived the ravages of time when the Bagh caves were discovered. Bagh's murals exemplify the **"golden age"** of Indian classical art.

- **Tempera** was used to paint the **Viharas of Bagh's** walls and ceilings, with shards still evident in Caves 3 and 4 (remnants also observed in Caves 2, 5, and 7).

- **Cave 2,** popularly known as **"Pandava Cave,"** is the cave with the best preservation.

- These artworks are more worldly than **spiritualistic in nature.**

5.3 Conclusion

Bagh Caves, in Madhya Pradesh, are a complex of nine Buddhist caves that were built around the **6th century A.D**. on the bank of the **Bagh river.** In terms of design, execution, and decoration, it is architecturally extremely similar to the **Ajanta caves.** These rock-cut shrines and monasteries are amazing and fascinating.

6. Belum Caves

Belum Caves are located in the **Kurnool district of Andhra Pradesh**, amidst flat agricultural land. It is also known as **Belum Guhalu** and is the **second-largest network** of underground caves in the Indian subcontinent, with **Meghalaya having the longest (the 22 km-Krem Liat Prah).** The **Belum Caves** are noted for their **speleothems,** such as stalactite and stalagmite formations. This article will explain to you the features and significance of **Belum Caves** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

6.1 Historical Background

- The Belum Caves became famous after **British surveyor Robert Bruce Foote** discovered them in **1884**.

- Even after Foote's discovery, the caves were used as garbage dumps until 1983, when a team led by **German speleologist Herbert Gebauer** and Indian geologists conducted extensive explorations and mapping.

- It was then that the remains of clay vessels dating back to 4500 BC, as well as mortars and pestles used for grinding Ayurvedic medicines, were discovered here, indicating the caves' antiquity.

6.2 Features

- The steady flow of underground water from the now-disappearing **river Chitravathi** carved out this cave system over tens of thousands of years.

- The river's erosion has left deep marks on the cave walls and quartz deposits are also visible within the caves.

- These caves are known for their speleothem structures, such as stalactite and stalagmite formations (**Speleothems** are secondary mineral deposits created in a cave).

- The caves were once home to **Jain and Buddhist monks** who lived there for decades.

- The presence of pre-Buddhist vessels dating back 4500 years verifies this.

- **Simhadwaram** - It translates to "lion's gate." It's a natural arch of stalactites shaped like the head of a lion.

- **Kotilingala Chamber** - This portion has **Shiva lingam**-like stalactite formations. Thousands of such stalactites can be found in this location,

giving it a bizarre appearance. It has one massive pillar produced by the junction of **stalactite and stalagmite.**

- **Saint's Bed or Greystone Recliner -** It is possible that Buddhist monks meditated here hundreds of years ago. The site where these relics were discovered has been transformed into a Dhyana Mandir (Meditation Hall).

- **Patalaganga -** It is a little perennial brook that disappears into the earth's depths. This creek flows from southeast to northwest direction.

- **Saptasvarala Guha or Musical Chamber -** It is a seven-note chamber. When whacked with a wooden stick or knuckles, the stalactite formations in this chamber generate melodious sounds.

- The **Dhyan Mandir (Meditation Hall)** - It is located at the entrance. At the Meditation Hall, there is an interesting formation that resembles a bed with a pillow on which to lie.

- According to **local mythology,** many sages used to live here in ancient times. Buddhist monks frequented this area.

- Many Buddhist relics were discovered here, and they are presently housed in a museum in Anantapur.

- **Thousand Hoods** - This section features incredible stalactite formations in the shape of a Cobra's hood. Thousands of cobras have opened their hoods, according to the stalactite formations on the ceiling.

- The **Banyan Tree Hall** area features a massive pillar with stalactites dangling from the ceiling. When viewed from below, this resembles a Banyan Tree with its aerial roots.

    – It's known as **"Voodalamari"** by the locals because it resembles a Banyan Tree with its aerial roots dangling from the branches.

- **Mandapam** - This is a large space inside the cave with spectacular stalactite structures on the walls that give it the appearance of a hall with pillars.

6.3 Significance

- The Belum Caves are both geologically and historically significant caves.

- There is evidence that Jains and Buddhist monks lived in these caves centuries ago.

- Inside the caves, many Buddhist relics were discovered. These relics are now housed in the **Ananthapur Museum.**

- The **Archaeological Survey of India (ASI)** discovered **pre-Buddhist era vessel remnants** and dated these objects to **4500 years BCE.**

6.4 Conclusion

Belum's caves, which are known for their cave formations such as stalactite and stalagmite formations, are the longest in India after those in the state of Meghalaya. Long passages, galleries, spacious caverns with fresh water, and syphons can be found in the Belum Caves. To popularise the Belum caves, the Andhra Pradesh government conducted the Belum Caves Festival in January 2020. The festival's name has been suggested as **'Kandanavolu Sambaralu'** since Kurnool district was once known as Kandanavolu.

7. Bhimbetka Rock Shelter

Bhimbetka Rock Shelter in **Madhya Pradesh,** is thought to be a **prehistoric rock shelter**. Several experts studied the art on the shelter's walls and concluded that it dates from the **Paleolithic period**. It appears to show traces of human life on the Indian continent, putting it in the early stages of the **South Asian Stone Age**. In **2003,** it was designated as a **UNESCO World Heritage Site.** This article will explain to you the historical background and features of **Bhimbetka Rock Shelters** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

7.1 Historical Background

- Prehistoric cave paintings may be seen in some of the Bhimbetka rock shelters, the oldest of which date back to around **10,000 years ago (c. 8,000 BCE), dating to the Indian Mesolithic.**

- The Bhimbetka site is home to India's oldest known rock art as well as one of the country's greatest prehistoric complexes.

- According to studies, **Homo erectus** may have lived in the rock shelters around 1,00,000 years ago.

- This cluster's most recent rock drawings are roughly **30,000 years old**. Many tales have been added to this location due to its antiquity.

- More than **750 rock shelters** have been discovered since then. There are 243 of these in the Bhimbetka group, and 178 in the **Lakha Juar** group nearby.

- The evidence implies that there has been a continuous human presence here from the **Stone Age** through the late **Acheulean** to the late Mesolithic until the **2nd century BCE**, according to the **Archaeological Survey of India.**

- These caves were discovered in **1958** by **Dr. V. S. Wakankar,** a well-known archaeologist.

- The extent and actual significance of the **Bhimbetka rock shelters** were only discovered and documented in the **1970s.**

7.2 Features

- The term 'Bhim-betaka' refers to the **'sitting location of Bhima'**, one of the **Pandava brothers**.

- Several layers of inhabitation can be seen in the rock shelters.

- At the **Bhimbetka rock shelters** in central India, the **Paleolithic and Mesolithic periods,** as well as the historic period, are all represented.

- It displays the earliest signs of human life in India, as well as **Stone Age** evidence dating back to **Acheulian times.**

- It is a **UNESCO World Heritage Site** with seven hills and over 750 rock shelters spread out over a 10-kilometer area. At least some of the shelters have been occupied for over 100,000 years.

- **The first period,** which corresponds to the **Upper Paleolithic epoch**, features enormous animals such as bosons, rhinos, and tigers.

- The **Mesolithic period,** or **the second phase**, is marked by miniature, stylized human figurines.

  – Weapons such as **barbed spears, pointed rods, and bows and arrow**s are displayed on these figurines.

  – They also depict social interactions such as dancing, burials, drinking, eating, and so on.

- The **Chalcolithic phase is the third stage,** characterised by agricultural activities and exchange between nomads and agriculturists.

- **Prehistoric cave paintings** may be seen in some of the **Bhimbetka rock shelters,** the oldest of which date back to around **10,000 years ago (c. 8,000 BCE)**, dating to the Indian Mesolithic.

  – They have a widened colour pattern with red, white, and yellow used in the paintings.

  – These paintings also depict magical creatures, sky chariots, and tree gods.

  – The paintings discovered in the rock shelters bear striking resemblance to those discovered in **Australia's Kakadu National Park,** as well as to **Bushmen cave paintings in the Kalahari Desert** and **Upper Palaeolithic Lascaux cave paintings in France.**

- The use of manganese, wooden coal, and hematite can be seen in the last period, which can be classified as **early mediaeval.**

- The **'Zoo Rock,'** which depicts elephants, bison, deer, and Sambar, is the most striking feature.

- The Archaeological Survey of India has done an excellent job of preserving the site.

7.3 Recent Developments

- On the roof of the **Bhimbetka Rock Shelters**, researchers recently uncovered three fossils of the earliest known living species, the 550-million-year-old **'Dickinsonia.'**

- At Bhimbetka Rock Shelters, the fossils were discovered under the top of the **Auditorium Cave.**

- It adds to the evidence of similar paleoenvironments and verifies the 550 Ma assembly of Gondwanaland (mega annum).

- This discovery may aid scientists in better comprehending the connection of geology and biology that led to the evolution of sophisticated life on Earth.

7.4 Conclusion

The caves offer a rare glimpse into the evolution of culture, from nomadic hunter-gatherers to settled cultivators to spiritual expressions. It has been observed that the contemporary cultural traditions of the agrarian peoples who live in the villages surrounding Bhimbetka are similar to those depicted in the paintings.

8. Borra Caves

The **Borra Caves**, also known as **Borra Guhalu,** are located in the **Visakhapatnam district of Andhra Pradesh**, among the **Ananthagiri hills** of the Araku Valley. These caves are thought to be more than **150 million years old**. The cave's name is derived from a hole in the roof above its central area.

8.1 Historical Background

- **Borra Guhalu** is the indigenous name for the caves. Borra is the Telugu word for abdomen, and guhalu is the Telugu word for caves.

- **William King George** of the **Geological Survey of India** found the caverns in **1807.**

- There are various legends surrounding the caverns' discovery, which the tribals **Jatapu, Porja, Kondadora, Nookadora, Valmiki,** etc. who live in the communities surrounding the caves tell.

8.2 Features

- The **Gosthani River** flows through the caves, which are located in the Araku Valley of the Ananthagiri hill range.

- These are at a height of 1400 meters above sea level.

- Shiva-Parvathi, Rishi's Beard, Mother-Child, Crocodile, Human Brain, Tiger, and Cow's Udder are some of the **stalactite and stalagmite** formations found in these caves.

- There is also a **naturally formed Shivalinga** deep inside the cave, and tribal people from the surrounding areas (Jatapu, Porja, Kondadora, and Nookadora) flock to the caves every Shivaratri to pray to the linga.

- The caves are **extremely deep** and completely **aphotic**. In the caves, there is an area with limited light penetration.

- The caves in the protected forest area are mostly **speleothems** of varying sizes and irregularly shaped **stalactites and stalagmites.**

- In the caves, **Paleolithic tools** have been discovered such as stone implements from the middle Paleolithic culture, which date back 30,000 to 50,000 years and confirm human presence.

8.3 Conclusion

At an elevation of around 705m, the caves, which are one of the country's largest, clearly display a range of speleothems ranging in size and irregularly formed stalactites and stalagmites. The caves are karstic limestone structures that reach a depth of 80 meters (260 feet) and are regarded as India's deepest

caves. Recently the **Indian National Trust for Art and Cultural Heritage (INTACH)** is working to have Erra Matti Dibbalu (red sand dunes), natural rock formations, **Borra Caves**, and volcanic ash deposits recognized as a geopark in Visakhapatnam, Andhra Pradesh.

9. Dungeshwari Cave

The **Dungeshwari Cave Temples**, also known as the **Mahakala Caves**, is located 12 kilometers north of **Bodhgaya, Bihar.** Three caverns have Buddhist shrines, including one where the Buddha is said to have meditated. This article will explain to you the important features related to **Dungeshwari Cave** which will be helpful in Indian Art and Culture preparation for the UPSC Civil service exam.

9.1 Historical Background

- **Lord Buddha** is claimed to have been safeguarded by the caves in the Dungeshwari Hills before descending to **Bodh Gaya.**
- The Dungeshwari Hills is located near the **Falgu River in Gaya.** In his travelogue, Chinese traveler **Hiuen Tsang** mentions these hills.
- These caves today house a number of temples that are frequently visited by pilgrims who are following in **Lord Buddha's footsteps.**
- The locals refer to the Dungeshwari cave temples as **Sujata Sthan.**
- Buddha is said to have become frail, feeble, and hungry during his self-mortification. **Sujata,** a village woman, brought him food while he was resting under a Banyan tree.
- Buddha accepted her gifts and ate them, revealing a holy truth: neither extreme **self-indulgence** nor **self-abasement** are the paths to enlightenment.
- Buddha realised that by taking the middle road, he would be able to achieve **supreme nirvana. Sujata Sthan,** also known as Dungeshwari Temple, is a symbol of this event.

9.2 Features

- To commemorate this period of Buddha's life, two tiny shrines have been constructed.
- In one of the **cave temples**, a golden emaciated Buddha sculpture recalling the strict penance is enshrined, while in the other, a big (approximately 6' tall) **Buddha statue** is enshrined.
- **Dungeshwari,** a Hindu goddess deity, is also housed within the cave shrine.
- **There are Hindu and Buddhist shrines in the caves, and some people are drawn to this location because of the sheer energy they feel it emits, as well as its connection to Lord Buddha.**

9.3 Conclusion

The cave temples where Lord Buddha is claimed to have pondered before arriving in Gaya for his enlightenment are the most notable features of the Dungeshwari caves. These caves today house a number of temples that are frequently visited by pilgrims who are following in Lord Buddha's footsteps. Dungeshwari, the Hindu goddess, is honored at one of the cave temples.